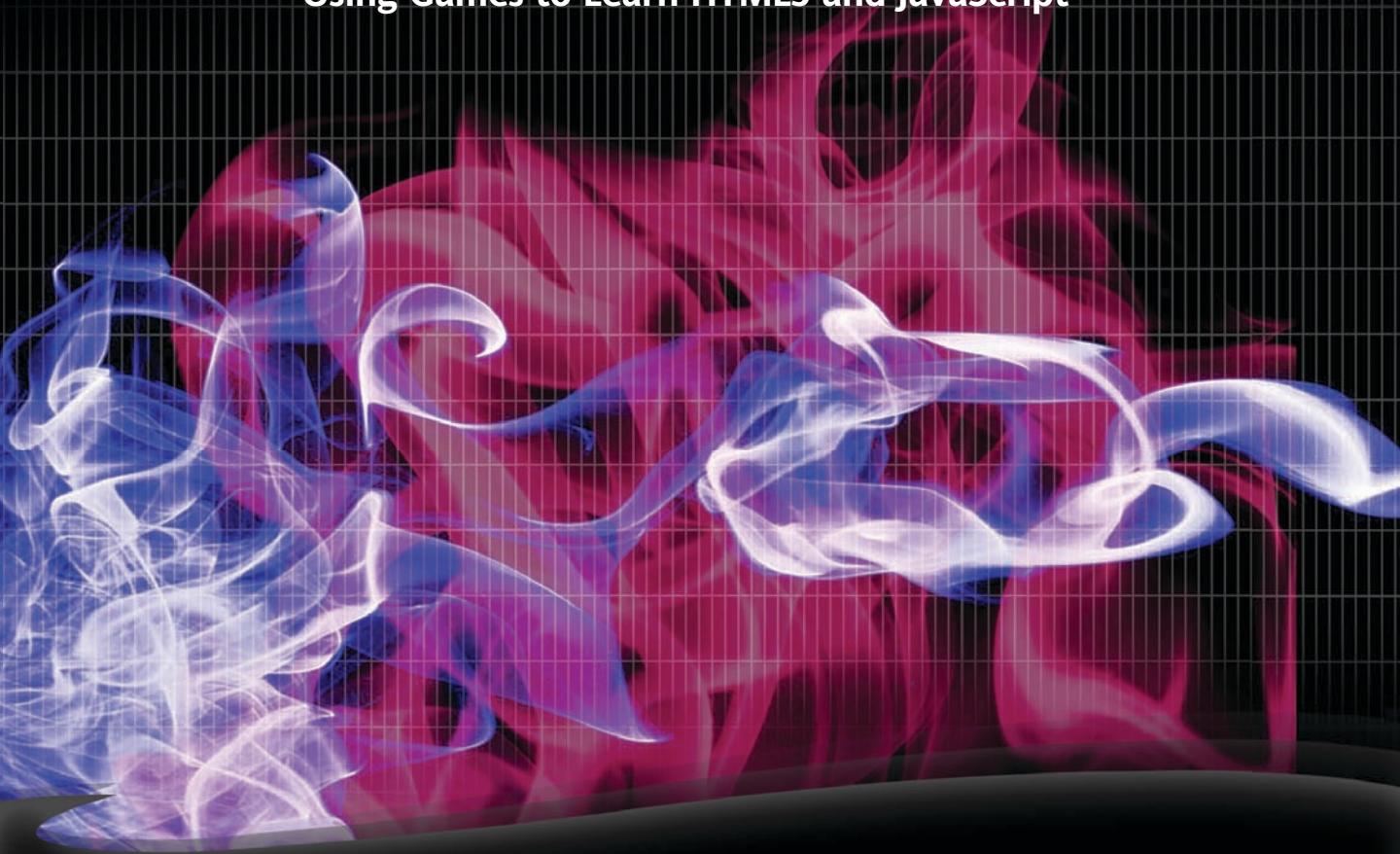


THE ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO

# HTML5

Using Games to Learn HTML5 and JavaScript



JEANINE MEYER

**friends of**   
an Apress® company



# The Essential Guide to HTML5

Using Games to Learn HTML5 and JavaScript

**Jeanine Meyer**



# Games to Learn HTML5 and JavaScript

## Copyright © 2010 by Jeanine Meyer

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner and the publisher.

ISBN-13 (pbk): 978-1-4302-3383-1

ISBN-13 (electronic): 978-1-4302-3384-8

Printed and bound in the United States of America (POD)

Trademarked names, logos, and images may appear in this book. Rather than use a trademark symbol with every occurrence of a trademarked name, logos, or image we use the names, logos, or images only in an editorial fashion and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark.

The use in this publication of trade names, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

Distributed to the book trade worldwide by Springer Science+Business Media LLC., 233 Spring Street, 6th Floor, New York, NY 10013. Phone 1-800-SPRINGER, fax (201) 348-4505, e-mail [orders-ny@springer-sbm.com](mailto:orders-ny@springer-sbm.com), or visit [www.springeronline.com](http://www.springeronline.com).

For information on translations, please e-mail [rights@apress.com](mailto:rights@apress.com) or visit [www.apress.com](http://www.apress.com).

Apress and friends of ED books may be purchased in bulk for academic, corporate, or promotional use. eBook versions and licenses are also available for most titles. For more information, reference our Special Bulk Sales—eBook Licensing web page at [www.apress.com/info/bulksales](http://www.apress.com/info/bulksales).

The information in this book is distributed on an “as is” basis, without warranty. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this work, neither the author(s) nor Apress shall have any liability to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by the information contained in this work.

The source code for this book is freely available to readers at [www.friendsofed.com](http://www.friendsofed.com) in the Downloads section.

## Credits

**President and Publisher:** Paul Manning      **Coordinating Editor:** Debra Kelly

**Lead Editor:** Ben Renow-Clarke      **Copy Editor:** Sharon Terdeman

**Technical Reviewer:** Cheridan Kerr      **Compositor:** Bronkella Publishing

**Editorial Board:**  
Clay Andres, Steve Anglin, Mark Beckner,  
Ewan Buckingham, Gary Cornell,  
Jonathan Gennick, Jonathan Hassell,  
Michelle Lowman, Matthew Moodie,  
Duncan Parkes, Jeffrey Pepper,  
Frank Pohlmann, Douglas Pundick,  
Ben Renow-Clarke, Dominic Shakeshaft,  
Matt Wade, Tom Welsh

**Indexer:**  
Brenda Miller

**Artist:**  
April Milne

**Cover Artist:**  
Corné van Dooren

**Cover Designer:**  
Anna Ishchenko

*To Daniel, Aviva, Anne, Esther, and Joseph, who is still in our lives, and for the newest members of the family: Allison, Liam, and Grant.*

# Contents at a Glance

---

<b>Contents at a Glance</b>	iv
<b>Contents</b>	v
<b>About the Author</b>	x
<b>About the Technical Reviewer</b>	xi
<b>Acknowledgments</b>	xii
<b>Introduction</b>	xiii
<b>Chapter 1: The Basics</b>	1
<b>Chapter 2: Dice Game</b>	21
<b>Chapter 3: Bouncing Ball</b>	67
<b>Chapter 4: Cannonball and Slingshot</b>	97
<b>Chapter 5: The Memory (aka Concentration) Game</b>	141
<b>Chapter 6: Quiz</b>	179
<b>Chapter 7: Mazes</b>	213
<b>Chapter 8: Rock, Paper, Scissors</b>	259
<b>Chapter 9: Hangman</b>	287
<b>Chapter 10: Blackjack</b>	317
<b>Index</b>	347

# Contents

---

<b>Contents at a Glance</b> .....	iv
<b>Contents</b> .....	v
<b>About the Author</b> .....	x
<b>About the Technical Reviewer</b> .....	xi
<b>Acknowledgments</b> .....	xii
<b>Introduction</b> .....	xiii
<b>Chapter 1: The Basics</b> .....	1
Introduction .....	1
Critical requirements .....	3
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	4
Basic HTML structure and tags .....	4
JavaScript programming .....	10
Building the application and making it your own .....	11
Testing and uploading the application.....	19
Summary .....	19
<b>Chapter 2: Dice Game</b> .....	21
Introduction .....	21
Critical requirements .....	24
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	24
Pseudo-random processing and mathematical expressions .....	24
Variables and assignment statements .....	25
Programmer-defined functions .....	26
Conditional statements: <i>if</i> and <i>switch</i> .....	27
Drawing on the canvas .....	29
Building the application and making it your own .....	38
Throwing a single die .....	40
Throwing two dice .....	47
The complete game of craps .....	55

## CONTENTS

---

Testing and uploading the application.....	65
Summary .....	65
<b>Chapter 3: Bouncing Ball.....</b>	<b>67</b>
Introduction .....	67
Critical requirements .....	70
HTML5, CSS, JavaScript features .....	70
Drawing a ball, image, and gradient .....	70
Building the application and making it your own .....	80
Testing and uploading the application.....	96
Summary .....	96
<b>Chapter 4: Cannonball and Slingshot.....</b>	<b>97</b>
Introduction .....	97
Critical requirements .....	100
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	101
Arrays and programmer-defined objects .....	101
Rotations and translations for drawing.....	103
Drawing line segments.....	107
Mouse events for pulling on the slingshot.....	108
Changing the list of items displayed using array splice .....	110
Distance between points.....	110
Building the application and making it your own .....	111
Cannonball: with cannon, angle, and speed .....	118
Slingshot: using a mouse to set parameters of flight .....	128
Testing and uploading the application.....	140
Summary .....	140
<b>Chapter 5: The Memory (aka Concentration) Game .....</b>	<b>141</b>
Introduction .....	141
Critical requirements .....	146
HTML5, CSS, JavaScript features .....	146
Representing cards .....	146
Using Date for timing .....	147
Providing a pause .....	148

Drawing text .....	149
Drawing polygons .....	151
Shuffling cards .....	152
Implementing clicking on a card .....	152
Preventing certain types of cheating .....	153
Building the application and making it your own .....	154
Testing and uploading the application .....	177
Summary .....	177
<b>Chapter 6: Quiz .....</b>	<b>179</b>
Introduction .....	179
Critical requirements .....	183
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	184
Storing and retrieving information in arrays .....	184
Creating HTML during program execution .....	186
Changing elements by modifying CSS using JavaScript code .....	189
Text feedback using form and input elements .....	190
Presenting video .....	191
Building the application and making it your own .....	193
Testing and uploading the application .....	210
Summary .....	210
<b>Chapter 7: Mazes .....</b>	<b>213</b>
Introduction .....	213
Critical requirements .....	218
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	219
Representation of walls and the token .....	219
Mouse events to build and position a wall .....	219
Detecting the arrow keys .....	220
Collision detection: token and any wall .....	222
Using local storage .....	224
Encoding data for local storage .....	230
Radio buttons .....	231

## CONTENTS

---

Building the application and making it your own .....	232
Creating the second maze application .....	246
Testing and uploading application .....	257
Summary .....	257
<b>Chapter 8: Rock, Paper, Scissors .....</b>	<b>259</b>
Introduction .....	259
Critical requirements .....	262
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	263
Providing graphical buttons for the player .....	263
Generating the computer move .....	267
Starting off .....	274
Building the application and making it your own .....	275
Testing and uploading the application .....	284
Summary .....	285
<b>Chapter 9: Hangman .....</b>	<b>287</b>
Introduction .....	287
Critical requirements .....	295
HTML5, CSS, JavaScript features .....	295
Storing a word list as an array defined in an external script file .....	295
Generating and positioning HTML markup, then making the markup be buttons, and then disabling the buttons .....	296
Creating progressive drawings on a canvas .....	298
Maintaining the game state and determining a win or loss .....	300
Checking a guess and revealing letters in the secret word by setting <code>textContent</code> .....	301
Building the application and making it your own .....	302
Testing and uploading the application .....	315
Summary .....	315
<b>Chapter 10: Blackjack .....</b>	<b>317</b>
Introduction .....	317
Critical requirements .....	322
HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features .....	323
Building the application and making it your own .....	330

Testing and uploading the application.....	346
Summary .....	346
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>347</b>

# About the Author

---



**Jeanine Meyer** is a Full Professor at Purchase College/State University of New York. She teaches courses for mathematics/computer science and new media majors, as well as a mathematics class for humanities students. The web site for her academic activities is <http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer>. Before coming to academia, she was a Research Staff Member and Manager at IBM Research, working on robotics and manufacturing research and later as a consultant for IBM's educational grant programs.

For Jeanine, programming is both a hobby and a vocation. Every day she plays computer puzzles online (set game, kakuro, hashi, hitori and—often, still—tetris), and she does the crossword puzzle and ken ken in the newspaper (by hand and in ink—it's easier that way). She enjoys cooking, baking, eating, gardening, travel, and a moderate amount of walking. She greatly enjoys listening to her mother play piano and occasionally plays the flute. She is an active volunteer for progressive causes and candidates.

# About the Technical Reviewer

---

**Cheridan Kerr** has been involved in Web Development and Design since 1997 when she began working in a research team for the Y2K Millennium Bug. It was here she learned about the Internet and promptly fell in love with the medium. In her career she has been responsible for web sites in the early 00s such as Weight Watchers Australia and **Quicken.com.au**, and she worked as Creative Services Manager of Yahoo!7 in Australia on clients such as Toyota, 20th Century Fox, and Ford. Currently she is working as Head of Digital for an Australian advertising agency.

# Acknowledgments

---

Much appreciation to my students and colleagues at Purchase College/State University of New York for their inspiration, stimulation, and support.

Thanks to the crew at friends of ED: Ben Renow-Clarke, who encouraged me even before I quite grasped the idea of writing this book; Debra Kelly, who is an excellent project manager—which I needed; Sheridan Kerr, the technical reviewer, who provided important suggestions; and the art manager and many others I don't know by name.

And lastly, thanks to you, the reader. I am confident you can build on these ideas to make wonderful web sites.

# Introduction

---

There's been considerable enthusiasm about the new capabilities of HTML5, and even suggestions that no other technologies or products are necessary to produce dynamic, engrossing, interactive web sites. That may be overstating things, but it is true the new features are exciting. It now is possible, using just HTML5, Cascading Style Sheets, and JavaScript, to draw lines, arcs, circles and ovals on the screen and specify events and event handling to produce animation and respond to user actions. You can include video and audio on your web site with standard controls, or place the video or audio in your application exactly when needed. You can create forms that validate the input and provide immediate feedback to users. You can use a facility similar to cookies to store information on the client computer. And you can use new elements, such as header and footer, to help structure your documents.

This book is based on my teaching practices and past writings. Delving into the features of a technology or general programming concepts is best done when there is a need. Games, especially familiar and simple ones, supply the need and thus the motivation and much of the explanation. When learning a new programming language, my first step is to program the game of craps. If I can build a ballistics simulation with animation, such as the slingshot game, and make a video or audio clip play when a specific condition occurs, I am happy. If I can construct my own maze of walls, draw a stick figure for hangman, and store information on the player's computer, I am ecstatic. And that's what we do in this book. As you see how to build these simple games, you'll build your expertise as well.

This goal of this book, developed with considerable help from the friends of ED staff and the technical reviewer, is to prepare you to produce your own web sites, including games and other dynamic applications, with a gentle introduction to the essentials of HTML5 and programming.

At the time of writing this book, not all browsers support all the HTML5 features. The applications have been tested using Chrome, FireFox, and Safari.

## Who is this book for?

This book is for people who want to learn how HTML 5 can help build dynamic, exciting web sites. It's for you if you know something about programming and want to see what HTML 5 brings to the table. And it's also for you if you have no programming experience whatsoever. Perhaps you're a web designer or web site owner and you want to know how to make things happen behind the scenes. With this book, we want to showcase the new features of HTML5 and demystify the art of programming. Programming is an art, and creating appealing games and other applications requires real talent. However, if you can put together words to form sentences and sentences to form paragraphs, and you have some sense of logic, you can program.

## How is this book structured?

The book consists of 10 chapters, each organized around a familiar game or similar application. There is considerable redundancy among the chapters so you can skip around if you like, though the games do get more complex. Each chapter starts by listing the technical features that will be covered and describing the application. We look first at the critical requirements in a general sense: what do we need to implement the application, independent of any specific technology. We then focus on the features of HTML5, CSS,

JavaScript, or general programming methodology that satisfy the requirements. Finally, we examine the implementation of the application in detail. I break out the code line by line in a table, with comments next to each line. In the cases where multiple versions of a game are described, only the new lines of code are annotated. This isn't to deprive you of information, but encourage you to see what is similar, what is different, and how you can build applications in stages. Each chapter includes suggestions on how to make the application your own, and how to test and upload the application to a web site. The summary at the end of each chapter highlights what you've learned and what you'll find ahead.

## Conventions used in this book

The applications in this book each are HTML documents. The JavaScript is in a script element in the head element and the CSS is in the style element in the head element. The body element contains the static html, including any canvas elements. Several examples depend on external image files and one example requires external video files and another external audio files.

## Layout conventions

To keep this book as clear and easy to follow as possible, the following text conventions are used throughout:

- Important words or concepts are normally highlighted on the first appearance in *italic* type.
- Code is presented in *fixed-width* font.
- The complete code for each application is presented in table with the left hand column holding each statement and the right hand column holding an explanatory comment.
- Pseudo-code is written in *italic fixed-width* font.
- Sometimes code won't fit on a single line in a book. Where this happens, I use an arrow like this:  
→.

So, with the formalities out of the way, let's get started.

## Chapter 1



# The Basics

---

In this chapter, we will cover

- the basic structure of an HTML document
- the html, head, title, script, style, body, img, and a elements
- a Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) example
- a JavaScript code example, using Date and document.write

## Introduction

Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is the language for delivering content on the Web. HTML is not owned by anyone, but is the result of people working in many countries and many organizations to define the features of the language. An HTML document is a text document which you can produce using any text editor. HTML documents contain elements surrounded by tags—text that starts with a `<` symbol and ends with a `>` symbol. An example of a tag is ``. This particular tag will display the image held in the file `home.gif`. These tags are the *markup*. It is through the use of tags that hyperlinks, images, and other media are included in web pages.

Basic HTML can include directives for formatting in a language called Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) and programs for interaction in a language called JavaScript. Browsers, such as Firefox and Chrome, interpret the HTML along with any CSS and JavaScript to produce what we experience when we visit a web site. HTML holds the content of the web site, with tags providing information on the nature and structure of the content as well as references to images and other media. CSS specifies the formatting. The same content can be formatted in different ways. JavaScript is a programming language that's used to make the web site dynamic and interactive. In all but the smallest working groups, different people may be responsible for the HTML, CSS, and JavaScript, but it's always a good idea to have a basic understanding of how these different tools work together. If you are already familiar with the basics of HTML and how CSS and JavaScript can be added together, you may want to skip ahead to the next chapter. Still, it may be worth casting your eye over the content in this chapter, to make sure you are up to speed on everything before we start on the first core examples.

The latest version of HTML (and its associated CSS and JavaScript) is HTML5. It is generating considerable excitement because of features such as the canvas for displaying pictures and animation; support for video and audio; and new tags for defining common document elements such as header, section, and footer. You can create a sophisticated, highly interactive web site with the new HTML5. As of this writing, not all browsers accept all the features, but you can get started learning HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript now. Learning JavaScript will introduce you to general programming concepts that will be beneficial if you try to learn any other programming language or if you work with programmers as part of a team.

The approach I'll use in this book is to explain HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript concepts in the context of specific examples, most of which will be familiar games. Along the way, I'll use small examples to demonstrate specific features. Hopefully, this will help you both understand what you want to do and appreciate how to do it. You will know where we are headed as I explain the concepts and details.

The task for this chapter is to build a web page of links to other web sites. In this way, you'll get a basic understanding of the structure of an HTML document, with a small amount of CSS code and JavaScript code. For this and other examples, please think of how to make the project meaningful to you. The page could be a list of your own projects, favorite sites, or sites on a particular topic. For each site, you'll see text and a hyperlink. The second example includes some extra formatting in the form of boxes around the text, pictures, and the day's date and time. Figure 1-1 and Figure 1-2 show the different examples I've created.

## My games

The [Dice game](#) presents the game called craps.

The [Cannonball](#) is a ballistics simulation. A ball appears to move on the screen in an arc. The program determines when it hits the ground or the target. The player can adjust the speed and the angle.

The [Slingshot](#) simulates shooting a slingshot. A ball moves on the screen, with the angle and speed depending on how far the player has pulled back on the slingshot using the mouse.

The [Concentration/memory game](#) presents a set of plain rectangles you can think of as the backs of cards. The player clicks on first one and then another and pictures are revealed. If the two pictures represent a match, the two cards are removed. Otherwise, the backs are displayed. The game continues until all matches are made. The time elapsed is calculated and displayed.

The [Quiz game](#) presents the player with 4 boxes holding names of countries and 4 boxes holding names of capital cities. These are selected randomly from a larger list. The player clicks to indicate matches and the boxes moved to make the guessed boxes be together. The program displays whether or not the player is correct.

The [Maze](#) program is a multi-stage game. The player builds a maze by using the mouse to build walls. The player then can move a token through the maze. The player also can save the maze on the local computer using a name chosen by the player and retrieve it later, even after closing the browser or even turning off the computer.

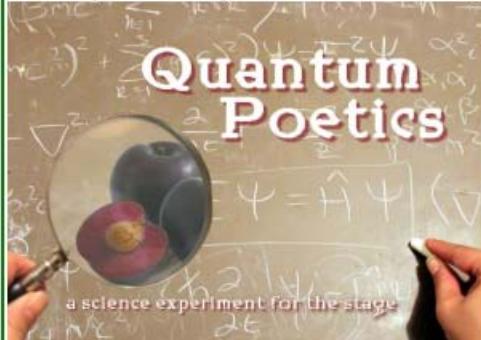
**Figure 1-1.** An annotated list of games

Mon Aug 16 2010 13:21:54 GMT-0400 (Eastern Daylight Time)

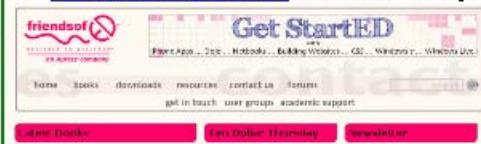
## Favorite Sites

The [Jeanine Meyer's Academic Activities](#) displays information on my current and past courses, along with publications and other activities.

The [Stolen Chair Theatre Company](#) is the website for a theatre company performing mainly in New York City. This is the postcard for their Summer, 2010 production.



The [Friends of ED publishers](#) is the site for the publishers of this book.



**Figure 1-2.** Favorite sites, with extra formatting

When you reload the Favorite Sites page, the date and time will change to the current date and time according to your computer.

## Critical requirements

The requirements for the list of links application are the very fundamental requirements for building a web page containing text, links, and images. For the example shown in Figure 1-1, each entry appears as a paragraph. In the example shown in Figure 1-2, in contrast, each entry has a box around it. The second example also includes images and a way to obtain the current day, date, and time. Later applications will require more discussion, but for this one we'll go straight to how to implement it using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript.

# HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

As I noted, HTML documents are text, so how do we specify links, pictures, formatting, and coding? The answer is in the markup, that is, the tags. Along with the HTML that defines the content, you'll typically find CSS styles, which can be specified either inside the HTML document or in an external document. You might also include JavaScript for interactivity, again specified in the HTML document or in an external document. We'll start with a look at how you can build simple HTML tags, and how you can add inline CSS and JavaScript all within the same document.

## Basic HTML structure and tags

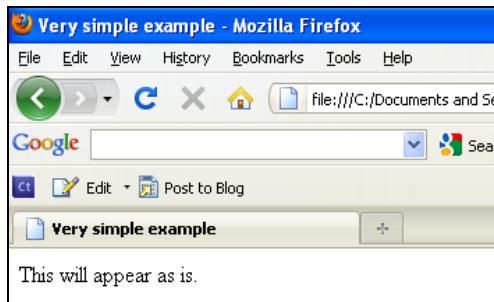
An HTML element begins with a starting tag, which is followed by the element content and an ending tag. The ending tag includes a / symbol followed by the element type, for example /head. Elements can be nested within elements. A standard HTML document looks like this:

```
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Very simple example
    </title>
  </head>
  <body>
    This will appear as is.
  </body>
</html>
```

Note that I've indented the nested tags here to make them more obvious, but HTML itself ignores this indentation (or whitespace, as it's known), and you don't need to add it to your own files. In fact, for most of the examples throughout this book I won't be indenting my code.

This document consists of the `html` element, indicated by the starting tag `<html>` and ending with the closing tag `</html>`.

HTML documents typically have a head and a body element, as this one has. This head element contains one element, `title`. The HTML title shows up different places in different browsers. Figure 1-3 shows the title, "Very Simple Example" at the top-left portion of the screen and also on a tab in Firefox.



**Figure 1-3.** The HTML title in two places in Firefox

In most cases, you will create something within the body of the web page that you'll think of as a title, but it won't be the HTML title! Figure 1-3 also shows the body of the web page: the short piece of text. Notice that the words `html`, `head`, `title` and `body` do not appear. The tags "told" the browser how to display the HTML document.

We can do much more with text, but let's go on to see how to get images to appear. This requires an `img` element. Unlike `html`, `head`, and `body` elements that use starting and ending tags, the `img` element just uses one tag. It is called a singleton tag. Its element type is `img` (not `image`) and you put all the information with the tag itself using what are termed attributes. What information? The most important item is the name of the file that holds the image. The tag

```

```

tells the browser to look for a file with the name `frog` and the file type `jpg`. In this case, the browser looks in the same directory or folder as the HTML file. You can also refer to image files in other places and I'll show this later. The `src` stands for source. It is termed an attribute of the element. The slash before the `>` indicates that this is a singleton tag. There are common attributes for different element types, but most element types have additional attributes. Another attribute for `img` elements is the `width` attribute.

```

```

This specifies that the image should be displayed with a width of 200 pixels. The height will be whatever is necessary to keep the image at its original aspect ratio. If you want specific widths and heights, even if that may distort the image, specify both `width` and `height` attributes.

*Tip: You'll see examples (maybe even some of mine) in which the slash is omitted and which work just fine, but it is considered good practice to include it. Similarly, you'll see examples in which there are no quotation marks around the name of the file. HTML is more forgiving in terms of syntax (punctuation) than most other programming systems. Finally, you'll see HTML documents that start with a very fancy tag of type `!DOCTYPE` and have the `HTML` tag include other information. At this point, we don't need this so I will keep things as simple as I can (but no simpler, to quote Einstein).*

Producing hyperlinks is similar to producing images. The type of element for a hyperlink is `a` and the important attribute is `href`.

```
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer">Jeanine Meyer's Academic Activities </a>
```

As you can see, this element has a starting and ending tag. The content of the element, whatever is between the two tags—in this case, Jeanine Meyer's Academic Activities—is what shows up in blue and underlined. The starting tag begins with `a`. One way to remember this is to think of it as the most important element in HTML, so it uses the first letter of the alphabet. You can also think of an anchor, which is what the `a` actually stands for, but that isn't as meaningful for me. The `href` attribute (think hypertext reference) specifies the web site where the browser goes when the hyperlink is clicked. Notice that this is a full Web address (called a Universal Resource Locator, or URL, for short).

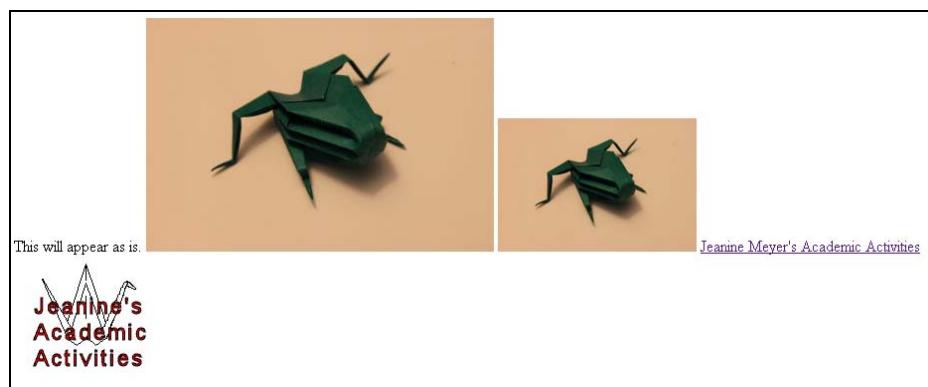
We can combine a hyperlink element with an `img` element to produce a picture on the screen that a user can click on. Remember that elements can be nested within other elements. Instead of putting text after the starting `<a>` tag, put an `<img>` tag:

```
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine">  
  
</a>
```

Let's put these examples together now:

```
<html>  
<head>  
<title>Second example </title>  
</head>  
<body>  
This will appear as is.  
  
  
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer">Jeanine Meyer's Academic Activities </a>  
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer"></a>  
</body>  
</html>
```

I created the HTML file, saved it as `second.html`, and then opened it up in the Chrome browser. Figure 1-4 shows what is displayed.



**Figure 1-4.** Example with images and hyperlinks

This produces the text; the image in its original width and height; the image with the width fixed at 200 pixels and height proportional; a hyperlink that will take you to my web page (I promise); and another link that uses an image that will also take you to my web page. However, this isn't quite what I had in mind. I wanted these elements spaced down the page.

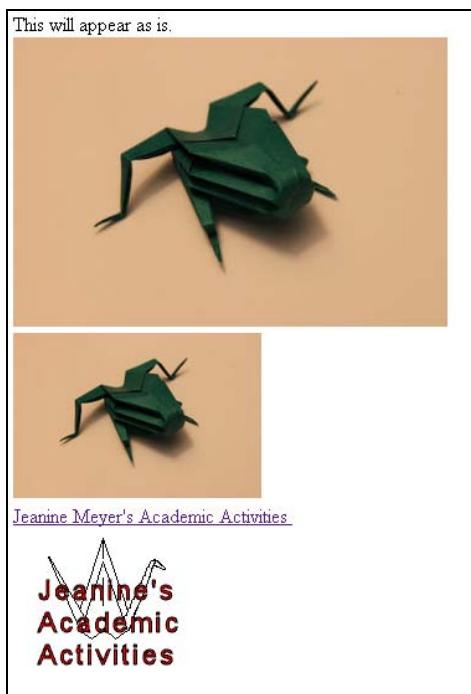
This demonstrates something you need to remember: HTML ignores line breaks and other white space. If you want a line break, you have to specify it. One way is to use the `<br/>` singleton tag. I'll show other ways later. Take a look at the following modified code. Notice that the `<br/>` tags don't need to be on a line by themselves.

```
<head>
<title>Second example </title>
<body>
This will appear as is. <br/>

<br/>

<br/>
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer">Jeanine Meyer's Academic Activities </a>
<br/>
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer"></a>
</body>
</html>
```

Figure 1-5 shows what this code produces.



**Figure 1-5.** Text, images, and links with line breaks

There are many HTML element types: the h1 through h6 heading elements produce text of different sizes; there are various elements for lists and tables, and others for forms. CSS, as we'll see in a moment, is also used for formatting. You can select different fonts, background colors, and colors for the text, and control the layout of the document. It's considered good practice to put formatting in CSS, interactivity in JavaScript, and keep the HTML for the content. HTML5 provides new structural elements, such as article, section, footer, and header, and this makes it even easier to put the formatting in CSS. Doing

this lets you easily change the formatting and the interactions. Formatting, including document layout, is a large topic. In this book, I stick to the basics.

## Using cascading style sheets

CSS is a special language just for formatting. A style is essentially a rule that specifies how a particular element will be formatted. This means you can put style information in a variety of places: a separate file, a style element located in the head element, or a style within the HTML document, perhaps within the one element you want to format in a particular way. The styling information cascades, trickles down, unless a different style is specified. To put it another way, the style closest to the element is the one that's used. For example, you might use your official company fonts as given in the style section in the head element to flow through most of the text, but include specification within the local element to style one particular piece of text. Because that style is closest to the element, it is the one that is used.

The basic format includes an indicator of what is to be formatted followed by one or more directives. In the application for this chapter (available at [www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html](http://www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html)), I'll specify the formatting for elements of type section, namely a border or box around each item, margins, padding, and alignment, and a background of white. The complete HTML document in Listing 1-1 is a mixture (some would say a mess!) of features. The elements body and p (paragraph) are part of the original version of HTML. The section element is one of the new element types added in HTML5. The section element does need formatting, unlike body and p, which have default formatting that the body and each p element will start on a new line. CSS can modify the formatting of old and new element types. Notice that the background color for the text in the section is different from the background color for the text outside the section.

In the code in Listing 1-1, I specify styles for the body element (there is just one) and the section element. If I had more than one section element, the styling would apply to each of them. The style for the body specifies a background color and a color for the text. CSS accepts a set of 16 colors by name, including black, white, red, blue, green, cyan, and pink. You can also specify color using RGB (red green blue) hexadecimal codes, but you'll need to use a graphics program, such as Adobe Photoshop, Corel Paint Shop Pro, or Adobe Flash Professional to figure out the RGB values, or you can experiment. I used Paint Shop Pro to determine the RGB values for the green in the frog head picture and used that for the border as well.

The text-align directives are just what they sound like: they indicate whether to center the material or align it to the left. The font-size sets the size of text in pixels. Borders are tricky and don't appear to be consistent across browsers. Here I've specified a solid green border of 4 pixels. The width specification for section indicates that the browser should use 85 percent of the window, whatever that is. The specification for p sets the width of the paragraph at 250 pixels. Padding refers to the spacing between the text and the borders of the section. The margin is the spacing between the section and its surroundings.

### **Listing 1-1.** A Complete HTML Document with Styles

```
<html>
<head>
<title>CSS example </title>
<style>
body {
    background-color:tan;
```

```
        color: #EE015;
        text-align:center;
        font-size:22px;
    }
    section {
        width:85%;
        border:4px #00FF63 solid;
        text-align:left;
        padding:5px;
        margin:10px;
        background-color: white;
    }
    p {
        width: 250px;
    }
</style>
</head>
<body>
The background here is tan and the text is the totally arbitrary RED GREEN BLUE
value #EE015. <br/>
<section>Within the section, the background color is white. There is text with
additional HTML markup, followed by a paragraph with text. Then, outside the
section there will be text, followed by an image, more text and then a
hyperlink. <p>The border color of the section matches the color of the
frog image. </p></section>
<br/>
As you may have noticed, I like origami. The next image represents a frog head.<br/>
 <br/>If you want to learn how to fold it, go to
<a href="http://faculty.purchase.edu/jeanine.meyer/origami">the Meyer Family
Origami Page </a>
</body>
</html>
```

This produces the screen shown in Figure 1-6.

The background here is tan and the text is the RED GREEN BLUE value #DD00DD

Within the section, the background color is white. There is text additional markup, followed by a paragraph with text. Then, outside the section there will be text, followed by an image, more text and then a hyperlink.

The border color of the section matches the color of the frog image.

As you may have noticed, I like origami. The next image represents the frog head.



If you want to learn how to fold it, go to [the Meyer Family Origami Page](#)



**Figure 1-6.** Sample CSS styles

*Tip: Don't be concerned if you don't understand everything immediately—you'll find lots of help on the Web. In particular, see the official source for HTML 5 at <http://dev.w3.org/html5/spec/Overview.html>.*

There are many things you can do with CSS. You can use it to specify formatting for types of elements, as shown above; you can specify that elements are part of a class; and you can identify individual elements using the id attribute. In Chapter 6 where we create a quiz, I use CSS to position specific elements in the window and then JavaScript to move them around.

## JavaScript programming

JavaScript is a programming language with built-in features for accessing parts of an HTML document, including styles in the CSS element. It is termed a scripting language to distinguish it from compiled languages, such as C++. Compiled languages are translated all at once, prior to use, while scripting languages are interpreted line by line by browsers. This text assumes no prior programming experience or knowledge of JavaScript, but it may help to consult other books, such as *Getting Started with JavaScript*, by Terry McNavage (friends of ED, 2010), or online sources such as <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript>. Each browser owns its version of JavaScript.

An HTML document holds JavaScript in a script element, located in the head element. To display the time and date information as shown in Figure 1-2, I put the following within the head element of the HTML document:

```
<script>
document.write(Date());
</script>
```

JavaScript, like other programming languages, is made up of statements of various types. In later chapters, I'll show you assignment statements, compound statements such as if and switch and for

statements, and statements that create what are called programmer-defined functions. A function is one or more statements that work together in a block and can be called anytime you need that functionality. Functions save writing out the same code over and over. JavaScript supplies many built-in functions. Certain functions are associated with objects (more on this later) and are called methods. The code

```
document.write("hello");
```

is a JavaScript statement that invokes the `write` method of the `document` object with the argument "hello". An argument is additional information passed to a function or method. Statements are terminated by semicolons. This piece of code will write out the literal string of characters h, e, l, l, o as part of the HTML document.

The `document.write` method writes out anything within the parentheses. Since I wanted the information written out to change as the date and time change, I needed a way to access the current date and time, so I used the built-in JavaScript `Date` function. This function produces an object with the date and time. Later, you'll see how to use `Date` objects to compute how long it takes for a player to complete a game. For now, all I want to do is display the current date and time information, and that's just what the code

```
document.write(Date());
```

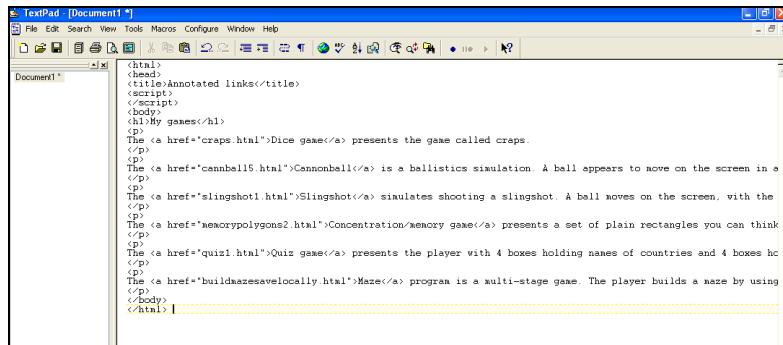
does. To use the formal language of programming: this code calls (invokes) the `write` method of the `document` object, a built-in piece of code. The period (.) indicates that the `write` to be invoked is a method associated with the `document` produced by the HTML file. So, something is written out as part of the HTML document. What is written out? Whatever is between the opening parenthesis and the closing parenthesis. And what is that? It is the result of the call to the built-in function `Date`. The `Date` function gets information maintained by the local computer and hands it off to the `write` method. `Date` also requires the use of parentheses, which is why you see so many. The `write` method displays the date and time information as part of the HTML document, as shown in Figure 1-2. The way these constructs are combined is typical of programming languages. The statement ends with a semi-colon. Why not a period? A period has other uses in JavaScript, such as indicating methods and also for decimal points for numbers.

Natural languages, such as English, and programming languages have much in common: different types of statements; punctuation using certain symbols; and a grammar for the correct positioning of elements. In programming, we use the term notation instead of punctuation, and syntax instead of grammar. Both programming languages and natural languages also let you build up quite complex statements out of separate parts. However, there is a fundamental difference: As I tell my students, chances are good that much of what I say in class is not grammatically correct, but they'll still understand me. But when you're "talking" to a computer via a programming language, your code must be perfect in terms of the grammatical rules of the language to get what you want. The good news is that unlike a human audience, computers do not exhibit impatience or any other human emotion so you can take the time you need to get things right. There's also some bad news that may take you a while to appreciate: If you make a mistake in grammar—termed a syntactic error—in HTML, CSS, or JavaScript, the browser still tries to display something. It's up to you figure out what and where the problem is when you don't get the results you wanted in your work.

## Building the application and making it your own

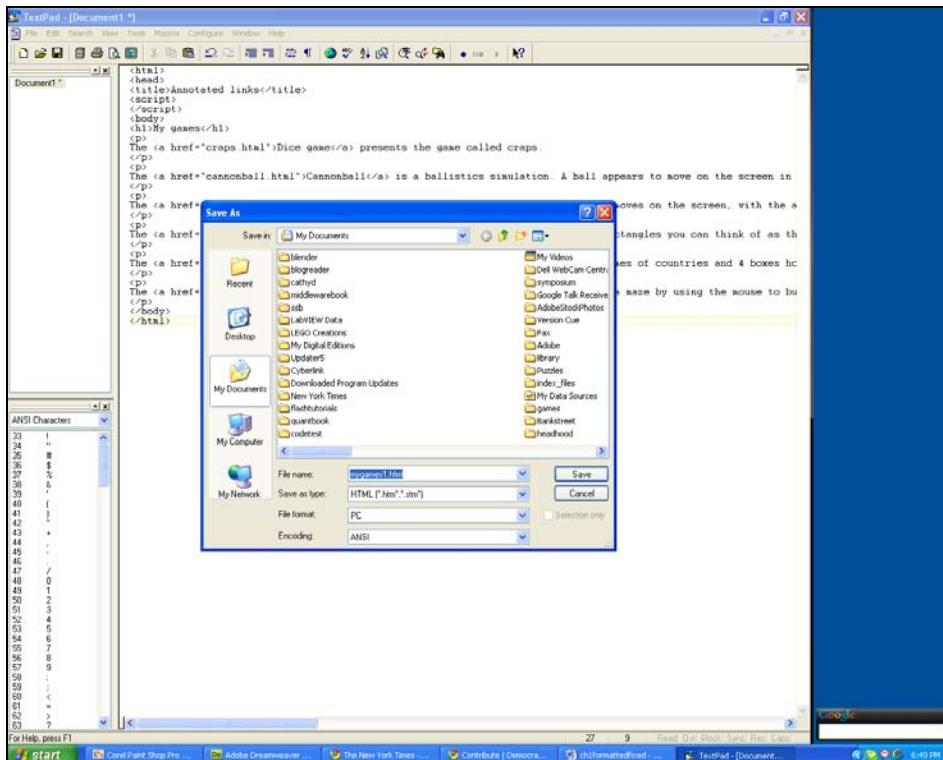
You build an HTML document using a text editor and you view/test/play the document using a browser. Though you can use any text editor program to write the HTML, I suggest TextPad for PCs and TextWrangler for Macs. These are shareware, which makes them relatively inexpensive. Don't use a word

processing program, which may insert non-text characters. Notepad also works, though TextPad has benefits such as color-coding that I'll demonstrate. To use the editor, you open it up and type in the code. Figure 1-7 shows what the TextPad screen looks like.



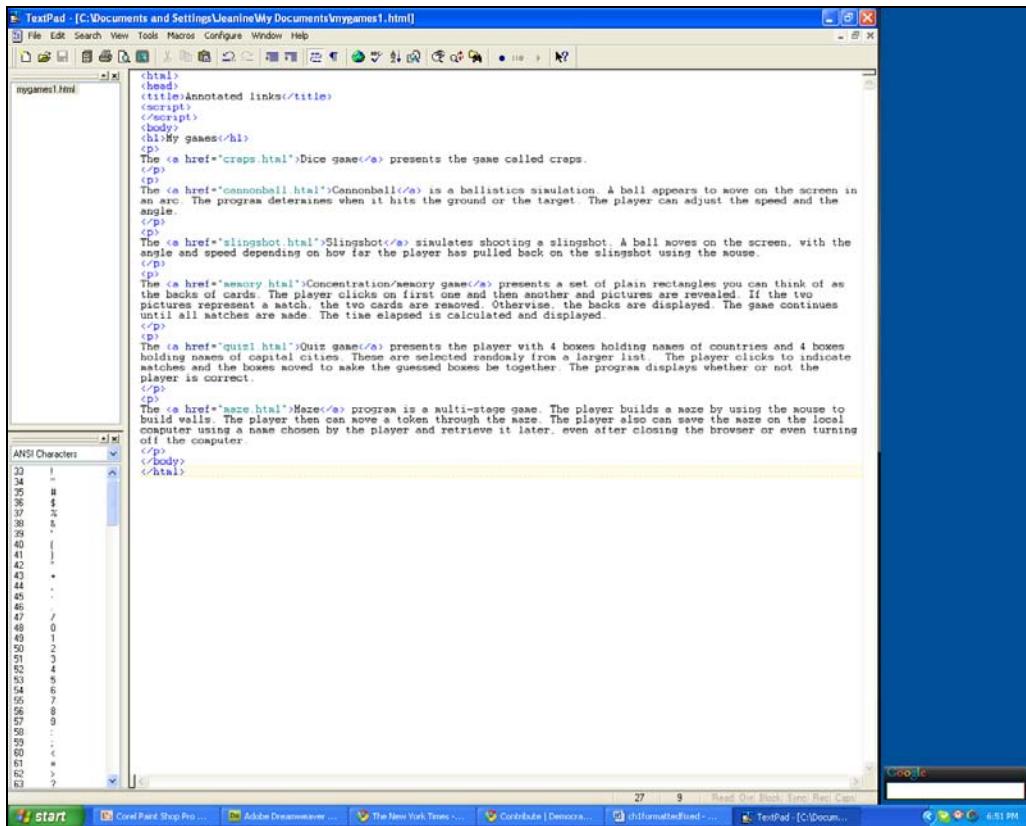
**Figure 1-7.** Starting off in TextPad

You will want to save your work frequently and, most important, save it as the file type .html. In TextPad, click on **File > Save As** and then change the **Save as type** to HTML, as shown in Figure 1-8.



**Figure 1-8.** Saving a file as type HTML

Notice that I gave the file a name and that I can also change the folder from My Documents to something else if I want. After saving the file, and clicking on Configure > Word Wrap (to make the long lines visible on the screen), the window appears as shown in Figure 1-9.



**Figure 1-9.** After saving the file as HTML and invoking word wrap

The color coding, which you'll see only after the file is saved as HTML, indicates tags and quoted strings. This can be valuable for catching many errors.

Now let's delve into the HTML coding, first for the list of annotated links and then for the favorite sites. The code uses the features described in the previous section. Table 1-1 shows the complete code for this application: paragraphs of text with links to different files, all located in the same folder.

**Table 1-1.** The “My games” Annotated Links Code

Code	Explanation
<html>	Opening html tag
<head>	Opening head tag
<title>Annotated links</title>	Opening title tag, the title text and closing title tag
<body>	Opening body tag
<h1>My games</h1>	Opening h1 tag, text and then closing h1 tag. This will make “My games” appear in a big font. The actual font will be the default.
<p>	Opening p for paragraph tag
The <a href="craps.html">Dice game</a> presents the game called craps.	Text with an a element. The opening a tag has the attribute href set to the value craps.html. Presumably this is a file in the same folder as this HTML file. The contents of the a element—whatever is between the <a> and the </a>—will be displayed, first in blue and then in mauve once clicked, and underlined.
</p>	Closing p tag
<p>	Opening p tag
The <a href="cannonball.html">Cannonball</a> is a ballistics simulation. A ball appears to move on the screen in an arc. The program determines when the ball hits the ground or the target. The player can adjust the speed and the angle.	See the previous case. The a element here refers to the cannonball.html file and the displayed text is Cannonball.
</p>	Closing p tag
<p>	Opening p tag

Code	Explanation
The <code>&lt;a href="slingshot.html"&gt;Slingshot&lt;/a&gt;</code> simulates shooting a slingshot. A ball moves on the screen, with the angle and speed depending on how far the player has pulled back on the slingshot using the mouse.	See previous. This paragraph contains the hyperlink to slingshot.html.
</p>	Closing p tag
<p>	Opening p tag
The <code>&lt;a href="memory.html"&gt;Concentration/memory game&lt;/a&gt;</code> presents a set of plain rectangles you can think of as the backs of cards. The player clicks on first one and then another and pictures are revealed. If the two pictures represent a match, the two cards are removed. Otherwise, the backs are displayed. The game continues until all matches are made. The time elapsed is calculated and displayed.	See previous. This paragraph contains the hyperlink to memory.html.
</p>	Closing p tag
<p>	Opening p tag
The <code>&lt;a href="quiz1.html"&gt;Quiz game&lt;/a&gt;</code> presents the player with 4 boxes holding names of countries and 4 boxes holding names of capital cities. These are selected randomly from a larger list. The player clicks to indicate matches and the boxes are moved to put the guessed boxes together. The program displays whether or not the player is correct.	See previous. This paragraph contains the hyperlink to quiz1.html
</p>	Closing p tag
<p>	Opening p tag

Code	Explanation
The <code>&lt;a href="maze.html"&gt;Maze&lt;/a&gt;</code> program is a multi-stage game. The player builds a maze by using the mouse to build walls. The player then can move a token through the maze. The player can also save the maze on the local computer using a name chosen by the player and retrieve it later, even after closing the browser or turning off the computer.	See previous. This paragraph contains the hyperlink to <code>maze.html</code> .
<code>&lt;/p&gt;</code>	Closing p tag
<code>&lt;/body&gt;</code>	Closing body tag
<code>&lt;/html&gt;</code>	Closing html tag

The Favorite Site code has the features of the annotated list with the addition of formatting: a green box around each item and a picture in each item. See Table 1-2.

**Table 1-2.** The Favorites Sites Code

Code	Explanation
<code>&lt;html&gt;</code>	Opening html tag
<code>&lt;head&gt;</code>	Opening head tag
<code>&lt;title&gt;Annotated links&lt;/title&gt;</code>	Complete title element: opening and closing tag and Annotated links in between
<code>&lt;style&gt;</code>	Opening style tag. This means we're now going to use CSS.
<code>Article {</code>	Start of a style. The reference to what is being styled is all section elements. The style then has a brace - {. The opening and closing braces surround the style rule we're creating, much like opening and closing tags in HTML.
<code>width:60%;</code>	The width is set to 60% of the containing element. Note that each directive ends with a ; .
<code>text-align:left;</code>	Text is aligned to the left
<code>margin:10px;</code>	The margin is 10 pixels

Code	Explanation
border:2px green double;	The border is a 2-pixel green double line
padding:2px;	The space between the text and the border is 2 pixels
display:block;	The article is a block, meaning there are line breaks before and after
}	Closes the style for article
</style>	Closing style tag
<script>	Opening script tag. We are now writing JavaScript code
document.write(Date());	One statement of code: write out what is produced by the Date() call
</script>	Closing script tag
<body>	Opening body tag
<h3>Favorite Sites</h3>	Text surrounded by h3 and /h3 tags. This make the text appear somewhat larger than the norm.
<article>	Opening article tag
The <a href="../index.html">Jeanine Meyer's Academic Activities</a> displays information on my current and past courses, along with publications and other activities.	This text will be subject to the style specified. It includes an a element. Notice that the value for the href attribute is a relative reference: it says: go to the parent folder of the current folder and then to the index.html file. Two periods (..) is computer-speak for "go back a folder level", so if we were in the tree/fruit/apple folder, then ../index.html would take us back to the fruit folder to find the index file, and ../../index.html would take us back to the tree folder.
</article>	Closing article tag
<article>	Opening article tag

Code	Explanation
The <code>&lt;a href="http://stolenchair.org"&gt;Stolen Chair Theatre Company&lt;/a&gt;</code> is the web site of a theatre company performing mainly in New York City. This is the postcard for their Summer, 2010 production. <code>&lt;br/&gt;</code>	See previous. Notice that the value for the <code>href</code> attribute here is a full Web address, and that the HTML includes a <code>&lt;br/&gt;</code> tag. This will force a line break.
<code>&lt;img src="postcard.jpg" width="300"/&gt;</code>	An <code>img</code> tag. The source of the image is the file <code>postcard.jpg</code> . The width is set at 300 pixels.
<code>&lt;/article&gt;</code>	Closing <code>article</code> tag
<code>&lt;article&gt;</code>	Opening <code>article</code> tag
The <code>&lt;a href="http://friendsofed.com/"&gt;friends of ED publishers&lt;/a&gt;</code> is the site for the publishers of this book. <code>&lt;br/&gt;</code>	See previous. This also refers to a Web address. A <code>&lt;br/&gt;</code> tag will force a line break before the image.
<code>&lt;img src="friendsofed.gif" width="300"/&gt;</code>	An <code>img</code> element. The source is <code>friendsofed.gif</code> . The width is set at 300 pixels.
<code>&lt;/article&gt;</code>	Closing <code>article</code> tag
<code>&lt;/body&gt;</code>	Closing <code>body</code> tag
<code>&lt;/html&gt;</code>	Closing <code>html</code> tag

It is pretty straightforward how to make this application your own: use your own favorite sites. In most browsers, you can download and save image files if you want to use a site logo for the hyperlink, or you can include other pictures. It is my understanding that making a list of sites with comments and including images such as logos is within the practice called “fair use,” but I am not a lawyer. For the most part, people like links to their sites. It doesn’t affect the legal question, but you can also choose to set the `src` in the `img` tag to the Web address of the site where the image lives if you’d rather not download a particular image file to your computer and then upload it to your web site.

Web addresses can be absolute or relative. An absolute address starts with `http://`. A relative address is relative to the location of the HTML file. In my example, the `postcard.jpg` and the `friendsofed.gif` are both located in the same folder as my HTML file. They are there because I put them there! For large projects, many people put all the images in a subfolder called `images` and write addresses as “`images/postcard.gif`”.

You also can make this application your own by changing the formatting. Styles can be used to specify fonts, including specific font, font family, and size. This lets you pick a favorite font, and also specify

what font to use if the preferred font is not available on the user's computer. You can specify the margin and padding or vary independently the margin-top, margin-left, padding-top, and so forth.

## Testing and uploading the application

You need to have all the files, in this case the single HTML file plus all image files, in the same folder unless you are using full Web addresses. For the links to work, you need to have the correct addresses for all href attributes. My examples show how to do this for HTML files in the same folder or for HTML files somewhere else on the Web.

You can start testing your work even if it is not completely done. For example, you can put in a single img element or a single a element. Open up a browser, such as Firefox, Chrome, or Safari (I didn't mention Internet Explorer because it does not yet support some of the HTML5 features I'll be using in other tutorials, though support is coming in IE9). In Firefox, click on File and then Open file and browse to your HTML file. In Chrome, press Ctrl on the PC (CMD on the MAC) and o and then browse to the file and click OK to open it. You should see something like my examples. Click on the hyperlinks to get to the other sites. Reload the page using the reload icon for the browser and observe the different time. If you don't see what you expect—something like my examples—you need to examine your code. Common mistakes are

- missing or mismatched opening and closing tags.
- wrong name for image files or HTML files, or wrong file extension for the image files. You can use image files of type JPG, GIF, or PNG but the file extension named in the tag must match the actual file type of the image.
- missing quotation marks. The color coding, as available in TextPad and some other editors, can help you identify this.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to compose HTML documents with text, images, and hyperlinks. This included

- the basic tags, including html, head, title, style, script, body.
- the img element for displaying images.
- the a element for hyperlinks.
- simple formatting using a style element written following Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) rules.
- a single line of JavaScript code to provide date and time information.

This chapter was just the beginning, though it's possible to produce beautiful and informative web pages using basic HTML, with or without Cascading Style Sheets. In the next chapter, you will learn how to include randomness and interactivity in an application, and how to use the canvas element, the critical feature of HTML5.



## Chapter 2

# Dice Game

---



In this chapter, we will cover

- drawing on canvas
- random processing
- game logic
- form output

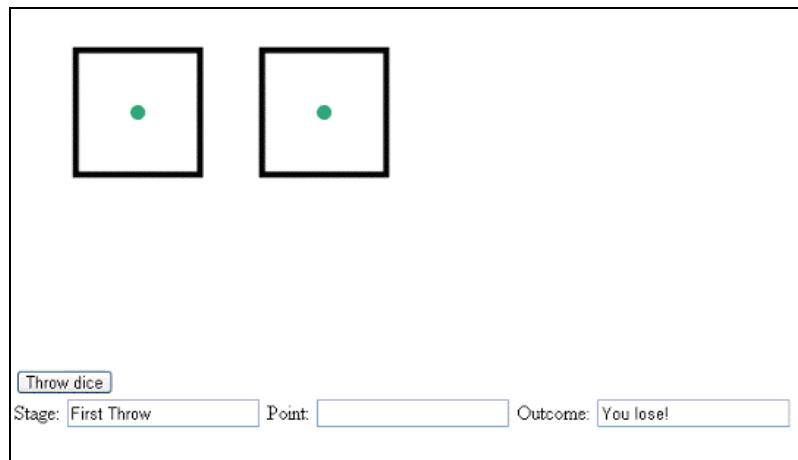
## Introduction

Among the most important new features in HTML5 is the canvas. This element provides a way for developers to make line drawings, include images, and position text in a totally free-form fashion, a significant improvement over the older HTML. Although you could do some fancy formatting in the earlier versions, layouts tended to be boxy and pages less dynamic. How do you draw on the canvas? You use a scripting language, usually JavaScript. I will show you how to draw on canvas and I'll explain the important features of JavaScript that we'll need to build an implementation of the dice game called craps: how to define a function, how to invoke what is termed *pseudo-random behavior*, how to implement the logic of this particular game, and how to display information to a player. Before we go any further, though, you need to understand the basics of the game.

The game of craps has the following rules:

*The player throws a pair of dice. The sum of the two top faces is what matters so a 1 and a 3 is the same as 2 and 2. The sum of two 6-sided dice can be any number from 2 to 12. If the player throws a 7 or 11 on the first throw, the player wins. If the player throws a 2, 3, or 12, the player loses. For any other result (4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10), this result is recorded as what is called the player's point and a follow-up throw is required. On follow-up throws, a throw of 7 loses and a throw of the player's point wins. For anything else, the game continues with the follow-up throw rules.*

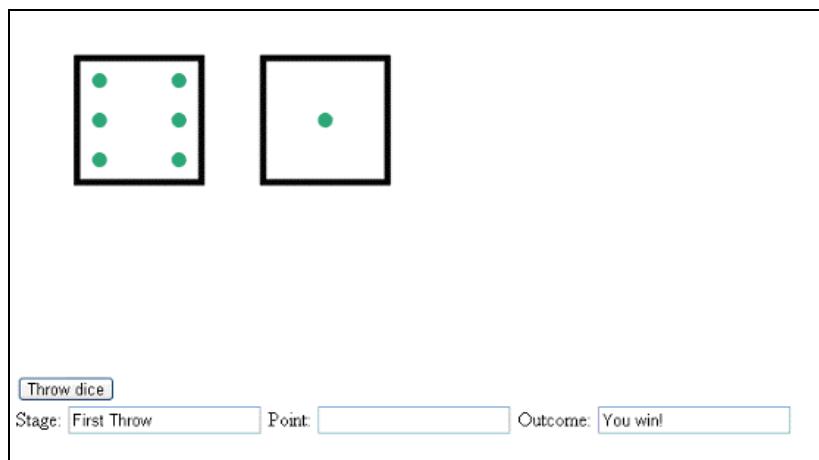
Let's see what our game play might look like. Figure 2-1 shows the result of a throw of two ones at the start of the game.



**Figure 2-1.** First throw, resulting in a loss for the player

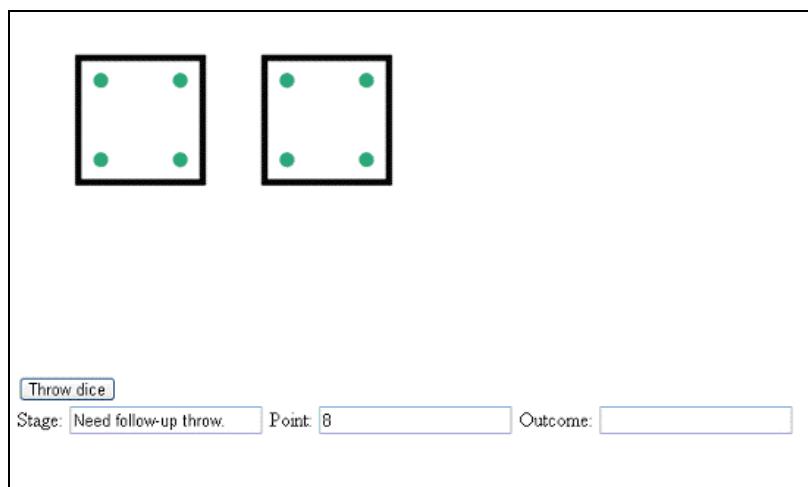
It is not apparent here, but our dice game application draws the die faces each time using the canvas tag. This means it's not necessary to download images of individual die faces.

A throw of two 1s means a loss for the player since the rules define 2, 3, or 12 on a first throw as a loss. The next example shows a win for the player, a 7 on a first throw, as shown in Figure 2-2.



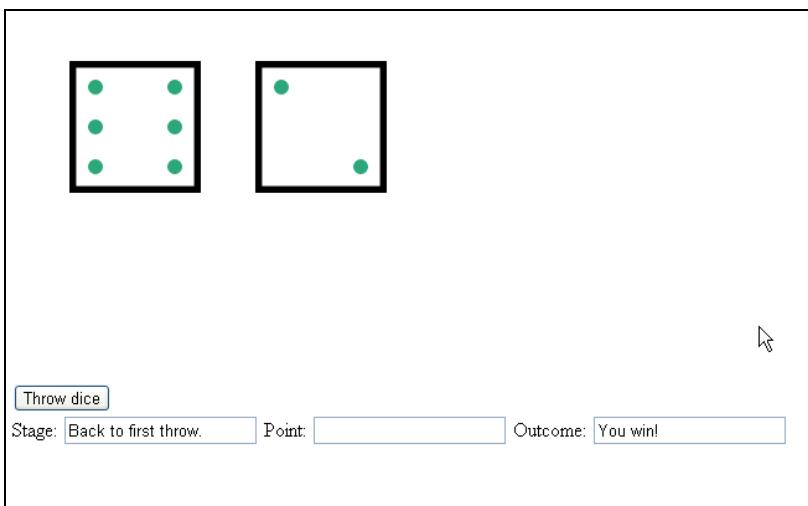
**Figure 2-2.** A 7 on a first throw means the player wins.

Figure 2-3 shows the next throw—an 8. This is neither a win nor a loss, but means there must be a follow-up throw.



**Figure 2-3.** An 8 means a follow-up throw with a player's point of 8 carried over.

Let's assume that the player eventually throws an 8 again, as indicated in Figure 2-4.



**Figure 2-4.** It's another throw of 8, the point value, so the player wins.

As the previous sequence shows, the only thing that counts is the sum of the values on the faces of the dice. The point value was set with two 4s, but the game was won with a 2 and a 6.

The rules indicate that a game will not always take the same number of throws of the dice. The player can win or lose on the first throw, or there may be any number of follow-up throws. It is the game builder's job is to build a game that works—and working means following the rules, even if that means play goes on and on. My students sometimes act as if their games only work if they win. In a correct implementation of the game, players will win and lose.

## Critical requirements

The requirements for building the dice game begin with simulating the random throwing of dice. At first, this seems impossible since programming means specifying exactly what the computer will do. Luckily, JavaScript, like most other programming languages, has a built-in facility that produces results that appear to be random. Sometimes languages make use of the middle bits (1s and 0s) of a very long string of bits representing the time in milliseconds. The exact method isn't important to us. We will assume that the JavaScript furnished by the browser does an okay job with this, which is called pseudo-random processing.

Assuming now that we can randomly get any number from 1 to 6 and do it twice for the two die faces, we need to implement the rules of the game. This means we need a way to keep track of whether we are at a first throw or a follow-up throw. The formal name for this is the *application state*, which means the way things are right now, and is important in both games and other types of applications. Then we need to use constructs that make decisions based on conditions. Conditional constructs such as `if` and `switch` are a standard part of programming languages, and you'll soon understand why computer science teachers like me—who have never been in a casino or a back alley—really like the game of craps.

We need to give the player a way to throw the dice, so we'll implement a button on the screen to click for that. Then we need to provide information back to the player on what happened. For this application, I produced graphical feedback by drawing dice faces on the screen and also displayed information as text to indicate the stage of the game, the point value, and the result. The older term for interactions with users was *input-output (I/O)*, back when that interaction mainly involved text. The term *graphical user interface (GUI)* is now commonly used to indicate the vast variety of ways that users interact with computer systems. These include using the mouse to click on a specific point on the screen or combining clicks with dragging to simulate the effect of moving an object (see the slingshot game in Chapter 4). Drawing on the screen requires the use of a coordinate system to specify points. Coordinate systems for the computer screen are implemented in similar ways in most programming languages, as I'll explain shortly.

## HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

Let's now take a look at the specific features of HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement the craps game.

## Pseudo-random processing and mathematical expressions

Pseudo-random processing in JavaScript is performed using a built-in method called `Math.random`. Formally, `random` is a *method* of the `Math` *class*. The `Math.random` method generates a number from 0 up to, but not including 1, resulting in a decimal number, for example, 0.253012. This may not seem immediately useful for us, but it's actually a very simple process to convert that number into one we can use. We multiply that number, whatever it is, by 6, which produces a number from 0 up to but not including 6. For example, if we multiply the .253012 by 6 we get 1.518072. That's almost what we need, but not quite. The next step is to strip away the fraction and keep the whole number. To do that, we make use of another `Math` method, `Math.floor`. This method produces a whole number after removing any fractional part. As the name suggests, the `floor` method rounds down. In our particular case, we started with .253012, then arrived at 1.518072, so the result is the whole number 1. In general, when we multiply our random number by 6 and floor it, we'll get a number from 0 to 5. The final step is to add a 1, because our goal is to get a number from 1 to 6, over and over again, with no particular pattern.

You can use a similar approach to get whole numbers in any range. For example, if you want the numbers 1 to 13, you'd multiply the random number by 13 and then add 1. This could be useful for a card game. You'll see similar examples throughout this book.

We can combine all of these steps together into what is called an *expression*. Expressions are combinations of constants, methods, and function calls, and some things we'll explore later. We put these items together using operators, such as + for addition and \* for multiplication.

Remember from Chapter 1 how tags can be combined—nesting a tag within another tag—and the one line of JavaScript code we used in the Favorite Sites application:

```
document.write(Date());
```

We can use a similar process here. Instead of having to write the `random` call and then the `floor` method as separate statements, we can pass the `random` call as an argument of the `floor` method. Take a look at this code fragment:

```
1+Math.floor(Math.random()*6)
```

This *expression* will produce a number from 1 to 6. I call it a code fragment because it isn't quite a statement. The operators + and \* refer to the arithmetic operations and are the same as you'd use in normal math. The order of operations starts from the inside and works out.

- Invoke `Math.random()` to get a decimal number from 0 up to, but not quite 1.
- Multiply the result by 6.
- Take that and strip away the fraction, leaving the whole number, using `Math.floor`.
- Add 1.

You'll see a statement with this expression in our final code, but we need to cover a few other things first.

## Variables and assignment statements

Like other programming languages, JavaScript has a construct called a *variable*, which is essentially a place to put a value, such as a number. It is a way of associating a name with a value. You can use the value later by referencing the name. One analogy is to office holders. In the USA, we speak of “the president.” Now, in 2010, the president is Barack Obama. Before January 21, 2009, it was George W. Bush. The value held by the term “the president” changes. In programming, the value of the variable can vary as well, hence the name.

The term `var` is used to *declare* a variable.

The names of variables and functions, described in the next section, are up to the programmer. There are rules: no internal blanks and the name must start with an alphabetic character. Don't make the names too long as you don't want to type too much, but don't make them so short you forget what they are. You do need to be consistent, but you don't need to obey the rules of English spelling. For example, if you want to set up a variable to hold the sum of values and you believe that sum is spelled som, that's fine. Just make sure you use som all the time. But if you want to refer to something that's a part of JavaScript, such as `function` or `document` or `random`, you need to use the spelling that JavaScript expects.

You should avoid using the names of built-in constructs in JavaScript (such as `random` or `floor`) for your variables. Try to make the names unique, but still easily understandable. One common method of writing variable names is to use what's called *camel case*. This involves starting your variable name in lower case, then using a capital letter to denote when a new word starts, for example, `numberOfTurns` or

`userFirstThrow`. You can see why it's called camel case—the capitals form "humps" in the word. You don't have to use this naming method, but it's a convention many programmers follow.

The line of code that will hold the pseudo-random expression explained in the previous section is a particular type of statement called an *assignment* statement. For example,

```
var ch = 1+Math.floor(Math.random());
```

sets the variable named `ch` to the value that is the result of the expression on the right-hand side of the equal sign. When used in a `var` statement, it also would be termed an *initialization* statement. The `=` symbol is used for setting initial values for variables as in this situation and in the assignment statements to be described next. I chose to use the name `ch` as shorthand for choice. This is meaningful for me. In general, though, if you need to choose between a short name and a longer one that you will remember, pick the longer one! Notice that the statement ends with a semi-colon. You may ask, why not a period? The answer is that a period is used in two other situations: as a decimal point and for accessing methods and properties of objects, as in `document.write`.

Assignment statements are the most common type of statements in programming. Here's an example of an assignment statement for a variable already defined:

```
bookname = "The Essential Guide to HTML5";
```

The use of the equal sign may be confusing. Think of it as making it true that the left-hand side equals what's produced by the right-hand side. You'll encounter many other variables and other uses of operators and assignment statements in this book.

*Caution: The `var` statement defining a variable is called a declaration statement. JavaScript, unlike many other languages, allows programmers to omit declaration statements and just start to use a variable. I try to avoid doing that, but you will see it in many online examples.*

For the game of craps, we need variables that define the state of the game, namely whether it is a first throw or a follow-up throw, and what the player's point is (remember that the point is the value of the previous throw). In our implementation, these values will be held by so-called *global variables*, variables defined with `var` statements outside of any function definition so as to retain their value (the values of variables declared inside of functions disappear when the function stops executing).

You don't always need to use variables. For example, the first application we create here sets up variables to hold the horizontal and vertical position of the dice. I could have put literal numbers in the code because I don't change these numbers, but since I refer to these values in several different places, storing the values in variables mean that if I want to change one or both, I only need to make the change in one place.

## Programmer-defined functions

JavaScript has many built-in functions and methods, but it doesn't have everything you might need. For example, as far as I know, it does not have functions specifically for simulating the throwing of dice. So JavaScript lets us define and use our own functions. These functions can take *arguments*, like the `Math.floor` method, or not, like `Math.random`. Arguments are values that may be passed to the function. Think of them as extra information. The format for a function definition is the term `function` followed by the name you want to give the function, followed by parentheses holding the names of any arguments, followed by an open bracket, some code, and then a closed bracket. As I note in the previous sections,

the programmer chooses the name. Here's an example of a function definition that returns the product of the two arguments. As the name indicates, you could use it to compute the area of a rectangle.

```
function areaOfRectangle(wd,ln) {  
    return wd * ln;  
}
```

Notice the `return` keyword. This tells JavaScript to send the result of the function back to us. In our example, this lets us write something like `rect1 = areaOfRectangle(5,10)`, which would assign a value of 50 ( $5 \times 10$ ) to our `rect1` variable. The function definition would be written as code within the `script` element. It might or might not make sense to define this function in real life because it is pretty easy to write multiplication in the code, but it does serve as a useful example of a programmer-defined function. Once this definition is executed, which probably would be when the HTML file is loaded, other code can use the function just by calling its name, as in `areaOfRectangle(100,200)` or `areaOfRectangle(x2-x1,y2-y1)`.

The second expression assumes that `x1`, `x2`, `y1`, `y2` refer to coordinate values that are defined elsewhere.

Functions also can be called by setting certain tag attributes. For example, the `body` tag can include a setting for the `onLoad` attribute:

```
<body onLoad="init();">
```

My JavaScript code contains the definition of a function I call `init`. Putting this into the `body` element means that JavaScript will invoke my `init` function when the browser first loads the HTML document or whenever the player clicks on the reload/refresh button. Similarly, making use of one of the new features of HTML5, I could include the `button` element:

```
<button onClick="throwdice();">Throw dice </button>
```

This creates a button holding the text `Throw dice`. When the player clicks it, JavaScript invokes the `throwdice` function I defined in the `script` element.

The `form` element, to be described later, could invoke a function in a similar way.

## Conditional statements: *if* and *switch*

The craps game has a set of rules. One way to summarize the rules is to say, if it is a first-throw situation, we check for certain values of the dice throw. If it's not the first throw, we check for other values of the dice throw. JavaScript provides the `if` and `switch` statements for such purposes.

The `if` statement is based on *conditions*, which can be a comparison or a check for equality—for example, is a variable named `temp` greater than 85 or does the variable named `course` hold the value "Programming Games". Comparisons produce two possible logical values—true or false. So far you've seen values that are numbers and values that are strings of characters. Logical values are yet another data type. They are also called *Boolean* values, after the mathematician, George Boole. The condition and check that I mentioned would be written in code as

```
temp>85  
and  
course == "Programming Games"
```

Read the first expression as: Is the current value of the variable `temp` greater than 85?

and the second one as: Is the current value of the variable `course` the same as the string "Programming Games"?

The comparison example is easy to understand; we use `>` to check if one value is greater than another, and `<` to check the opposite. The value of the expression will be one of the two logical values `true` or `false`.

The second expression is probably a little more confusing. You may be wondering about the two equal signs and maybe also the quotation marks. The comparison operator in JavaScript (and several other programming languages) that checks for equality is this combination of two equal signs. We need two equal signs because the single equal sign is used in assignment statements and it can't do double duty. If we had written `course = "Programming Games"`, we would have been assigning the value "Programming Games" to our `course` variable rather than comparing the two items. The quotation marks define a string of characters, starting with P, including the space, and ending with s.

With that under our belts, we can now take a look at how to write code that does something only if a condition is true.

```
if (condition) {  
    code  
}
```

If we want our code to do one thing if a condition is true and another thing if it is NOT true, the format is:

```
if (condition) {  
    if true code  
}  
else {  
    if not true code  
}
```

Note that I used italics here because this is what is called *pseudo-code*, not real JavaScript that we would include in our HTML document.

Here are some real code examples. They make use of `alert`, a built-in function that causes a small window with the message indicated by the argument given between the parentheses to pop up in the browser. The user must click OK to continue.

```
if (temp>85) {  
    alert("It is hot!");  
}  
if (age > 21) {  
    alert("You are old enough to buy a drink.");  
}  
else {  
    alert("You are too young to be served in a bar.");  
}
```

We could write the craps application using just `if` statements. However, JavaScript supplies another construct that makes things easier—the `switch` statement. The general format is:

```
switch(x) {  
case a:
```

```
    codea;  
case b:  
    codeb;  
default: codec;  
}
```

JavaScript evaluates the value of `x` in the first line of the `switch` statement and compares it to the values indicated in the cases. Once there is a hit, that is, `x` is determined to be equal to `a` or `b`, the code following the case label is executed. If there is no match, the code after `default` is executed. It's not necessary to have a `default` possibility. Left to its own devices, the computer would continue running through the `switch` statement even if it found a matching `case` statement. If you want it to stop when you find a match, you need to include a `break` statement to break out of the `switch`.

You can probably see already how `if` and `switch` will do what we need for the dice game. You'll read how in the next section. First, let's look at an example that determines the number of days in the month indicated by the variable `mon` holding three-letter abbreviations ("Jan", "Feb", etc.).

```
switch(mon) {  
case "Sep":  
case "Apr":  
case "Jun":  
case "Nov":  
    alert("This month has 30 days.");  
    break;  
case "Feb":  
    alert("This month has 28 or 29 days.");  
    break;  
default:  
    alert("This month has 31 days.");  
}
```

If the value of the variable `mon` is equal to "Sep", "Apr", "Jun", or "Nov", control flows to the first `alert` statement and then exits the `switch` statement because of the `break`. If the value of the variable `mon` is equal to "Feb", the `alert` statement mentioning 28 or 29 days executes and then the control flow exits the `switch`. If the value of `mon` is anything else, including, by the way, an invalid three-letter abbreviation, the `alert` mentioning 31 days is executed.

Just as HTML ignores line breaks and other white space, JavaScript does not require a specific layout for these statements. You could put everything on one line if you wished. However, make things easy on yourself and use multiple lines.

## Drawing on the canvas

Now we get to one of the most powerful new features in HTML5, the `canvas` element. I will explain the pieces of coding that go into an application involving `canvas`, then show some simple examples, and finally get back to our goal of drawing dice faces on the `canvas`. Recall that the outline for an HTML document is

```
<html>  
    <head>  
        <title>... </title>
```

```
        <script> ... </script>
    </head>
    <body>
        ... Here is where the initial static content will go...
    </body>
</html>
```

To work with the canvas, we include the tags for canvas in the body element of the HTML document and JavaScript in the script element. I'll start by describing a standard way to write a canvas element.

```
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>
```

If an HTML file with this coding is opened by a browser that does not recognize canvas, the message Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas. appears on the screen. If you were preparing web pages for all common browsers, you could choose to direct visitors to your site to something else or try another strategy. In this book, I just focus on HTML5.

The HTML canvas tag defines this element to have an id of "canvas". This could have been anything, but there's no harm in using canvas. You can have more than one canvas, however, and in that case, you would need to use distinct values for each id. That's not what we do for this application, though, so we don't have to worry about it. The attributes of width and height are set to specify the dimensions of this canvas element.

Now that we've seen the canvas in the body, let's look at the JavaScript. The first step in drawing on the canvas is to define the appropriate object in the JavaScript code. To do this, I need a variable so I set up one named ctx with the line

```
var ctx;
```

outside of any function definition. This makes it a global variable that can be accessed or set from any function. The ctx variable is something that's needed for all drawing. I chose to name my variable ctx, short for context, copying many of the examples I've seen online. I could have chosen any name.

Later in the code (you'll see all the code in the examples that follow, and you can download it from [www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html](http://www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html)), I write the code to set the value of ctx.

```
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');
```

What this does is first get the element in the document with the id 'canvas' and then extract what is called the '2d' context. We can all anticipate that the future may bring other contexts! For now, we use the 2d one.

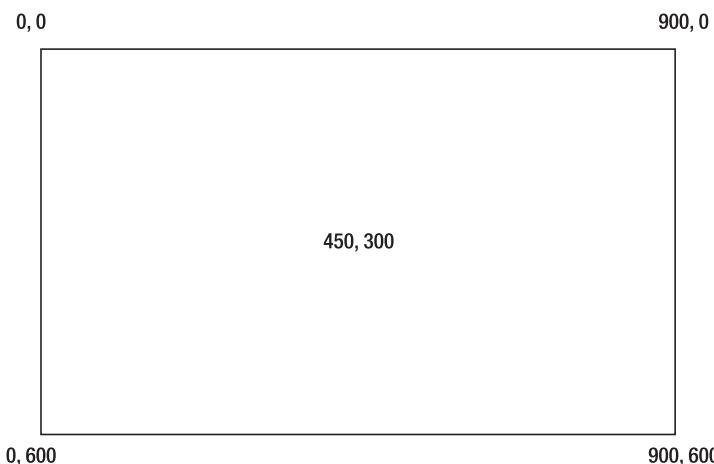
In the JavaScript coding, you can draw rectangles, paths including line segments and arcs, and position image files on the canvas. You can also fill in the rectangles and the paths. Before we do this, however, we need to tackle coordinate systems and radian measures.

Just as a global positioning system uses latitude and longitude to define your location on the map, we need a way to specify points on the screen. These points are called pixels, and we used them in the previous chapter to specify the width of images and the thickness of borders. The pixel is a pretty small unit of measurement, as you can see if you do any experiments. However, it's not enough for everyone to agree on the linear unit. We also need to agree on the point from which we are measuring, just as GPS systems use the Greenwich Meridian and the equator. For the two-dimensional rectangle that is the

canvas, this goes by the name *origin* or *registration point*. The origin is the upper left corner of the canvas element. Note that in Chapter 6, when we describe the quiz show by creating and positioning elements in the HTML document and not in a canvas element, the coordinate system is similar. The origin is still the upper left corner of the window.

This is different from what you may recall from analytical geometry or from making graphs. The horizontal numbers increase in value moving from left to right. The vertical numbers increase in value moving *down* the screen. The standard way to write coordinates is to put the horizontal value first, followed by the vertical value. In some situations, the horizontal value is referred to as the *x* value and the vertical, the *y* value. In other situations, the horizontal value is the left (think of it as from the left) and the vertical value is the top (think of it as from the top).

Figure 2-5 shows the layout of a browser window 900 pixels wide by 600 high. The numbers indicate the coordinate values of the corners and the middle.



**Figure 2-5.** Coordinate system for browser window.

Now we'll look at several statements for drawing, and then put them together to draw simple shapes (see Figures 2-6 through 2-10). After that we'll see how to draw the dots and rectangles to represent die faces.

Here's the HTML5 JavaScript code for drawing a rectangle:

```
ctx.strokeRect(100,50,200,300);
```

This draws a hollow rectangle, with its top left corner 100 pixels from the left side and 50 pixels down from the top. The rectangle has width 200, and height 300. This statement would use whatever the current settings are for line width and for color.

The next piece of code demonstrates setting the line width to 5 and the color of the stroke, that is, the outline to the indicated RGB value, namely red. The rectangle is drawn using the values in the variables *x*, *y*, *w*, and *h*.

```
ctx.lineWidth = 5;  
ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(255,0,0)";  
ctx.strokeRect(x,y,w,h);
```

This snippet

```
ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(0,0,255)";  
ctx.fillRect(x,y,w,h);
```

draws a solid blue rectangle at the indicated position and dimensions. If you want to draw a blue rectangle with a red outline, you use two lines of code:

```
ctx.fillRect(x,y,w,h);  
ctx.strokeRect(x,y,w,h);
```

HTML5 lets you draw so-called paths consisting of arcs and line segments. Line segments are drawn using a combination of `ctx.moveTo` and `ctx.lineTo`. I'll cover them in a number of chapters: for the slingshot game in Chapter 4, the memory game using polygons in Chapter 5, and Hangman in Chapter 9. In the cannon ball game in Chapter 4, I'll also show you how to tilt a rectangle, and the Hangman game in Chapter 9 demonstrates how to draw ovals. In this chapter, I'll focus on the arcs.

You start a path using

```
ctx.beginPath();
```

and end it, with the path being drawn, with either

```
ctx.closePath();  
ctx.stroke();
```

or

```
ctx.closePath();  
ctx.fill();
```

An arc can be a whole circle or part of a circle. In the dice applications, we draw only whole circles to represent the pips on the face of each die, but I'll explain how arcs work in general to make the code less mysterious. The method for drawing arcs has the following format:

```
ctx.arc(cx, cy, radius, start_angle, end_angle, direction);
```

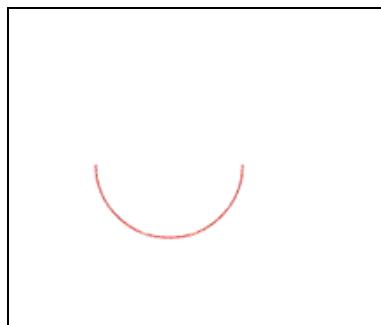
where `cx`, `cy`, and `radius` are the center horizontal and vertical coordinates and the radius of the circle. To explain the next two parameters requires discussing ways to measure angles. You're familiar with the degree unit for angles: we speak of making a 180-degree turn, meaning a u-turn, and a 90-degree angle is produced by two perpendicular lines. But most computer programming languages use another system, called *radians*. Here's one way to visualize radians—think of taking the radius of a circle and laying it on the circle itself. You can dig into your memory and realize that it won't be a neat fit, because there are  $2\pi$  radians around the circle, somewhat more than 6. So if we want to draw an arc that is a whole circle, we specify a starting angle of 0 and an end angle of  $2\pi$ . Luckily, the `Math` class furnishes a constant `Math.PI` that is the value of  $\pi$  (to as much accuracy, as many decimal places, as necessary), so in the code, we write `2*Math.PI`. If we want to specify an arc that is half a circle, we use `Math.PI`, while a right-angle (90 degrees) will be `.5*Math.PI`.

The `arc` method requires one more argument, `direction`. How are we drawing these arcs? Think of the movement of the hands on a clock face. In HTML 5, clockwise is the false direction and counterclockwise is the true direction. (Don't ask why. That's just the way it's specified in HTML5.) I use the built-in JavaScript values `true` and `false`. This will be important when we need to draw arcs that are not whole circles. The nature of the particular problem dictates how you define the angles if you need to draw arcs that are not full circles.

Here are some examples, with the complete code, for you to create (using TextPad or TextWrangler) and then vary to test your understanding. The first one draws an arc, representing a smile.

```
<html>
<head>
<title>Smile</title>
<script>
function init() {
    var ctx =document.getElementById("canvas").getContext('2d');
    ctx.beginPath();
    ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(200,0,0)";
    ctx.arc(200, 200,50,0,Math.PI, false);
    ctx.stroke();
}
</script>
</head>
<body>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>
</body>
</html>
```

Figure 2-6 shows a portion of the screen with the arc produced by this code.



**Figure 2-6.** The “smile” produced by the expression `ctx.arc(200,200,50,0,Math.PI, false);`

You can look ahead to Figures 2-11, 2-12 and 2-13 in which I captured more of the screen to see the positioning of the drawing. Please vary the numbers in your own example so you can gain an understanding of how the coordinate system works and how big a pixel actually is.

Before going on to see a frown, try making the arc wider or taller or changing the color. Then try moving the whole arc up, down, left, and right. Hint: you need to change the line

```
ctx.arc(200, 200,50,0,Math.PI, false);
```

Change the 200,200 to reset the center of the circle and the 50 to change the radius.

Now, let's go on with other variations. Do take each one and experiment with it. Changing the last parameter of the arc method to true:

```
ctx.arc(200,200,50,0,Math.PI,true);
```

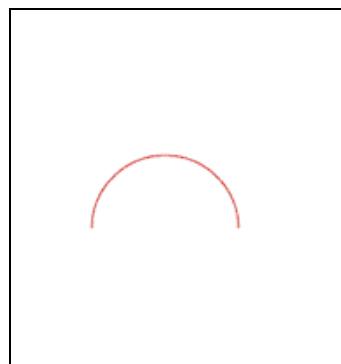
makes the arc go in a counterclockwise direction. The complete code is:

```
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Frown</title>
  <script type="text/javascript">
    function init() {
      var ctx = document.getElementById("canvas").getContext('2d');
      ctx.beginPath();
      ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(200,0,0)";
      ctx.arc(200, 200, 50, 0, Math.PI, true);
      ctx.stroke();
    }
  </script>
</head>

<body>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
  Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>

</body>
</html>
```

Notice that I also changed the title. This code produces the screen shown in Figure 2-7.



**Figure 2-7.** The “frown” produced by the expression `ctx.arc(200,200,50,0,Math.PI, true);`

Putting in the statement to close the path before the stroke:

```
ctx.closePath();
ctx.stroke();
```

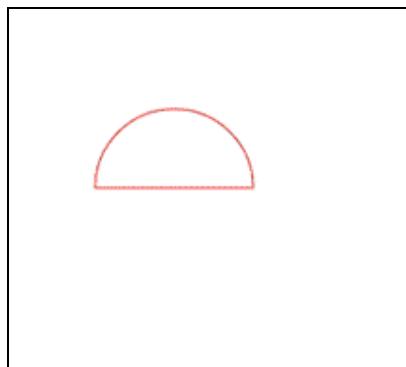
in the frown example, will “finish off” the arc. The complete code is

```
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Frown</title>
  <script type="text/javascript">
    function init() {
      var ctx = document.getElementById("canvas").getContext('2d');
      ctx.beginPath();
      ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(200,0,0)";
      ctx.arc(200, 200, 50, 0, Math.PI, true);
      ctx.closePath();
      ctx.stroke();
    }
  </script>
</head>

<body>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
  Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>

</body>
</html>
```

This produces the screen show in Figure 2-8.



**Figure 2-8.** The frown becomes a half-circle by adding `ctx.closePath();` before `ctx.stroke();`

The `closePath` command is not always necessary, but it's good practice to include it. Experiment here and also look ahead to the drawing of the slingshot in Chapter 5 and the drawing of the hangman figure in Chapter 9. If you want the path filled in, you use `ctx.fill()` in place of `ctx.stroke()`, which produces a black, filled-in shape as shown in Figure 2-9. The complete code is

```
<html>
  <head>
```

```
        <title>Smile</title>
<script type="text/javascript">
function init() {
    var ctx =document.getElementById("canvas").getContext('2d');
    ctx.beginPath();
    ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(200,0,0)";
    ctx.arc(200, 200,50,0,Math.PI, false);
    ctx.closePath();
    ctx.fill();
}
</script>
</head>

<body>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>

</body>
</html>
```

Black is the default color.



**Figure 2-9.** Filling in the half circle using ctx.fill()

If you want a shape to be filled and have a distinct outline, you use both the fill and the stroke commands and specify different colors using the fillStyle and strokeStyle properties. The color scheme is based on the same red/green/blue codes introduced in Chapter 1. You can experiment or use a tool such as Photoshop or Paint Shop Pro to get the colors you want. Here is the complete code:

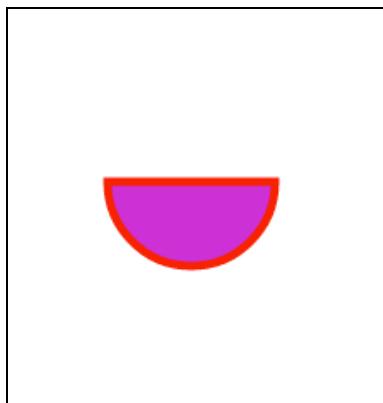
```
<html>
    <head>
        <title>Smile</title>
<script type="text/javascript">
function init() {
    var ctx =document.getElementById("canvas").getContext('2d');
    ctx.beginPath();
    ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(200,0,0)";
    ctx.arc(200, 200,50,0,Math.PI, false);
    ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(200,0,200)";
    ctx.closePath();
    ctx.fill();
    ctx.strokeStyle="rgb(255,0,0)";
```

```
    ctx.lineWidth=5;
    ctx.stroke();
}
</script>
</head>

<body>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>

</body>
</html>
```

This code produces a half circle filled in with purple (a combination of red and blue), with a stroke, that is, an outline of pure red as shown in Figure 2-10. The coding specifies a path, then draws the path as a fill, and then draws the path as a stroke.



**Figure 2-10.** Using fill and stroke with different colors

A full circle is produced by many different commands, including:

```
ctx.arc(200,200,50,0, 2*Math.PI, true);
ctx.arc(200,200,50, 0, 2*Math.PI, false);
ctx.arc(200,200,50, .5*Math.PI, 2.5*Math.PI, false);
```

You may as well stick with the first one—it's as good as any other. Note that I still use the `closePath` command. A circle may be a closed figure in geometric terms, but that doesn't matter in terms of JavaScript.

If you think of the canvas element as a canvas on which you put some ink or paint, you realize you'll need to erase the canvas or the appropriate part of it to draw something new. To do this, HTML5 supplies the command

```
ctx.clearRect(x,y,width,height);
```

Later examples show how to draw a slingshot (Chapter 4), polygons for the memory/concentration game (Chapter 5), walls for a maze (Chapter 7), and the stick figure in Hangman (Chapter 9). Now let's get back to what we need for the dice game.

## Displaying text output using a form

It is possible to write text on the canvas (see Chapter 5), but for the craps application, I chose to use a `form`, an element in both the older and current versions of HTML. I don't use the form for input from the player. I do use it for outputting information on the results of the throw of the dice. The HTML5 specification indicates new ways to set up forms, including checking or *validating* the type and range of input. The application in the next chapter demonstrates validation.

I used the following HTML to produce the form for the dice game:

```
<form name="f">  
Stage: <input name="stage" value="First Throw"/>  
Point: <input name="pv" value="      "/>  
Outcome: <input name="outcome" value="      "/>  
</form>
```

The form starts with a `name` attribute. The text `Stage:`, `Point:`, and `Outcome:` appear next to the input fields. The input tags—notice these are singleton tags—have both `name` and `value` fields. These names will be used by the JavaScript code. You can put any HTML within a form and a form within any HTML.

Because the dice game uses the new `button` element, I just added the `form` element with the fields used for displaying information to the player, without including an `input` element of type `submit`. Alternatively, I could have used a standard form with a `submit` input field (eliminating the need for the new `button` element) with the following code:

```
<form name="f" onSubmit="throwdice();">  
Stage: <input type="text" name="stage" value="First Throw"/>  
Point: <input type="text" name="pv" value="      "/>  
Outcome: <input type="text" name="outcome" value="      "/>  
<input type="submit" value="THROW DICE"/>  
</form>
```

The `input` element of type `submit` produces a button on the screen. These are all the concepts we need to build the craps application. We can now go ahead and code it.

## Building the application and making it your own

You may have already tried using the HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript constructs described in this chapter in small examples. Hint: please do. The only way to learn is to make your own examples. As a way to build up to the craps application, we will now look at three applications:

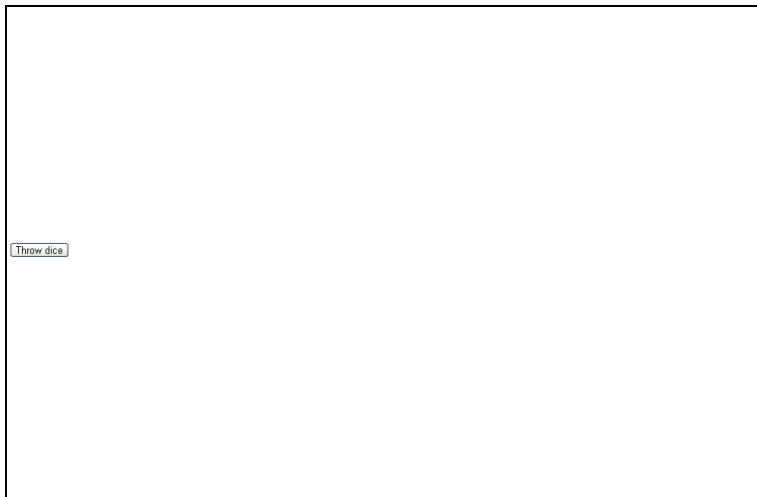
- throwing a single die and reloading to throw again
- throwing two dice by using a button
- the complete game of craps

Figure 2-11 shows a possible opening screen for the first application. I say possible because it won't always be a 4. I deliberately captured this screenshot to show practically all of the window so you can see where the drawing is located on the screen.



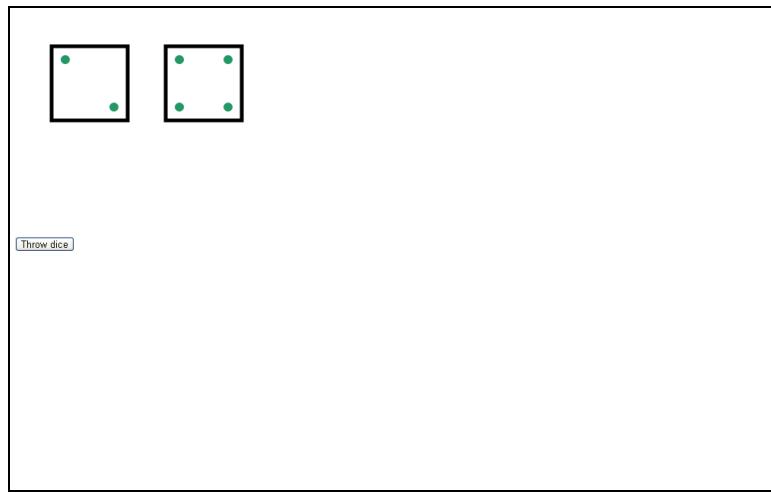
**Figure 2-11.** The single die application

Figure 2-12 shows the opening screen of the application for throwing a pair of dice. All that appears is the button.



**Figure 2-12.** The opening screen of the pair of dice application

Lastly, Figure 2-13 shows the screen after the player clicks on the button.



**Figure 2-13.** Clicking the button to throw the pair of dice

It is good technique to build your application in incremental steps. These applications are built using a text editor, such as TextPad or TextWrangler. Remember to save the file as type .html— and do this early and often. You don't have to finish before saving. When you complete the first application and have saved and tested it, you can save it once more using a new name and then make the modifications to this new copy to be the second application. Do the same for the third application.

## Throwing a single die

The purpose of this first application is to display a random die face on the canvas, with circles laid out in the standard way.

For any application, there are generally many approaches that would work. I realized that I could get double duty out of some of the coding, because the pattern for the 3 die face could be made by combining the 2 and 1 patterns. Similarly, the pattern for 5 is a combination of 4 and 1. The pattern for 6 is a combination of the one for 4 and something unique. I could have put all the coding into the `init` function or used a single `drawface` function. In any case, this made sense to me and I programmed and debugged it fairly fast. Table 2-1 lists all the functions and indicates what calls what. Table 2-2 shows the complete code, explaining what each line does.

**Table 2-1.** Functions in the Singe Die Throw Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
Init	invoked by action of the <code>onLoad</code> in the <code>&lt;body&gt;</code> tag	<code>drawface</code>
<code>drawface</code>	called by <code>init</code>	<code>draw1</code> , <code>draw2</code> , <code>draw4</code> , <code>draw6</code> , <code>draw2mid</code>
<code>draw1</code>	called by <code>drawface</code> in 3 places for 1, 3 and 5	

draw2	called by drawface in 2 faces for 2 and 3	
draw4	called by drawface in 3 places for 4, 5 and 6	
draw2mid	called by drawface in 1 place for 6	

**Table 2-2.** The Complete Code for the Throwing a Single Die Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	Opening html tag
<head>	Opening head tag
<title>Throwing 1 die</title>	Full title element
<script>	Opening script tag
var cwidth = 400;	Variable holding the width of the canvas; also used to erase the canvas to prepare for redrawing
var cheight = 300;	Variable holding the height of the canvas; also used to erase the canvas to prepare for redrawing
var dicex = 50;	Variable holding the horizontal position of the single die
var dicey = 50;	Variable holding the vertical position of the single die
var dicewidth = 100;	Variable holding the width of a die face
var diceheight = 100;	Variable holding the height of a die face
var dotrad = 6;	Variable holding the radius of a dot
var ctx;	Variable holding the canvas context, used in all the draw commands
function init() {	Start of the function definition for the init function, which is invoked onLoad of the document

var ch = 1+Math.floor(Math.random()*6);	Declare and set the value of the ch variable to randomly be the number 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6
drawface(ch);	Invoke the drawface function with the parameter ch
}	End function definition
function drawface(n) {	Start of the function definition for the drawface function, whose argument is the number of dots
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Obtain the object that is used to draw on the canvas
ctx.lineWidth = 5;	Set the line width to 5
ctx.clearRect(diceX,diceY,diceWidth, diceHeight);	Clear the space where the die face may have been drawn. This has no effect the very first time.
ctx.strokeRect(diceX,diceY,diceWidth, diceHeight)	Draw the outline of the die face
ctx.fillStyle = "#009966";	Set the color for the circles. I used a graphics program to determine this value. You can do this, or experiment.
switch(n) {	Start switch using the number of dots
case 1:	If it is 1
Draw1();	Call the draw1 function
break;	Break out of the switch
case 2:	If it is 2
Draw2();	Call the draw2 function
break;	Break out of the switch
case 3:	If it is 3
draw2();	First call draw2 and then
draw1();	Call draw1

break;	Break out of the switch
case 4:	If it is 4
draw4();	Call the draw4 function
break;	Break out of the switch
case 5:	If it is 5
draw4();	Call the draw4 function and then
draw1();	Call the draw1 function
break;	Break out of the switch
case 6:	If it is 6
draw4();	Call the draw4 function and then
draw2mid();	Call the draw2mid function
break;	Break out of the switch (not strictly necessary)
}	Close the switch statement
}	Close the drawface function
function draw1() {	Start of the definition of draw1
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the single dot
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the single dot
ctx.beginPath();	Start a path
dotx = dicex + .5*dicewidth;	Set the center of this dot to be at the center of the die face horizontally and
doty = dicey + .5*diceheight;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct a circle (which is drawn with the fill command)

ctx.closePath();	Close the path
ctx.fill();	Draw the path, that is, fill the circle
}	Close draw1
function draw2() {	Start of draw2 function
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the two dots
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the two dots
ctx.beginPath();	Start a path
dotx = dicex + 3*dotrad;	Set the center of this dot to be 3 radius lengths over from the upper corner of the die face, horizontally and
doty = dicey + 3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct the first dot
dotx = dicex+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Set the center of this dot to be 3 radius lengths in from the lower corner of the die face, horizontally and
doty = dicey+diceheight-3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct the second dot
ctx.closePath();	Close the path
ctx.fill();	Draw both dots
}	Close draw2
function draw4() {	Start of draw4 function
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the dots.
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the dots

ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
dotx = dicex + 3*dotrad;	Position the first dot inside the upper left corner, horizontally and
doty = dicey + 3*dotrad;	...vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct the circle
dotx = dicex+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Position the second dot to be inside the lower right corner, horizontally and
doty = dicey+diceheight-3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct dots
ctx.closePath();	Close path
ctx.fill();	Draw 2 dots
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
dotx = dicex + 3*dotrad;	Position this dot inside the lower left corner, horizontally and
doty = dicey + diceheight-3*dotrad;	... vertically. (note that this is the same y value just used)
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct circle
dotx = dicex+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Position this dot just inside the upper left corner, horizontally and
doty = dicey+ 3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct circle
ctx.closePath();	Close path
ctx.fill();	Draw 2 dots
}	Close draw4 function

function draw2mid() {	Start draw2mid function
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the two dots
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the two dots
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
dotx = dicex + 3*dotrad;	Position the dots to be just inside horizontally
doty = dicey + .5*diceheight;	And midway vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct circle
dotx = dicex+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Position this dot to be just inside the right border
doty = dicey + .5*diceheight; //no change	Position y midway
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct circle
ctx.closePath();	Close path
ctx.fill();	Draw dots
}	Close draw2mid function
</script>	Close script element
</head>	Close head element
<body onLoad="init();">	Starting body tag, with onLoad attribute set to invoke the init() function
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300"> Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas. </canvas>	Set up canvas and provide notice if browser doesn't accept canvas element
</body> </html>	Close body and close html elements.

If you like, you can put comments in your code. Comments are pieces of text that are ignored by the browser but are there to remind you and, perhaps, others who will look at this program later, what is going on. One form of comment starts with two slashes on a line. Everything to the right of the slashes is ignored. For larger comments, you use a slash and an asterisk to start the comment and an asterisk and a slash to end it.

```
/*
This is a comment.
*/
```

This is a case of do as I say, not as I do. Since I'm using tables to put comments on every line and you can consider the whole chapter a comment, I haven't included comments in the code. You should, however.

HINT: when I was developing this code (and any code involving a random effect, I did not want to have to do the initial testing with the random coding. So, right after the line

```
var ch = 1+Math.floor(Math.random()*6);
```

I put the line

```
ch = 1;
```

and tested it, then I changed it to

```
ch = 2;
```

and so on. I removed this line (or commented it out using // ) when I was done with this phase of testing. This falls under general advice, to avoid having to play a game, in all its complexity, while developing it.

## Throwing two dice

The next application makes use of a button to give the player something to do, rather than just reloading the webpage, and it also simulates the throwing of a pair of dice. Before looking at the code, think about what you can carry over from the first application. The answer is: most of it. This second application will need to do something about the positioning of the two die faces, using two more variables for this, dx and dy. It also needs to repeat the code using Math.random and calling drawface twice to produce both die faces. And there needs to be a change in what invokes a throw. Table 2-3, which describes the functions calling and being called is essentially the same as Table 2-1, except now there's a function called throwdice, which is invoked by an action set up by the onClick attribute of the button tag. Table 2-4 contains the full HTML document for the application of throwing two dice.

**Table 2-3.** Functions in the Two-Dice Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
throwdice	invoked by action of the onClick in the <button> tag	drawface
drawface	called by init	draw1, draw2, draw4, draw6, draw2mid
draw1	called by drawface in 3 places for 1, 3 and 5	

draw2	called by drawface in 2 faces for 2 and 3	
draw4	called by drawface in 3 places for 4, 5 and 6	
draw2mid	called by drawface in 1 place for 6	

**Table 2-4.** The Complete Two-Dice Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	Opening html tag
<head>	Opening head tag
<title>Throwing dice</title>	Full title element
<script>	Opening script tag
var cwidth = 400;	Variable holding the width of the canvas
var cheight = 300;	Variable holding the height of the canvas; also used to erase the canvas to prepare for redrawing
var dicex = 50;	Variable holding the horizontal position of the single die; also used to erase the canvas to prepare for redrawing
var dicey = 50;	Variable holding the vertical position of the single die
var dicewidth = 100;	Variable holding the width of a die face
var diceheight = 100;	Variable holding the height of a die face
var dotrad = 6;	Variable holding the radius of a dot
var ctx;	Variable holding the canvas context, used in all the draw commands
var dx;	Variable used for horizontal positioning and changed for each of the two die faces

Code	Explanation
var dy;	Variable used for vertical positioning. It is the same for both die faces.
function throwdice() {	Start of the throwdice function
var ch = 1+Math.floor(Math.random()*6);	Declare the variable ch and then set it with a random value.
dx = dicex;	Set dx for the first die face.
dy = dicey;	Set dy for the second die face.
drawface(ch);	Invoke drawface with ch as the number of dots.
dx = dicex + 150;	Adjust dx for the second die face.
ch=1 + Math.floor(Math.random()*6);	Reset ch with a random value.
drawface(ch);	Invoke drawface with ch as the number of dots.
}	Close throwdice function.
function drawface(n) {	Start of the function definition for the drawface function, whose argument is the number of dots.
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas') .getContext('2d');	Obtain the object that is used to draw on the canvas.
ctx.lineWidth = 5;	Set the line width to 5.
ctx.clearRect(dx,dy,dicewidth,diceheight);	Clear the space where the die face may have been drawn. This has no effect the very first time.
ctx.strokeRect(dx,dy,dicewidth,diceheight)	Draw the outline of the die face.
var dotx;	Variable to hold horizontal position.
var doty;	Variable to hold vertical position.

Code	Explanation
ctx.fillStyle = "#009966";	Set color.
switch(n) {	Start switch using the number of dots.
case 1:	If it is 1
draw1();	Call the draw1 function
break;	Break out of the switch
Case 2:	If it is 2
draw2();	Call the draw2 function
break;	Break out of the switch
Case 3:	If it is 3
draw2();	First call draw2 and then
draw1();	Call draw1
break;	Break out of the switch
Case 4:	If it is 4
draw4();	Call the draw4 function
break;	Break out of the switch
Case 5:	If it is 5
draw4();	Call the draw4 function and then
draw1();	Call the draw1 function
break;	Break out of the switch
Case 6:	If it is 6
draw4();	Call the draw4 function and then

Code	Explanation
draw2mid();	Call the draw2mid function
break;	Break out of the switch (not strictly necessary)
}	Close switch statement
}	Close drawface function
function draw1() {	Start of definition of draw1
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the single dot
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the single dot
ctx.beginPath();	Start a path
dotx = dx + .5*dicewidth;	Set the center of this dot to be at the center of the die face (using dx) horizontally and
doty = dy + .5*diceheight;	... (using dy) vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,← 0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct a circle (it is drawn with the fill command)
ctx.closePath();	Close the path
ctx.fill();	Draw the path, that is, the circle
}	Close draw1
function draw2() {	Start of draw2 function
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the two dots.
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the two dots
ctx.beginPath();	Start a path

Code	Explanation
dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;	Set the center of this dot to be 3 radius lengths over from the upper corner of the die face, horizontally and
doty = dy + 3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct the first dot
dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Set the center of this dot to be 3 radius lengths in from the lower corner of the die face, horizontally and
doty = dy+diceheight-3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct the second dot
ctx.closePath();	Close the path
ctx.fill();	Draw both dots
}	Close draw2
function draw4() {	Start of draw4 function
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the dots
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the dots
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;	Position the first dot inside the upper left corner, horizontally and
doty = dy + 3*dotrad;	...vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct the circle

Code	Explanation
dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Position the second dot to be inside the lower right corner, horizontally and
doty = dy+diceheight-3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.→ PI*2,true);	Construct dots
ctx.closePath();	Close path
ctx.fill();	Draw 2 dots
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;	Position this dot inside the lower left corner, horizontally and
doty = dy + diceheight-3*dotrad;→ //no change	... vertically (note that this is the same y value just used)
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.→ PI*2,true);	Construct circle
dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Position this dot just inside the upper left corner, horizontally and
doty = dy+ 3*dotrad;	... vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.→ PI*2,true);	Construct circle
ctx.closePath();	Close path
ctx.fill();	Draw 2 dots
}	Close draw4 function
function draw2mid() {	Start draw2mid function
var dotx;	Variable to be used for the horizontal position for drawing the two dots

Code	Explanation
var doty;	Variable to be used for the vertical position for drawing the two dots
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;	Position the dots to be just inside horizontally
doty = dy + .5*diceheight;	and midway vertically
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct circle
dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;	Position this dot to be just inside the right border
doty = dy + .5*diceheight; //no change	Position y midway
ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Construct circle
ctx.closePath();	Close path
ctx.fill();	Draw dots
}	Close draw2mid function
</script>	Close script element
</head>	Close head element
<body>	Starting body tag
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">	Canvas tag start
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Set up canvas and provide notice if browser doesn't accept canvas element
</canvas>	Close canvas tag
 	Line break

Code	Explanation
<button onClick="throwdice();">Throw dice </button>	Button element (note attribute onClick setting to invoke throwdice)
</body>	Close body tag
</html>	Close html tag

## The complete game of craps

The third application is the complete game of craps. Again, much can be carried over from the previous application. However, now we need to add in the rules of the game. Among other things, this will mean using the conditional statements `if` and `switch`, as well as global variables, that is variables defined outside of any function definition, to keep track of whether or not it is a first turn (`firstturn`) and what is the player's point (`point`). The function table is identical to the one given for the second application (Table 2-3), so I won't repeat it. Table 2-5 holds the code for this application. The new action is all in the `throwdice` function. I will comment the new lines.

**Table 2-5.** The Complete Craps Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Craps game</title>	
<script>	
var cwidth = 400;	
var cheight = 300;	
var dicex = 50;	
var dicey = 50;	
var dicewidth = 100;	
var diceheight = 100;	
var dotrad = 6;	

var ctx;	
var dx;	
var dy;	
var firstturn = true;	Global variable, initialized to the value true
var point;	Global variable, does not need to be initialized because it will be set before use
function throwdice() {	Start of throwdice function
var sum;	Variable to hold the sum of the values for the 2 dice
var ch = 1+Math.floor(Math.random()*6);	Set ch with the first random value
sum = ch;	Assign this to sum
dx = dicex;	Set dx
dy = dicey;	set dy
drawface(ch);	Draw the first die face
dx = dicex + 150;	Adjust the horizontal position
ch=1 + Math.floor(Math.random()*6);	Set ch with a random value. This is the one for the second die.
sum += ch;	Add ch to what is already in sum
drawface(ch);	Draw the second die
if (firstturn) {	Now start the implementation of the rules. Is it a first turn?
switch(sum) {	If it is, start a switch with sum as the condition
case 7:	For 7

case 11:	.. or 11
document.f.outcome.value="You win!" ;	Display You win!
break;	Exit the switch
case 2:	For 2,
case 3:	.. or 3
case 12:	.. or 12
document.f.outcome.value="You lose!" ;	Display You lose!
break;	Exit the switch
default:	For anything else
point = sum;	Save the sum in the variable point
document.f.pv.value=point;	Display the point value
firstturn = false;	Set firstturn to false
document.f.stage.value="Need follow-up throw.";	Display Need follow-up throw
document.f.outcome.value=" " ;	Erase (clear) the outcome field
}	End the switch
}	End the if-true clause
else {	Else (not a first turn)
switch(sum) {	Start the switch, again using sum
case point:	if sum is equal to whatever is in point
document.f.outcome.value="You win!" ;	Display You win!

document.f.stage.value="Back to first throw.";	Display Back to first throw
document.f.pv.value=" ";	Clear the point value
firstrturn = true;	Reset firstrturn so it is again true
break;	Exit the switch
case 7:	If the sum is equal to 7
document.f.outcome.value="You lose!" ;	Display You lose!
document.f.stage.value="Back to first throw.";	Display Back to first throw
document.f.pv.value=" ";	Clear the point value
firstrturn = true;	Reset firstrturn so it is again true
}	Close the switch
}	Close the else clause
}	Close the throwdice function
function drawface(n) {	
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	
ctx.lineWidth = 5;	
ctx.clearRect(dx,dy,dicewidth,diceheight);	
ctx.strokeRect(dx,dy,dicewidth,diceheight)	
var dotx;	
var doty;	
ctx.fillStyle = "#009966";	

switch(n) {	
case 1:	
draw1();	
break;	
case 2:	
draw2();	
break;	
case 3:	
draw2();	
draw1();	
break;	
case 4:	
draw4();	
break;	
case 5:	
draw4();	
draw1();	
break;	
case 6:	
draw4();	
draw2mid();	
break;	

```
        }  
    }  
  
function draw1() {  
  
    var dotx;  
  
    var doty;  
  
    ctx.beginPath();  
  
    dotx = dx + .5*dicewidth;  
  
    doty = dy + .5*diceheight;  
  
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);  
  
    ctx.closePath();  
  
    ctx.fill();  
}  
  
function draw2() {  
  
    var dotx;  
  
    var doty;  
  
    ctx.beginPath();  
  
    dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;  
  
    doty = dy + 3*dotrad;  
  
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);  
  
    dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;  
  
    doty = dy+diceheight-3*dotrad;  
  
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);
```

```
ctx.closePath();
ctx.fill();
}

function draw4() {
    var dotx;
    var doty;
    ctx.beginPath();
    dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;
    doty = dy + 3*dotrad;
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);
    dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;
    doty = dy+diceheight-3*dotrad;
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);
    ctx.closePath();
    ctx.fill();
    ctx.beginPath();
    dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;
    doty = dy + diceheight-3*dotrad; //no change
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);
    dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;
    doty = dy+ 3*dotrad;
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);
```

```
ctx.closePath();  
ctx.fill();  
}  
function draw2mid() {  
    var dotx;  
    var doty;  
    ctx.beginPath();  
    dotx = dx + 3*dotrad;  
    doty = dy + .5*diceheight;  
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);  
    dotx = dx+dicewidth-3*dotrad;  
    doty = dy + .5*diceheight; //no change  
    ctx.arc(dotx,doty,dotrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);  
    ctx.closePath();  
    ctx.fill();  
}  
</script>  
</head>  
<body>  
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">  
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.  
</canvas>
```

<button onClick="throwdice();">Throw dice </button>	
<form name="f">	Start a form named f
Stage: <input name="stage" value="First Throw"/>	With the text Stage: right before it, set up an input field named stage
Point: <input name="pv" value=" " />	With the text Point: right before it, set up an input field named pv
Outcome: <input name="outcome" value=" " />	With the text Outcome: right before it, set up an input field named outcome
</form>	Close the form
</body>	Close body
</html>	Close html

## Making the application your own

Making this application your own is not as straightforward as with the favorite sites application, because the rules of craps are the rules of craps. However, there are many things you can do. Change the size and color of the dice faces, using `fillRect` and setting `fillStyle` to different colors. Change the color and size of the whole canvas. Change the text for the outcomes to something more colorful. You also can implement other games using standard or specially made dice.

You can look ahead to the next chapter and learn about drawing images on the canvas instead of drawing each die face using arcs and rectangles. HTML5 provides a way to bring in external image files. The drawback to this approach is that you do have to keep track of these separate files.

You can develop coding for keeping score. For a gambling game, you can start the player with a fixed amount of money, say 100 of whatever the currency unit is, and deduct some amount, say 10, for playing a game, and add some amount, say 20, if and only if the player wins. You can add this bankroll information as part of the `form` element in the body:

```
<form name="f" id="f">
Stage: <input name="stage" value="First Throw"/>
Point: <input name="pv" value=" " />
Outcome: <input name="outcome" value=" " />
Bank roll: <input name="bank" value="100"/>
</form>
```

JavaScript (and other programming languages) distinguish between numbers and strings of characters representing numbers. That is, the value "100" is a string of characters, "1", "0", and "0". The value 100 is a number. In either case, however, the value of a variable is stored as a sequence of 1s and 0s. For numbers, this will be the number represented as a binary number. For strings of characters, each character will be represented using a standard coding system, such as ASCII or UNICODE. In some situations, JavaScript will make the conversion from one data type to the other, but don't depend on it. The coding I suggest uses the built-in functions `String` and `Number` to do these conversions.

In the `throwdice` function, before the `if(firstturn)` statement, add the code in Table 2-6 (or something like it).

**Table 2-6.** Adding a Bank for the Player

Code	Explanation
<code>var bank = Number(document.f.bank.value);</code>	Sets a new variable <code>bank</code> to be the number represented by the value in the bank input field.
<code>if (bank&lt;10) {</code>	Compare bank to 10.
<code>    alert("You ran out of money! Add some more and try again.");</code>	If bank is less than 10, put out an alert.
<code>    Return;</code>	Exit the function without doing anything.
<code>}</code>	Close the if true clause.
<code>bank = bank - 10;</code>	Decrease bank by 10. This line is reached only when bank was greater than 10.
<code>document.f.bank.value = String(bank);</code>	Put the string representation of that value in the bank field.

Then in each place where the player wins (in the `switch` statement for a first turn after the 7 and 11 cases, or in the `switch` statement for a follow-up turn, after the point case, add the code in Table 2-7.

**Table 2-7.** Increasing the Value of the Bank

Code	Explanation
<code>bank = Number(document.f.bank.value);</code>	Set <code>bank</code> to be the number represented by the value in the bank input field. Setting <code>bank</code> again allows for the possibility of the player re-setting the bank amount in the middle of a game.

bank +=20;	Use the <code>+=</code> operator to increase the value of bank by 20
<code>document.f.bank.value = String(bank);</code>	Put the string representation of the bank amount in the bank field

When the player loses, or when it is a follow-up turn, you don't add any code. The bank value goes down before each new game.

## Testing and uploading the application

These applications are complete in the HTML file. No other files, such as image files, are used. Instead, the dice faces are drawn on the canvas. (For your information, my versions of dice games written in the older HTML used one or two `img` elements. To make these fixed `img` elements display different images, I wrote code that changed the `src` attribute to be a different external image file. When I uploaded the application, I had to upload all the image files.)

Open up the HTML file in the browser. The first application needs to be reloaded to get a new (single) die. The second and third applications (the third one being the craps game) use a button to roll the dice.

I repeat what I wrote earlier. To test this program, you do need to check the many cases. You are not done when you, acting as the player, win. Typical problems include

- missing or mismatched opening and closing tags
- mismatched opening and closing brackets, the `{` and the `}` surrounding functions, `switch` statements, and `if` clauses
- missing quotation marks. The color coding, as available when using TextPad and some other editors, can help here, as it will highlight keywords it recognizes.
- inconsistency in naming and use of variables and functions. These names can be anything you choose, but you need to be consistent. The function `draw2mid` will not be invoked by `drawmid2()`.

These are all, except arguably the last, mistakes in syntax, analogous to mistakes in grammar and punctuation. A mistake of semantics, that is, meaning, can be more difficult to detect. If you write the second `switch` statement to win on a 7 and lose on the point value, you may have written correct JavaScript code, but it won't be the game of craps.

It shouldn't happen here because you can copy my code, but a common mistake is to get confused about the coordinate system and think that vertical values increase going up the screen instead of down.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to

- declare variables and use global variables to represent application state
- write code to perform arithmetic operations
- define and use programmer-defined functions

- use several built-in features of JavaScript, including the `Math.random` and `Math.floor` methods
- use `if` and `switch` statements
- create a canvas using an HTML element
- draw rectangles and circles

This chapter introduced a key feature of HTML5, the canvas, as well as the notions of randomness and interactivity. It also presented many programming features you'll use in the examples in the rest of the book. In particular, the technique of building an application in stages is useful. The next chapter will feature the animation of a ball bouncing in a box—preparation for the real games in Chapter 4: the ballistics simulations called cannon ball and sling shot.

## Chapter 3



# Bouncing Ball

---

In this chapter, we will cover:

- creating programmer-defined objects
- using `setInterval` for animation
- drawing images
- form input and validating form input
- for loops
- drawing with gradients

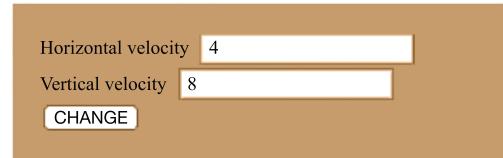
## Introduction

Animation, whether at the movies, using a flipbook, or generated by computer, involves displaying a sequence of still images fast enough so that we interpret what we see as movement, as life. In this chapter, I'll show you how to produce animated scenes by simulating a ball bouncing in a 2-dimensional box, with horizontal and vertical speeds that can be changed by a player. The first iteration of our program calculates new positions for the ball at fixed intervals of time and displays the result, and it also determines when there would be a virtual collision of ball and wall and how the ball would bounce off the wall. After that, we'll see how you can replace the ball with an image, and how to draw rectangles using gradients. Lastly, we'll examine the HTML5 feature for validating form input. The three examples are

- a ball bouncing in a 2-D box (Figure 3-1)
- replace the ball with an image and use a gradient for the box walls (Figure 3-2)
- validate the input (Figure 3-3)

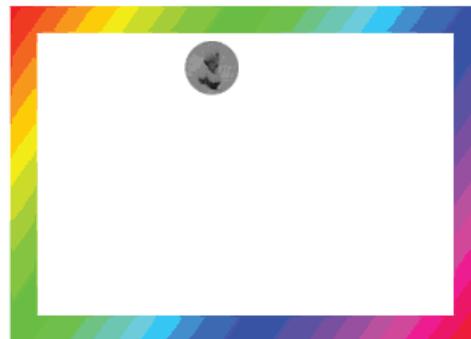
*Note: The kind of animation we're going to produce is called computed animation, in which the position of an object is recalculated by a computer program and the object is then redisplayed. This is in contrast to cel (or frame-by-frame) animation, which uses predrawn individual static pictures. Animated gifs are examples of cel animation and can be produced in many graphics programs. The Flash authoring tool is excellent for producing and integrating computed animation and cel animation. Flash also has facilities, such as tweening, to help produce the individual static pictures.*

You'll have to imagine the animation represented by these static pictures. In Figure 3-1, notice the form with fields for setting the horizontal and vertical velocity.



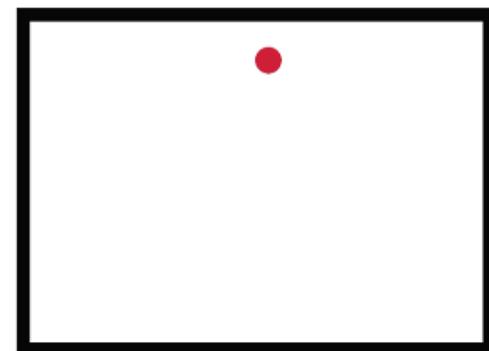
**Figure 3-1.** A bouncing ball

In Figure 3-2, the ball has been replaced by an image and the walls are filled in using a gradient.

A screenshot of a web form. It features two input fields: 'Horizontal velocity' with the value '4' and 'Vertical velocity' with the value '8'. Below these fields is a blue 'CHANGE' button. The entire form is set against a light brown background.

**Figure 3-2.** The ball is now an image from an external file.

HTML5 lets you specify what the input should be. In this example, I've specified the input should be a number and indicated minimum and maximum values. I used CSS to specify that if a user makes an invalid entry, the color of the field turns red. This is shown in Figure 3-3.

A screenshot of a web form. The 'Horizontal velocity' field contains the invalid value 'abl', which is highlighted with a red background. The 'Vertical velocity' field contains the valid value '8', which is highlighted with a green background. Below these fields is a blue 'CHANGE' button. The entire form is set against a light brown background.

**Figure 3-3.** A form showing bad input

This set of applications demonstrates substantial programming but it's not really a game, though people enjoy seeing heads or other images bouncing in a box. Think about how to make it a game. You can also use ideas learned here to draw something besides a ball bouncing around in a box. The box can have different dimensions and the walls can be much fancier. The next chapter builds on this one and describes how to build simulations of a cannonball and a slingshot.

## Critical requirements

It is important for this application and, indeed, for all programming, to define the requirements before you begin writing any code. The application requires things I demonstrated in previous chapters: drawing shapes on a canvas element and using a form. For this example, we will actually use the form fields for input. In the dice game described in Chapter 2, they were used strictly for output.

In Chapter 1, the HTML document made use of external image files. In Chapter 2, we drew the faces of the dice entirely with coding. In this chapter, I'll demonstrate both: a bouncing circle drawn with code and a bouncing image from an image file.

To accomplish this, we need some code that will be able to do something—right now, it doesn't matter what—at fixed intervals of time. The intervals need to be short enough that the result looks like motion.

In this case, the something-to-be-done is to reposition the ball. In addition, the code needs to determine if the ball would hit any wall. Now, there isn't a ball and there aren't any walls. It is all virtual, so it is all coding. We'll write code to perform a calculation on the virtual position of the ball versus the virtual position of each of the walls. If there is a virtual hit, the code adjusts the horizontal or vertical displacement values so the ball bounces off the wall.

To calculate the repositioning, we use either the initial values or any new values typed into the input fields of the form. However, the goal is to produce a robust system that will not act on bad input from the player. Bad input would be an entry that wasn't a number or a number outside of the specified range. We could just not act on the bad input. However, we want to give feedback to the player that the input was bad, so we'll make the input boxes change color, as Figure 3-3 shows.

## HTML5, CSS, JavaScript features

Let's take a look at the specific features of HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript we need to implement the bouncing ball applications. We'll build on material covered in previous chapters, specifically the general structure of an HTML document, using a canvas element, programmer-defined and built-in functions, and a form element.

### Drawing a ball, image, and gradient

As described in Chapter 2, drawing anything on the canvas, such as a circle to represent the ball, requires including the canvas element in the body section of the HTML document. Next we need to define a variable, ctx, and add code that sets up the value of this variable so we can use JavaScript. Here's the statement to implement this:

```
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');
```

As we saw in Chapter 2, a circle is created by drawing an arc as part of a path. The following lines of code start the path, set the color for the fill, specify the arc, and then use the fill method to draw a closed,

filled-in path. Notice that the `arc` method uses variables to specify the coordinates of the center of the circle and the radius. The parameters `0` and `Math.PI*2` represent angles, in this case `0` to `Math.PI*2`, making a complete circle. The `true` parameter indicates counterclockwise, though in this particular case, `false` would produce the same effect.

```
ctx.beginPath();
ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(200,0,50)";
ctx.arc(ballx, bally, ballrad, 0,Math.PI*2,true);
ctx.fill();
```

For the first version of the bouncing ball, the box is drawn as a rectangle outline. The width of the outline, termed the `stroke`, is set using

```
ctx.lineWidth = ballrad;
```

You can experiment with the line width. Keep in mind that if you make the width small and set the ball to travel fast, the ball can bounce past the wall in one step.

The statement that draws the rectangle is

```
ctx.strokeRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);
```

I put the code for the ball before the code for the rectangle so the rectangle would be on top. I thought this looked better for the bouncing.

The second version of the program displays an image for the ball. This requires code to set up an `img` object using the `new` operator with a call to `Image()`, assigning that to a variable, and giving the `src` property a value. In the application, we do all this in a single statement, but let's take a look at the individual parts.

You read about `var` statements in Chapter 2. Such statements define, or *declare*, a variable. It is okay to use the name `img` for our `var` here; there's no conflict with the HTML `img` element. The `new` operator is well-named: it creates a new object, in this case of the built-in type `Image`. The `Image` function does not take any arguments, so there are just opening and closing parentheses.

`Image` objects have attributes, just like HTML elements such as `img` do. The particular image used is indicated by the value of the `src` attribute. Here, "pearl.jpg" is the name of an image file located in the same folder as the HTML document. The following two statements set up the `img` variable and set its `src` (source) to the address, the URL, of the image file.

```
var img = new Image();
img.src="pearl.jpg";
```

For your application, use the name of an image file you've chosen. It can be of type JPG, PNG, or GIF, and be sure to either put it in the same folder as your HTML document or include the entire path. Be careful about matching the case both in the name and the extension.

To draw this image on the canvas, we need a single line of code specifying the `image` object, the location for the upper left corner of the image, and the width and length to be used in the display of the image. As was the case with the rectangles, this code is a call of a method of a context object, so I use the variable `ctx` defined in the `init` function. I need to adjust the `ballx` and `bally` values I used for the center of the circle to indicate this upper corner. I use 2 times the ball radius for both the width and the length. The statement is

```
ctx.drawImage(img,ballx-ballrad,bally-ballrad,2*ballrad,2*ballrad);
```

Let's take a break now. It's your turn, dear reader, to do some work. Consider the following HTML document:

```
<html>
<head>
<title>The Origami Frog</title>
<script>
var img = new Image();
img.src = "frogface.gif";
var ctx;
function init() {
    ctx =document.getElementById("canvas").getContext('2d');
    ctx.drawImage(img,10,20,100,100);

}
</script>
</head>
<body>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>
</body>
</html>
```

Find your own image file and use its name in place of frogface.gif. Change the title to something appropriate. Experiment with the line

```
ctx.drawImage(img,10,20,100,100);
```

That is, change the 10, 20 to reposition the image, and change the 100,100 to change the width and the height. Make the changes and see if the program responds as you intended. Remember that as you specify the width and height, you could be changing the shape—the *aspect ratio*—of the picture.

Now try another exercise: drawing two images on the canvas. You'll need to have two different variables in place of img. For this task, give the variables distinctive names. If you are emulating Dr. Seuss, you can use thing1 and thing2; otherwise, choose something meaningful to you!

Now, on to more drawing!

Let's see how to use gradients for this version of the program. You can use gradients to set the fillStyle property. I didn't want to have the ball on top of a filled in rectangle, so I needed to figure out how to draw the four walls separately.

A gradient is a type of object in HTML5. There are linear gradients and radial gradients. In this application we use a linear gradient. The code defines a variable to be a gradient object, using a method of a canvas context that we defined earlier with the variable ctx. The code for the gradient looks like this:

```
var grad;
grad=ctx.createLinearGradient(boxx,boxy,boxx+boxwidth,boxy+boxheight);
```

The gradient stretches out over a rectangle shape.

Gradients involve sets of colors. A typical practice is to write code to set what are called the color stops, such as to make the gradient be a rainbow. For this, I set up an array of arrays in a variable named hue.

You can think of an array as a holder for a collection of values. Whereas a variable can hold only one value, an array can hold many. In the next chapter, you'll read about an array named everything that will hold all the objects to be drawn on the screen. In Chapter 9, which describes the Hangman game, the word list is an array of words. You'll read about many applications of arrays in this book. Here's a concrete example. The following var statement sets up a variable to be a specific array:

```
var family = ["Daniel", "Aviva", "Allison", "Grant", "Liam"];
```

The variable family is an array. Its data type is array. It consists of a list of people in my family (for pictures, see the memory game described in Chapter 5). To access or to set the first element of this array, you'd use family[0]. The values to specify specific members of an array are called index values or indices. Array indexing starts with zero. The expression family[0] would produce Daniel. The expression family[4] would produce Liam. If the value of a variable relative was 2, then family[relative] would produce Allison. To determine the number of elements in the array, you'd use family.length. In this case, the length is 5.

The individual items in an array can be of any type, including arrays. For example, I could modify the family array to provide more information:

```
var family = [["Daniel", "college teacher"],  
             ["Aviva", "congressional staff"],  
             ["Allison", "graduate student"],  
             ["Grant", "kid"],  
             ["Liam", "kid"]  
];
```

The formatting, with the line breaks and indents, is not required, but it's good practice.

The expression family[2][1] produces "graduate student". Remember: array indexing starts at 0 so the index value 2 for the array, sometimes termed the outer array in this type of example, produces ["Allison", "graduate student"] and the array 1, the index for the inner array, produces "graduate student".

These inner arrays do not have to be the same length. Consider the example:

```
var family = [["Daniel", "college teacher"],  
             ["Aviva", "congressional staff"],  
             ["Allison", "graduate student"],  
             ["Grant"],  
             ["Liam"]  
];
```

The code would check the length of the array and if it was 2 instead of 1, the second item would be the profession of the individual. If the length of the inner array was 1, it would be assumed that the individual does not have a profession.

Arrays of arrays can be very useful for product names and costs. The following statement specifies the very limited inventory of a store:

```
var inventory = [  
    ["toaster", 25.99],  
    ["blender", 74.99],
```

```
[ "dish", 10.50 ],  
[ "rug", 599.99 ]  
];
```

This store has 4 items, with the cheapest being the dish, represented in the position at index 2, and the most expensive the rug at index 3.

Now, let's see how we can use these concepts for defining a gradient. We'll use an array whose individual elements are also arrays.

Each inner array holds the RGB values for a color, namely red, yellow, green, cyan, blue, magenta.

```
var hue = [  
  [255, 0, 0 ],  
  [255, 255, 0 ],  
  [ 0, 255, 0 ],  
  [ 0, 255, 255 ],  
  [ 0, 0, 255 ],  
  [255, 0, 255 ]  
];
```

These values represent colors ranging from red (RGB 255,0,0) to magenta (RGB 255,0,255), with four colors specified in between. The gradient feature in JavaScript fills in the colors to produce the rainbow pattern shown in Figure 3-3. Gradients are defined by specifying points along an interval from 0 to 1. You can specify a gradient other than a rainbow. For example, you can use a graphics program to select a set of RGB values to be the so-called stop-points, and JavaScript will fill in values to blend from one to the next.

The array numeric values are not quite what we need, so we will have to manipulate them to produce what JavaScript demands.

Manipulation of arrays often requires doing something to each member of the array. One construct for doing this, present in many programming languages, is the `for` loop, which uses a variable called an indexing variable. The structure of the `for` loop is

```
for (initial value for indexing variable; condition for continuing; change for  
indexing variable) {  
  code to be done every time. The code usually references the indexing variable  
}
```

This says: start with this initial value; keep doing the loop as long as this condition holds; and change the index value in this specified way. A typical expression for the change will use operators such as `++`. The `++` operator increments the indicated variable by 1. A typical `for` header statement is

```
for (n=0;n<10;n++)
```

This `for` loop uses a variable named `n`, with `n` initialized to 0. If the value of `n` is less than 10, the statements inside the loop are executed. After each iteration, the value of `n` is increased by 1. In this case, the loop code will be executed 10 times, with `n` holding values 0, 1, 2, all the way up to 9.

Here's one more example, a common one to demonstrate arrays. Let the `grades` variable be set up to hold a set of grades for a student:

```
var grades = [4.0, 3.7, 3, 2.3, 3];
```

Depending on the institution, this could indicate grades of A, A-, B, C+, and B. The following snippet computes the grade-point average and stores it in the variable named gpa. Notice that we need to initialize the variable named sum to start with a value of 0. The `+=` operator adds to the value held in sum the value in the grades array at index value g.

```
var sum = 0;
for (g=0;g<grades.length;g++) {
  sum += grades[g];
}
var gpa;
gpa = sum/grades.length;
```

To produce what we need to build the gradient, the code extracts values from the hue array and uses them to produce character strings indicating RGB values. We use the hue array along with a variable called color to set the color stops to define the gradient. The color stops are set at any point between 0 and 1, using a for loop that sets color to be a character string of the required format, namely starting with "rgb(", and including the three values.

```
for (h=0;h<hue.length;h++) {
  color = 'rgb('+hue[h][0]+','+hue[h][1]+','+hue[h][2]+')';
  grad.addColorStop(h*1/hue.length,color);
}
```

The assignment statement setting color may seem strange to you: there's a lot going on—and what are those plus signs doing? Remember, our task is to generate the character strings indicating certain RGB values. The plus signs do *not* indicate addition of numbers here but concatenation of strings of characters. This means that the values are stuck together rather than mathematically added, so while 5+5 yields 10, '5'+5' would give 55. Because the 5s in the second example are enclosed by quote marks, they are strings rather than numbers. The square brackets are pulling out members of the array. JavaScript converts the numbers to the character string equivalent and then combines them. Remember that it's looking at arrays within arrays, so the first number within square brackets (in this case, provided by our variable h) gives us the first array, and the second number within square brackets gives us our number within that array. Let's look at a quick example. The first time our loop runs, the value of h will be 0, which gives us the first entry within the hue array. We then look up the separate parts of that entry in order to build our final color.

After all that, our code has set up the variable grad to be used to indicate a fill pattern. Instead of setting fillStyle to be a color, the code sets it to be the variable grad.

```
ctx.fillStyle = grad;
```

Drawing the rectangles is the same as before, but now with the indicated fill. These are four narrow walls at the left, right, top, and bottom of the original rectangle. I make the walls as thick as the radius of the ball. This thickness is the width in the case of the vertical walls and the height in the case of the horizontal walls.

```
ctx.fillRect(boxx,boxy,ballrad,boxheight);
ctx.fillRect(boxx+boxwidth-ballrad,boxy,ballrad,boxheight);
ctx.fillRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,ballrad);
ctx.fillRect(boxx,boxy+boxheight-ballrad,boxwidth,ballrad);
```

An important point to note here is that since the code is drawing or painting the canvas, to produce the effect of a moving ball, we also need code to erase everything and then redraw everything with the ball in a new spot. The statement to erase everything is:

```
ctx.clearRect(box,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);
```

It might be possible to erase (clear) just parts of the canvas, but I chose to erase and then redraw everything. In each situation, you need to decide what makes sense.

## Setting up a timing event

Setting up timing events in HTML5 is actually similar to the way it's done in the older versions of HTML. There are two built-in functions: `setInterval` and `setTimeout`. We'll look at `setInterval` here and at `setTimeout` in the memory game in Chapter 5. Each of these functions takes two arguments. Remember that arguments are extra pieces of information included in function or method calls. Back in Chapter 1, we saw that `document.write` took as its single argument what was to be written out on the screen.

I'll describe the second argument first. The second argument specifies an amount of time, in milliseconds. There are 1000 milliseconds to a second. This may seem like a very short unit to work with, but it turns out to be just what we want for games. A second (1000 milliseconds) is quite long for a computer game.

The first argument specifies what is to be done at the intervals specified by the second argument. The first argument can be the name of a function. For this application, the `init` function definition contains the following line:

```
setInterval(moveball,100);
```

This tells the JavaScript engine to invoke the function `moveball` every 100 milliseconds (10 times per second). `moveball` is the name of a function that will be defined in this HTML document; it is the *event handler* for the *timing interval event*. Don't be concerned if you write this line of code before writing the code to define the function. What counts is what exists when the application is run.

JavaScript also provides a way other than a function name for the event handler. You could write

```
setInterval("moveball()",100);
```

for the same effect. Putting it another way, for simple cases, when the action is the call of a function without parameters, the name of the function will do. For more complex cases (as described in the Aside note), you can write a string to specify code. The string can be a full function call, or something like this:

```
setInterval("positionx = positionx+speed;",100);
```

That is, the complete response to the event can be written in the first argument. Using a function is the way to go in most situations.

*Note: Here is a more complex example. Suppose I had a function named `slide` that itself took one argument, and I wanted this function to be called with a value 10 times the value of the variable `d`, and I wanted this to happen every one and one-half seconds, I would code*

```
setInterval("slide(10*d);",1500);
```

It is often the case that you want to indicate the passage of time on the screen. The following example will display 0, 1, .... etc. with the number changing every second.

```
<html>
<head>
<title>elapsed</title>
<script>
function init() {
    setInterval(increase,1000);
}
function increase() {
    document.fsecs.value = String(1+Number(document.fsecs.value));
}
</script>
</head>
<body onLoad="init();">
<form name="f">
<input type="text" name="secs" value="0"/>
</form>
</body>
</html>
```

This is a good example for you to take the time to write and run, both because it showcases timing events and also because it will make you appreciate how long a second lasts. The code takes the value out of the secs input field in the form named f, converts that value to a number, adds 1 to that number, and then converts it back to a string to assign as the value of the secs element. Try replacing the single statement inside the increase function with the statement

```
document.fsecs.value = 1+document.fsecs.value;
```

and see what happens. This is a lesson in the difference between numbers and character strings. Please play around with this little example. If you want to make the numbers go up in smaller increments, change the 1000 to 250 and the 1 to .25. This makes the script show quarter-second changes.

If you want to allow your code to stop a particular event, you can set up a global variable (one that's outside of any function). I use a variable named tev, my shorthand for timing event.

```
var tev;
```

You would then modify the setInterval call to be:

```
tev = setInterval(moveball,100);
```

When you wanted to stop this event, you'd include this code:

```
clearInterval(tev);
```

To reiterate, the setInterval function sets up a timing event that keeps occurring until it is cleared. If you know you want an event to happen just once, the setTimeout method sets up exactly one event. You can use either method to produce the same results, but JavaScript furnishes both to make things easier.

For the bouncing ball application, the moveball function calculates a new position for the ball, does the calculations to check for collisions and when they occur, redirects the ball and draws a new display. This is done over and over—the calls to moveball keep happening because we used setInterval.

## Calculating a new position and collision detection

Now that we know how to draw, and how to clear and redraw, and we know how to do something at fixed intervals, the challenge is how to calculate the new positions and how to do collision detection. We'll do this by declaring variables ballx and bally to hold the x and y coordinates of the ball's center; ballvx and ballvy to hold the amount by which the ball position is to be changed, and ballboundx, inboxboundx, ballboundy and inboxboundy to indicate a box slightly smaller than the actual box for the collision calculation. The amounts by which the ball position is to be changed are initialized to 4 and 8 (totally arbitrarily) and are changed if and when a player makes a valid change (see next section) and clicks on the change button. These amounts are termed displacements or deltas and, less formally, velocities or speeds.

The change in direction is pretty simple in this situation. If the ball "hits" a vertical wall, the horizontal displacement must change sign; i.e., if the ball was moving 4 units to the right and we hit a wall, we add -4 to its position, which starts it moving to the left. The vertical displacement stays the same. The hit is determined by comparing the *next* horizontal value with the boundary. Similarly, if the ball "hits" a horizontal wall as determined by comparing the vertical position with the appropriate boundary, the vertical displacement changes sign while the horizontal displacement remains the same. The change is for the next iteration. The check for collisions is done four times, that is, for each of the 4 walls. The calculation consists of comparing the proposed new x or y value, as appropriate, with the boundary condition for the particular wall. The tentative new position is adjusted if the ball center goes past one of the four walls to be exactly at the boundary. This has the effect of making the ball go slightly behind each wall or appear to be squeezed by each wall. The boundary values are set up to be just inside the box with the upper corner at boxx, boxy, a width of boxwidth, and a height of boxheight. I could use a more complex calculation to compare any point on the circle with any point on the walls. However, there is a more fundamental principle involved here. There are no walls and no ball. This is a simulation based on calculations. The calculations are done at intervals. If the ball is moving fast enough and the walls are thin enough, thinner than the ballrad specified here, the ball can escape the box. This is why I do the calculation in terms of the next move and a slightly smaller box.

```
var boxboundx = boxwidth+boxx-ballrad;
var boxboundy = boxheight+boxy-ballrad;
var inboxboundx = boxx+ballrad;
var inboxboundy = boxy+ballrad;
```

Here is the code for the moveandcheck function, the function that checks for collisions and reposition the ball:

```
function moveandcheck() {
  var nballx = ballx + ballvx;
  var nbally = bally +ballvy;
  if (nballx > boxboundx) {
    ballvx = -ballvx;
    nballx = boxboundx;
  }
  if (nballx < inboxboundx) {
    nballx = inboxboundx
    ballvx = -ballvx;
  }
  if (nbally > boxboundy) {
    nbally = boxboundy;
```

```
    ballvy =-ballvy;
}
if (nbally < inboxboundy) {
    nbally = inboxboundy;
    ballvy = -ballvy;
}
ballx = nbally;
bally = nbally;
}
```

You might say that not much actually happens here and you'd be correct. The variables `ballx` and `bally` are modified to be used later when things get drawn to the canvas.

It is not obvious from this code, but do keep in mind that vertical values (y values) increase going down the screen and horizontal values (x values) increase going from left to right.

## Validation

***Caution:** As of this writing, some validation works in Chrome, and perhaps other browsers, but not in Firefox.*

HTML5 provides new facilities for validating form input. The creator of a form can specify that an input field is of type `number` as opposed to `text`, and HTML5 will immediately check that the user/player entered a number. Similarly, we can specify `max` and `min` values. The code for the form is

```
<form name="f" id="f" onSubmit="return change();">
    Horizontal velocity <input name="hv" id="hv" value="4" type="number" min="-10"
    max="10" />
    <br>
    Vertical velocity <input name="vv" id="vv" value="8" type="number" min="-10"
    max="10"/>
    <input type="submit" value="CHANGE"/>
</form>
```

The input is still text, that is, a string of characters, but the values are to be text that can be interpreted as a number in the indicated range.

Other types of input include "email" and "URL" and it is very handy to have HTML5 check these. Of course, you can check any character string to see if it's a number using `isNumber` and more complicated coding, including *regular expressions* (patterns of characters that can be matched against), to check for valid e-mail addresses and URLs. One common tactic for checking an e-mail address is to make the user type it in twice so you can compare the two and make sure the user hasn't made any mistakes.

We want to take advantage of the work HTML5 will do for us, but we also want to let the user/player know if something is wrong. You can use HTML5 and CSS to do this, by specifying a style for valid and invalid input.

```
input:valid {background:green;}
input:invalid {background:red;}
```

HTML5 validation is not fully operational in all browsers, so I won't spend a lot of time on it. If you're using a compliant browser, such as Chrome, you can test out the example given in the next section. Notice that the ball keeps bouncing even if an invalid value, say "abc" is entered where a number was specified, because the program continues to use the current settings.

*Tip: Validating input and generating appropriate feedback to users is important in any application. Among the new features HTML5 provides is a pattern attribute in the input element in which a special language called regular expressions can be used to specify valid input. Put **HTML5 regular expressions** into a search field to find up-to-date information.*

## HTML page reload

Before continuing, I want to mention some issues that may cause unexpected problems. Browsers come with reload/refresh buttons. The document is reloaded when the button is clicked. We made use of this in the simple die throw application in Chapter 2. However, at times you may want to prevent a reload and, in such cases, you can put a `return (false);` in functions that don't have anything to return to keep the page from reloading.

When a document has a form, reloading does not always reinitialize the form input. You may need to leave the page and then reload it using the full URL.

Lastly, browsers try to use files previously downloaded to the client (user) computer rather than requesting files from a server based on inspection of the date and time. The files on the client computer are stored in what is called the cache. If you think you made a change but the browser isn't displaying the latest version, you may need to take steps such as clearing the cache.

## Building the application and making it your own

I will now explain the code for the basic bouncing ball application; the application that uses an image for the ball and gradients for the walls; and the one that validates the input. Table 3-1 shows all the function calls and what is being called. This is the same for all three applications.

**Table 3-1.** Functions in the Bouncing Ball Applications

Function	Invoked By/Called By	Calls
init	Action of onLoad in the body tag	moveball
moveball	Invoked directly by init and by action of setInterval	moveandcheck
moveandcheck	Invoked by moveball	
change	Invoked by action of onSubmit in the form tag	

The moveandcheck code could be part of the moveball function. I chose to separate it because it is a good practice to define functions that perform specific actions. Generally, more, smaller functions are

better than fewer, larger ones when you're developing applications. By the way, when doing your own programming, don't forget to put comments in the code as described in Chapter 2. And add blank lines to make the code more readable. Table 3-2 shows the code for the basic bouncing ball application and explains what each line does.

**Table 3-2.** The Bouncing Ball Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	Start html
<head>	Start head
<title>Bouncing Ball with inputs</title>	Complete title element
<style>	Start style
form {	Start form styling
width:330px;	Set up width
margin:20px;	Set margin
background-color:brown;	Set color
padding:20px;	Set internal padding
}	Close this style
</style>	Close style element
<script type="text/javascript">	Start script element. (The type is not required. I show it here just to let you know what you'll see in many examples online.)
var boxx = 20;	x location of upper corner of box
var boxy = 30;	y location of upper corner of box
var boxwidth = 350;	Box width
var boxheight = 250;	Box height
var ballrad = 10;	Radius of ball

Code	Explanation
var boxboundx = boxwidth+boxx-ballrad;	Right boundary
var boxboundy = boxheight+boxy-ballrad;	Bottom boundary
var inboxboundx = boxx+ballrad;	Left boundary
var inboxboundy = boxy+ballrad;	Top boundary
var ballx = 50;	Initial x position of ball
var bally = 60;	Initial y position of ball
var ctx;	Variable holding canvas context
var ballvx = 4;	Initial horizontal displacement
var ballvy = 8;	Initial vertical displacement
function init() {	Start of init function
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Set the ctx variable
ctx.lineWidth = ballrad;	Set line width
ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(200,0,50)";	Set fill style
moveball();	Invoke moveball function the first time to move, check, and display the ball
setInterval(moveball,100);	Set up timing event
}	Close of init function
function moveball(){	Start of moveball function
ctx.clearRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);	Clear (erase) box (including any paint from a ball)

Code	Explanation
moveandcheck();	Do the check and the move the ball
ctx.beginPath();	Start path
ctx.arc(ballx, bally, ballrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Set up to draw of circle at current location of ball
ctx.fill();	Fill in the path; that is, draw a filled circle
ctx.strokeRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);	Draw rectangle outline
}	Close moveball
function moveandcheck() {	Start of moveandcheck
var nballx = ballx + ballvx;	Set tentative next x position
var nbally = bally +ballvy;	Set tentative next y position
if (nballx > boxboundx) {	Is this x value beyond the right wall?
ballvx = -ballvx;	If so, change vertical displacement
nballx = boxboundx;	Set the next x to be exactly at this boundary.
}	Close clause
if (nballx < inboxboundx) {	Is this x value less than the right boundary?
nballx = inboxboundx	If so, set the x value to be exactly at the boundary
ballvx = -ballvx;	Change the vertical displacement
}	Close clause
if (nbally > boxboundy) {	Is the y value beyond the bottom boundary?
nbally = boxboundy;	If so, set the y value to be exactly at the boundary
ballvy = -ballvy;	Change the horizontal displacement

Code	Explanation
}	Close clause
if (nbally < inboxboundy) {	Is the y value less than the top boundary?
nbally = inboxboundy;	If so, set the y value to be exactly the boundary
ballvy = -ballvy;	Change the vertical displacement
}	Close clause
ballx = nballx;	Set the x position to nballx
bally = nbally;	Set the y position to nbally
}	Close moveandcheck function
function change() {	Start of change function
ballvx = Number(f.hv.value);	Convert input to number and assign to ballvx
ballvy = Number(f.vv.value);	Convert input to number and assign to ballvy
return false;	Return false to make sure there isn't a page reload
}	Close function
</script>	Close script
</head>	Close head
<body onLoad="init();">	Start body element. Set up call to init function
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">	Start of canvas element
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Message for non-compliant browsers
</canvas>	Close canvas element
 	Line break

Code	Explanation
<form name="f" id="f" onSubmit=> "return change();">	Start of form. Give name and id (may need for some browsers). Set up action on submit button.
Horizontal velocity <input name="hv" id="hv" value="4" type="number" min="-10" max="10" />	Label an input field for horizontal velocity
 	Line break
Vertical velocity <input name="vv" id="vv" value="8" type="number" min="-10" max="10"/>	Label an input field for vertical velocity
<input type="submit" value="CHANGE"/>	Submit button
</form>	Close form
</body>	Close body
</html>	Close html

The application that uses an image as the ball and the gradient-filled walls is very similar. Table 3-3 shows all the code—but I just comment the code that is different. I’m not being lazy; the idea is to let you see how each application is built on the previous one.

**Table 3-3.** The Second Application, with an Image as the Ball and Gradient-Filled Walls

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Bouncing Ball with inputs</title>	
<style>	
form {	
width:330px;	
margin:20px;	

Code	Explanation
background-color:#b10515;	
padding:20px;	
}	
</style>	
<script type="text/javascript">	
var boxx = 20;	
var boxy = 30;	
var boxwidth = 350;	
var boxheight = 250;	
var ballrad = 20;	This isn't a substantial change, but the picture required a bigger radius.
var boxboundx = boxwidth+boxx-ballrad;	
var boxboundy = boxheight+boxy-ballrad;	
var inboxboundx = boxx+ballrad;	
var inboxboundy = boxy+ballrad;	
var ballx = 50;	
var bally = 60;	
var ballvx = 4;	
var ballvy = 8;	
var img = new Image();	Defining the <code>img</code> variable as an <code>Image</code> object. This is what the <code>new</code> operator and the call to the <code>Image</code> function do.

Code	Explanation
img.src="pearl.jpg";	Set the src for this image to be the "pearl.jpg" file.
var ctx;	
var grad;	Set grad as a variable. It will be assigned a value in the init function.
var color;	Used in setting up the gradient grad
var hue = [ 255, 0, 0 ],	Used in setting up the gradient grad. This is an array of arrays, each inner array supplying RGB values.
[ 255, 255, 0 ],	Red
[ 0, 255, 0 ],	Yellow
[ 0, 0, 255 ],	Green
[ 0, 255, 255 ],	Cyan
[ 0, 0, 255 ],	Blue
[ 255, 0, 255 ]	Purple (magenta)
];	Close array
function init(){	Used to set up the gradient
var h;	
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	
grad = ctx.createLinearGradient(boxx,boxy,boxx+boxwidth,boxy+boxheight);	Create and assign a gradient value.
for (h=0;h<hue.length;h++) {	Start of for loop

Code	Explanation
color = 'rgb('+hue[h][0]+','+hue[h][1]+','+hue[h][2]+')';	Set up color as a character string that indicates an RGB value.
grad.addColorStop(h*1/6,color);	Set up the color stop to define the gradient.
}	Close for loop
ctx.fillStyle = grad;	Set the fill to be grad
ctx.lineWidth = ballrad;	
moveball();	
setInterval(moveball,100);	
}	
function moveball(){	
ctx.clearRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);	
moveandcheck();	
ctx.drawImage(img,ballx-ballrad,bally-ballrad,2*ballrad,2*ballrad);	Draw an image
ctx.fillRect(boxx,boxy,ballrad,boxheight);	Draw the left wall
ctx.fillRect(boxx+boxwidth-ballrad,boxy,ballrad,boxheight);	Draw the right wall
ctx.fillRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,ballrad);	Draw the top wall
ctx.fillRect(boxx,boxy+boxheight-ballrad,boxwidth,ballrad);	Draw the bottom wall
}	
function moveandcheck() {	

Code	Explanation
var nbally = bally +ballvy;	
var nbally = bally +ballvy;	
if (nbally > boxboundy) {	
ballvy =-ballvy;	
nbally = boxboundy;	
}	
if (nbally < inboxboundy) {	
nbally = inboxboundy	
ballvy = -ballvy;	
}	
if (nbally > boxboundy) {	
nbally = boxboundy;	
ballvy =-ballvy;	
}	
if (nbally < inboxboundy) {	
nbally = inboxboundy;	
ballvy = -ballvy;	
}	
ballx = nbally;	
bally = nbally;	

Code	Explanation
}	
function change() {	
ballvx = Number(f.hv.value);	
ballvy = Number(f.vv.value);	
return false;	
}	
</script>	
</head>	
<body onLoad="init();">	
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">	
This browser doesn't support the HTML5 canvas element.	
</canvas>	
<form name="f" id="f" onSubmit="return change();">	
Horizontal velocity <input name="hv" id="hv" value="4" type="number" min="-10" max="10" />	
Vertical velocity <input name="vv" id="vv" value="8" type="number" min="-10" max="10"/>	
<input type="submit" value="CHANGE"/>	

Code	Explanation
</form>	
</body>	
</html>	

I chose to put the modest change of the style information in the first application. Table 3-4 shows the third bouncing ball application, with form validation. Again, I have only commented the new code, but I include all the code for completeness sake.

**Table 3-4.** The Third Bouncing Ball Application, with Form Validation

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Bouncing Ball with inputs</title>	
<style>	
form {	
width:330px;	
margin:20px;	
background-color:brown;	
padding:20px;	
}	
input:valid {background:green;}	Set up feedback for valid input
input:invalid {background:red;}	Set up feedback for invalid input
</style>	
<script type="text/javascript">	

Code	Explanation
var cwidth = 400;	
var cheight = 300;	
var ballrad = 10;	
var boxx = 20;	
var boxy = 30;	
var boxwidth = 350;	
var boxheight = 250;	
var boxboundx = boxwidth+boxx-ballrad;	
var boxboundy = boxheight+boxy-ballrad;	
var inboxboundx = boxx+ballrad;	
var inboxboundy = boxy+ballrad;	
var ballx = 50;	
var bally = 60;	
var ctx;	
var ballvx = 4;	
var ballvy = 8;	
function init(){	
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	
ctx.lineWidth = ballrad;	
moveball();	

Code	Explanation
setInterval(moveball,100);	
}	
function moveball(){	
ctx.clearRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);	
moveandcheck();	
ctx.beginPath();	
ctx.fillStyle ="rgb(200,0,50)";	
ctx.arc(ballx, bally, ballrad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	
ctx.fill();	
ctx.strokeRect(boxx,boxy,boxwidth,boxheight);	
}	
function moveandcheck() {	
var nballx = ballx + ballvx;	
var nbally = bally +ballvy;	
if (nballx > boxboundx) {	
ballvx =-ballvx;	
nballx = boxboundx;	
}	
if (nballx < inboxboundx) {	

Code	Explanation
nbally = inboxboundy	
ballvx = -ballvx;	
}	
if (nbally > boxboundy) {	
nbally = boxboundy;	
ballvy = -ballvy;	
}	
if (nbally < inboxboundy) {	
nbally = inboxboundy;	
ballvy = -ballvy;	
}	
ballx = nbally;	
bally = nbally;	
}	
function change() {	
ballvx = Number(f.hv.value);	
ballvy = Number(f.vv.value);	
return false;	
}	
</script>	
</head>	

Code	Explanation
<body onLoad="init();">	
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">	
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	
</canvas>	
<form name="f" id="f" onSubmit="return change();">	
Horizontal velocity <input name="hv" id="hv" value="4" type="number" min="-10" max="10" />	
Vertical velocity <input name="vv" id="vv" value="8" type="number" min="-10" max="10" />	
<input type="submit" value="CHANGE"/>	
</form>	
</body>	
</html>	

There are many ways you can make this application your own. You can select your own image for the ball and experiment with the colors for the walls, with or without the gradients. You can change the position and the dimensions of each wall. You can add text and HTML markup to the page. You can change the look of the form.

You can include more than one ball, keeping track of the positions of each. If you decide to use two balls, you need two sets of variables and two lines of code for each one line you had before. One systematic way to do this is to use the search function in the editor to find all instances of ball and, for each line, substitute two lines, so in place of ball1x, you have ball1x and ball2x, and in place of the var ball1x = 50; use

```
var ball1x = 50;
var ball2x = 250;
```

This puts the second ball 200 pixels over on the canvas.

You would also need a second set of all the comparisons for the walls.

If you want to use more than two balls, you may want to consider using arrays. Subsequent chapters will show you how to handle sets of objects.

You also can try writing code that slows the ball each time it hits a wall. This is a nice effect and does simulate a real physical result. In each of the places in the code where the direction is changed by changing the sign of the appropriate variable, add in a factor to decrease the absolute value. For example, if I chose to decrease the value by 10%, I would write

```
if (nballx > boxboundx) {  
    ballvx = -ballvx * .9;  
    nballx = boxboundx;  
}
```

This means that the incremental change in the vertical direction would go down to 90% of what it was.

## Testing and uploading the application

The first and third applications are complete in the HTML documents. The second application requires the image file to be present in the same folder. You can access files anywhere on the Web, but you need to make sure you include the correct address. For example, if you upload the HTML document to a folder called `mygames` and upload `pearl.jpg` to a subfolder of `mygames` named `images`, the line indicating this must be

```
img.src = "images/pearl.jpg";
```

You must also use accurate file extensions, such as `JPG`, that indicate the correct file type. Some browsers are forgiving but many are not. You can try to submit bad data and see the response using different browsers.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to create an application with animation that changes based on input from the user. We covered a number of programming and HTML5 features, including

- `setInterval` to set up a timing event for the animation
- validation of form input
- programmer-defined functions to reposition a circle or an image horizontally and vertically to simulate a bouncing ball
- tests to check for virtual collisions
- drawing rectangles, images and circles, including gradients for the coloring

The next chapter describes the cannonball and slingshot games in which the player attempts to hit targets. These applications use the same programming and HTML5 features we used to produce the animation, but take them a step further. You will also see an example of animation in the rock-paper-scissors implementation in Chapter 8.



## Chapter 4

# Cannonball and Slingshot

---

In this chapter, you will learn techniques for

- maintaining a list of objects to draw on the screen
- rotating objects drawn on the screen
- mouse drag and drop operations
- calculations to simulate ballistic motion (effects of gravity) and collisions

## Introduction

This chapter demonstrates another example of animation, in this case simulation of ballistics, also called projectile motion. A ball or ball-like object maintains a constant horizontal (x) displacement, with the vertical displacement changing as it would due to gravity. The resulting motion is an arc. The ball stops when it (virtually) hits the ground or the target. The code you'll see produces the animation using the same technique demonstrated for the ball bouncing in a box. The code repositions the ball and redraws the scene at fixed intervals. We will look at three examples.

- A very simple ballistics simulation: a ball taking off and traveling in an arc before hitting a target or the ground. The parameters of flight are horizontal and initial vertical speeds, which are set by the player using form input fields. The ball simply stops when it hits the target or the ground.
- An improved cannonball, with a rectangle representing the cannon tilted at an angle. The parameters of flight are the speed out of the cannon and the angle of the cannon. Again, these are set by the player using form input fields. The program calculates the initial horizontal and vertical displacement values.

- A slingshot. The parameters of flight are determined by the player dragging, then releasing a ball shape tethered to a stick drawing representing a slingshot. The speed is determined by the distance from the ball to a place on the slingshot. The angle is the angle from the horizontal of this part of the slingshot.

Figure 4-1 shows the simple (no cannon) application.



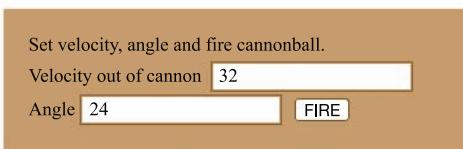
**Figure 4-1.** The ball lands on the ground.

Figure 4-2 shows the opening screen for the second application. The target is an Image and the rectangle representing the cannon can be rotated. Notice the controls refer to an angle and an initial velocity



**Figure 4-2.** Rotating cannon with image as target

Figure 4-3 shows the scene after a successful hit. Notice that the cannon is rotated and the original image for the target has been replaced with a new image.



**Figure 4-3.** After firing the cannon and hitting target

The opening screen of the slingshot application is shown in Figure 4-4. This application is similar to the cannon, but the parameters of flight are set by the player using a mouse to drag on the ball and the target is now a chicken.



**Figure 4-4.** Opening screen of the slingshot application

For the slingshot, I decided I wanted the ball to keep going until it hit the ground. However, if the chicken was hit, I wanted it to be replaced by feathers, as shown in Figure 4-5. Notice that the strings of the slingshot remain where they were when the mouse button was released and the ball took flight. I found I needed more time looking at the strings in order to plan my next shot. If you want, you can change the game so that the strings snap back to their original position or create a new-game button. In my example, the game is replayed by reloading the HTML file.



**Figure 4-5.** The ball lands on ground after hitting the chicken. Only feathers remain.

The programming for these applications uses many of the same techniques demonstrated in the bouncing ball applications. The repositioning of the ball in flight is only as different as it needs to be to simulate the effects of the vertical displacement changing because of gravity. The slingshot application provides a new way for the player to interact with the application, using drag and drop actions with the mouse.

The cannonball with cannon and the slingshot use drawing features for the cannon and slingshot and external image files for the original targets and hit targets. If you want to change the targets, you'll need to find image files and upload them with the application. The complete applications are available at [www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html](http://www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html).

## Critical requirements

Our first requirement is to produce animation by setting up an event to occur at fixed intervals of time, and then setting up a function to handle the event by repositioning the ball and checking for collisions. We covered this in the previous chapter on the bouncing ball application. What's new here is the calculation for simulating gravity. The calculation indicated by a simple physics model works out a new vertical displacement based on changing the vertical displacement by a constant amount and then computing the average of the old and new displacements to compute the new position.

- The horizontal displacement (held by variable `dx`) is the horizontal velocity (`horvelocity`) and does not change. In code: `dx = horvelocity;`

- The vertical velocity at the start of the interval is `verticalvel1`
- The vertical velocity at end of the interval is `verticalvel1` plus the acceleration amount (gravity). In code: `verticalvel2 = verticalvel1 + gravity;`
- The vertical displacement for the interval (`dy`) is the average of `verticalvel1` and `verticalvel2`. In code: `dy = (verticalvel1 + verticalvel2)*.5;`

This is a standard way of simulating gravity or any other constant acceleration.

*Note: I made up my value for gravity to produce a pleasing arc. You can use a standard value, but you'll need to do research to assign realistic values for the starting velocity out of the mouth of the cannon and for a slingshot. You also need to determine the mapping between pixels and distances. The factor would be different for the cannonball and the slingshot.*

The second version of the program must rotate the cannon based on either the initial values or the player's input for the velocity out of the mouth of the cannon and the cannon angle and calculate the horizontal and vertical values based on these values.

The third version of the program, the slingshot, must allow the player to press and hold the mouse button and drag the ball along with the strings of the slingshot, then let the mouse button up to release the ball. The motion parameters are calculated based on the angle and the distance of the ball from the top of the slingshot.

Both the second and third versions of the program require a way to replace the target image with another image.

## HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

Now let's look at the specific features of HTML5 and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement the ballistics simulation applications. Luckily, we can build on material covered in previous chapters, specifically the general structure of an HTML document, using a `canvas` element, programmer-defined and built-in functions, a `form` element, and variables. Let's start with programmer-defined objects and using arrays.

### Arrays and programmer-defined objects

HTML5 lets you draw on a canvas, but once something is drawn, it's as if paint or ink were laid down; the thing drawn doesn't retain its individual identity. HTML5 is not like Flash in which objects are positioned on a Stage and can be individually moved and rotated. However, we can still produce the same effects, including rotation of individual objects.

Because these applications have a somewhat more complicated display, I decided to develop a more systematic approach to drawing and redrawing different things on the canvas. To that end, I created an array called `everything` that holds the list of objects to be drawn on the canvas. Think of an array as a set, or more accurately, a sequence of items. In previous chapters, we discussed variables set up to hold values such as numbers or character strings. An array is another type of value. My `everything` array will serve as a to-do list of what needs to be drawn on the canvas.

I am using the term *objects* in both the English and the programming sense. In programming terms, an object consists of *properties* and *methods*, that is, data and coding or behavior. In the annotated links example described in the first chapter, I demonstrated the `write` method of the `document` object. I used the variable `ctx`, which is of type 2D context of a `canvas` object, methods such as `fillRect`, and properties such as `fillStyle`. These were built-in; that is, they were already defined objects in HTML5's version of JavaScript. For the ballistics applications, I defined my own objects, specifically `Ball`, `Picture`, `Myrectangle`, and `Sling`. Each of these different objects includes the definition of a `draw` method as well as properties indicating position and dimensions. I did this so I can draw each of a list of things. The appropriate `draw` method accesses the properties to determine what and where to draw. I also included a way to rotate individual objects.

Defining an object is straightforward: I simply define a function called the *constructor* function for `Ball`, `Picture`, and `Myrectangle`, and use these functions with the operator `new` to assign the values to variables. I can then write code using the familiar dot notation to access or assign the properties and to invoke methods I've set up in the constructor function. Here is the constructor function for a `Ball` object:

```
function Ball(sx,sy,rad,stylestring) {  
    this.sx = sx;  
    this.sy = sy;  
    this.rad = rad;  
    this.draw = drawball;  
    this.moveit = moveball;  
    this.fillStyle = stylestring;  
}
```

The term `this` refers to the object that's created when this function is used with the keyword `new`. The fact that `this.draw` and `this.moveit` are assigned the names of functions is not obvious from looking at the code, but that's what happens. The definitions of those two functions follow. Notice that they each use the term `this` to get at the properties necessary to draw and move the object.

```
function drawball() {  
    ctx.fillStyle=this.fillStyle;  
    ctx.beginPath();  
  
    ctx.arc(this.sx,this.sy,this.rad,0,Math.PI*2,true);  
    ctx.fill();  
}
```

The `drawball` function draws a filled-in circle, a complete arc, on the canvas. The color of the circle is the color set when this `Ball` object was created.

The function `moveball` doesn't move anything immediately. Looking at the issue abstractly, `moveball` changes where the application positions the object. The function changes the values of the `sx` and `sy` properties of the object and when it is displayed next, these new values are used to make the drawing.

```
function moveball(dx,dy) {  
    this.sx +=dx;  
    this.sy +=dy;  
}
```

The next statement, declaring the variable `cball`, builds a new object of type `Ball` by using the operator `new` and the function `Ball`. The parameters to the function are based on set values for the cannon because I want the ball to appear at the mouth of the cannon to start out.

```
var cball = new
Ball(cannonx+cannonlength,cannony+cannonht*.5,ballrad,"rgb(250,0,0)");
```

The `Picture`, `Myrectangle`, and `Slingshot` functions are similar and will be explained below. They each specify a `draw` method. For this application, I only use `moveit` for `cball`, but I defined `moveit` for the other objects just in case I later want to build on this application. The variables `cannon` and `ground` will be set to hold a new `Myrectangle`, and the variables `target` and `htarget` will be set to hold a new `Picture`.

*Tip: Names made up by programmers are arbitrary, but it's a good idea to be consistent in both spelling and case. HTML5 appears to disregard case, in contrast to a version of HTML called XHTML. Many languages treat upper- and lowercase as different letters. I generally use lowercase, but I capitalized the first letter of `Ball`, `Picture`, `Slingshot`, and `Myrectangle` because the convention is that functions intended to be constructors of objects should start with capital letters.*

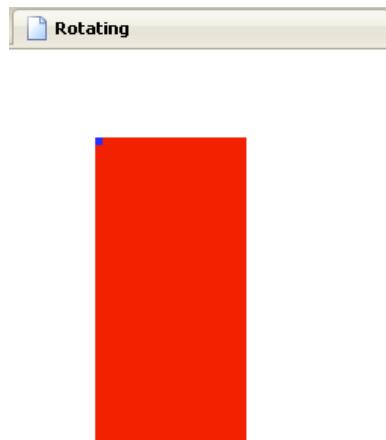
Each of the variables will be added to the `everything` array using the array method `push`, which adds a new element to the end of the array.

## Rotations and translations for drawing

HTML5 lets us translate and rotate drawings. Take a look at the following code. I urge you to create this example and then experiment with it to improve your understanding. The code draws a large red rectangle on the canvas with the upper corner at (50,50) and a tiny blue, square on top of it.

```
<html>
<head>
    <title>Rectangle</title>
    <script type="text/javascript">
        var ctx;
        function init(){
            ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');
            ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(250,0,0)";
            ctx.fillRect(50,50,100,200);
            ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(0,0,250)";
            ctx.fillRect(50,50,5,5);
        }
    </script>
</head>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="400" height="300">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>
</body>
</html>
```

The result is shown in Figure 4-6.



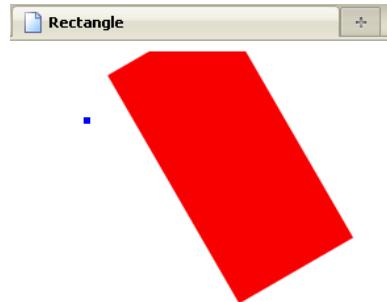
**Figure 4-6.** Rectangle (no rotation)

In this exercise, the goal is to rotate the large rectangle, pivoting on the upper-left corner where the small blue square is. I want the rotation to be counterclockwise.

One slight complication, common to most programming languages, is that the angle input for rotations as well as the trigonometry functions must be in *radians*, not degrees. Radians were explained in Chapter 2, but here's a reminder. Instead of 360 degrees in a full circle, the measurement is based on two times the mathematical constant pi radians in a circle. Fortunately, we can use the built-in feature of JavaScript, `Math.PI`. One pi radians is equivalent to 180 degrees and pi divided by 2 is equivalent to a right angle, 90 degrees. To specify a rotation of 30 degrees, we use pi divided by 6 or, in coding, `Math.PI/6`. To change the `init` function given previously to do a rotation, I put in a rotation of negative pi divided by 6 (equivalent to 30 degrees going counterclockwise), draw the red rectangle, and then rotate back, undo the rotation, to draw the blue square:

```
function init(){
  ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');
  ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(250,0,0)";
  ctx.rotate(-Math.PI/6);
  ctx.fillRect(50,50,100,200);
  ctx.rotate(Math.PI/6);
  ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(0,0,250)";
  ctx.fillRect(50,50,5,5);
}
```

Unfortunately, the drawing in Figure 4-7 is not what I wanted.

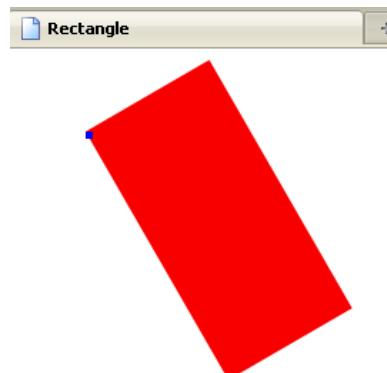


**Figure 4-7.** Drawing and rotating a rectangle

The problem is the rotation point is at the origin, (0,0) and not at the corner of the red rectangle. So, I need to write code to perform a translation, then the rotation, then a translation back in order to draw at the correct place. I can do this using features of HTML5. All drawing on the canvas is done in terms of a coordinate system, and I can use the `save` and `restore` operations to save the current coordinate system—the position and orientation of the axes—and then restore it to make follow-on drawings. Here's the code.

```
function init(){
  ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');
  ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(250,0,0)";
  ctx.save();
  ctx.translate(50,50);
  ctx.rotate(-Math.PI/6);
  ctx.translate(-50,-50);
  ctx.fillRect(50,50,100,200);
  ctx.restore();
  ctx.fillStyle = "rgb(0,0,250)";
  ctx.fillRect(50,50,5,5);
}
```

The `rotate` method expects an angle in radian units and clockwise is the positive direction. So my code is rotating 30 degrees counterclockwise, producing what I had in mind, as shown in Figure 4-8.



**Figure 4-8.** Save, translate, rotate, translate, restore

By the way, we can't expect our players to put in angles using radians. They, and we, are too accustomed to degrees (90 degrees is a right angle, 180 degrees is your arc when you make a u-turn, etc.). The program must do the work. The conversion from degrees to radians is to multiply by  $\pi/180$ .

*Note: Most programming languages use radians for angles in trig functions. Flash uses degrees in certain situations and radians in others, so in some ways JavaScript is less confusing by only using radians.*

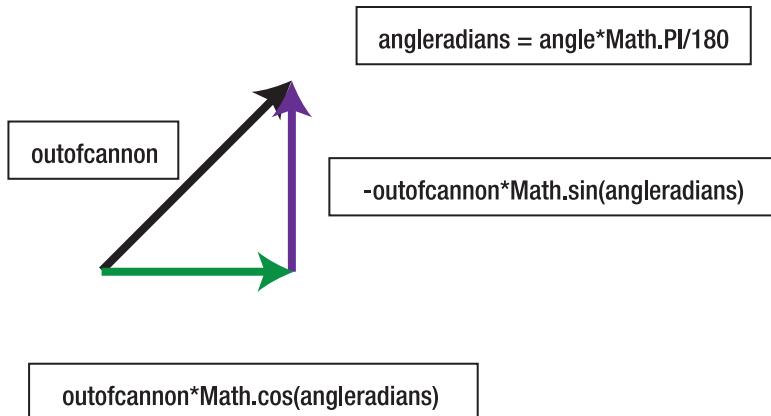
With this background, I add to the information in the everything array indications as to whether there is to be a rotation and, if so, the required translation point. This is my idea. It has nothing to do with HTML5 or JavaScript, and it could have been done differently. The underlying task is to create and maintain information on objects in the simulated scene. The canvas feature of HTML5 provides a way to draw pictures and display images, but it does not retain information on objects!

The items in the everything array for the second and third applications are themselves arrays. The first (0<sup>th</sup> index) value points to the object. The second (1<sup>st</sup> index) is true or false. A value of true means that a rotation angle value and x and y values for translation follow. In practice, this means that the inner arrays have either two values, with the last one being false, or five values.

*Note: At this point, you may be thinking: she set up a general system just to rotate the cannon. Why not put in something just for the cannon? The answer is we could, but the general system does work and something just for the cannon might have had just as much coding.*

The first application uses horizontal and vertical displacement values picked up from the form. The player must think of the two separate values. For the second application, the player inputs two values again, but they are different. One is the speed out of the mouth of the cannon and the other is the angle of the cannon. The program does the rest. The initial and unchanging horizontal displacement and the initial vertical displacement are calculated from the player's input: the velocity out of the cannon and an angle. The calculation is based on standard trigonometry. Luckily, JavaScript provides the trig functions as part of the Math class of built-in methods.

Figure 4-9 shows the calculation of the displacement values from the out of cannon and angle values specified by the player. The minus sign for the vertical is due to the way JavaScript screen coordinates have y values increasing going down the screen.

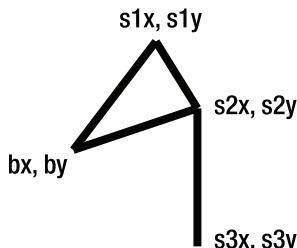


**Figure 4-9.** Calculating horizontal \* vertical displacements

At this point, you may want to skip ahead to read about the implementation of the cannonball applications. You can then come back to read about what is required for the slingshot.

## Drawing line segments

For the slingshot application, I have added a new object type by defining two functions, `Sling` and `drawsling`. My idealized slingshot is represented by 4 positions, as shown in Figure 4-10. Please understand that we could have done this in a number of different ways.



**Figure 4-10.** The idealized slingshot

Drawing the slingshot consists of drawing four line segments based on the four points. The `bx, by` point will change as I'll describe in the next section. HTML5 lets us draw line segments as part of a path. We've already used paths for drawing circles. You can draw a path as a stroke or as a fill. For the circles, we used the `fill` method, but for the slingshot, I just want lines. Drawing a line may involve two steps: move to one end of the line and then draw it. HTML5 provides the `moveTo` and `lineTo` methods. The path is not drawn until the `stroke` or `fill` method is invoked. The `drawsling` function is a good illustration of line drawing.

```
function drawsling() {
  ctx.strokeStyle = this.strokeStyle;
  ctx.lineWidth = 4;
  ctx.beginPath();
```

```
    ctx.moveTo(this.bx, this.by);
    ctx.lineTo(this.s1x, this.s1y);
    ctx.moveTo(this.bx, this.by);
    ctx.lineTo(this.s2x, this.s2y);
    ctx.moveTo(this.s1x, this.s1y);
    ctx.lineTo(this.s2x, this.s2y);
    ctx.lineTo(this.s3x, this.s3y);
    ctx.stroke();
}
```

It does the following:

- adds to path a line from bx, by to s1x, s1y
- adds to path a line from bx, by to s2x, s2y
- adds to path a line from s1x, s1y to s2x, s2y
- adds to path a line from s2x, s2y to s3x, s3y

As always, the way to learn this is to experiment with your own designs. If there's no invocation of `moveTo`, the next `lineTo` draws from the destination of the last `lineTo`. Think of holding a pen in your hand and either moving it on the paper or lifting it up and moving without drawing anything. You also can connect arcs. Chapter 5 demonstrates drawing polygons.

## Mouse events for pulling on the slingshot

The slingshot application replaces form input with mouse drag and drop operations. This is appealing because it's closer to the physical act of pulling back on a slingshot.

When the player presses down on the mouse button, it is the first of a sequence of events to be managed by the program. Here is pseudo-code for what needs to be done.

*When the player presses the mouse button, check if the mouse is on top of the ball. If not, do nothing. If so, set a variable named `inmotion`.*

*If the mouse is moving, check `inmotion`. If it is set, move the ball and the strings of the slingshot. Keep doing this until the mouse button is released.*

*When the player releases the mouse button, reset `inmotion` to false. Calculate the angle and initial velocity of the ball and from these calculate the horizontal velocity and the initial vertical velocity. Start the ball moving.*

You can use HTML5 and JavaScript to set up event handling for pressing the standard (left) mouse button, moving the mouse, and releasing the mouse button. The code uses a method based on the canvas element directly, not the so-called context. Here is the code, which is in the `init` function:

```
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');
canvas1.addEventListener('mousedown', findball, false);
canvas1.addEventListener('mousemove', moveit, false);
canvas1.addEventListener('mouseup', finish, false);
```

Now because this event is in terms of the whole canvas, the `findball` function must determine if the mouse is over the ball. The first task is to get the mouse x and y coordinates. Unfortunately, different browsers implement mouse events in different ways. The following works for Firefox, Chrome, and Safari.

When other browsers, such as Internet Explorer, support HTML5, this code will need to be checked and, possibly, modified.

```
if ( ev.layerX || ev.layerX==0 ) {
    mx= ev.layerX;
    my = ev.layerY;
}
else if (ev.offsetX || ev.offsetX==0 ) {
    mx = ev.offsetX;
    my = ev.offsetY;
}
```

This works because if `ev.layerX` does not exist, its value will be interpreted as false. If `ev.layerX` does exist but has value 0, its value will also be interpreted as false, but `ev.layerX==0` will be true.

Think of this code as saying: is there a good `ev.layerX` value? If so, let's use it. Otherwise, let's try `ev.offsetX`. If neither of these work, `mx` and `my` will not get set and I should add another `else` clause to tell the player that the code doesn't work in his browser.

Now, the next step is to determine if the `(mx, my)` point is on the ball. I am repeating myself, but it is important to understand that the ball is now the equivalent of ink or paint on canvas and we can't go any further without determining whether the `(mx, my)` point is on top of the ball. How do we do this? We can calculate how far `(mx, my)` is from the center of the ball and see if that's less than the radius of the ball. There is a standard formula for distance in the plane. My code is a slight variation on this idea. It makes the determination by calculating the square of the distance and comparing it to the square of the ball's radius. I do this to avoid computing the square root.

If the mouse click was on the ball, that is, within a radius distance of the center of the ball, this function sets the global variable `inmotion` to true. The `findball` function ends with a call to `drawall()`.

Whenever the mouse moves, there's a call to the `moveit` function where we check whether `inmotion` is true. If it isn't, nothing happens. If it is, the same code as before is used to get the mouse coordinates and the ball's center, and the `bx, by` values for the slingshot are set to the mouse coordinates. This has the effect of dragging the ball and stretching the slingshot strings.

When the mouse button is released, we call the `finish` function, which doesn't do anything if `inmotion` is not true. When would this happen? If the player is moving the mouse around *not* on the ball and pressing and releasing the button.

If `inmotion` is true, the function immediately sets it to false and does the calculations to determine the flight of the ball, generating the information that in the earlier cannonball application was entered by the player using a form. The information is the angle with the horizontal and the distance of the ball to the straight part of the slingshot. This is the angle formed by `(bx, by)` to `(s1x, s1y)`, and the horizontal and the distance from `(bx, by)` to `(s1x, s1y)`, more precisely, the square of the distance.

I use `Math.atan2` to do these calculations: calculating an angle from change in x and change in y. This is a variant of the arctangent function.

I use the `distsq` function to determine the square of the distance from `(bx, by)` to `(s1x, s1y)`. I want to make the velocity dependent on this value. Pulling the strings back farther would mean a faster flight. I did some experiments and decided that using the square and dividing by 700 produced a nice arc.

The last step is to put in a call first to `drawall()` and then to `setInterval` to set up the timing event. Again, `finish` does an analogous job to fire in the first and second applications. In the first application, our player entered the horizontal and initial vertical values. In the second application, the player entered an angle (in degrees) and a velocity out of the mouth of the cannon, and the program did the rest. In `slingshot`, we did away with a form and numbers and provided a way for the player to pull back, or virtually pull back, on a slingshot. The program had more to do, both in terms of responding to mouse events and calculations.

## Changing the list of items displayed using array splice

The last task to explain is the replacement of the target image with another picture. Since I wanted two different effects, I used different approaches. For the second application, I wanted the ball to disappear along with the original target and display what I set up in the variable `htarget`. What I do is keep track of where the original target was placed on the `everything` array and remove it and substitute `htarget`. Similarly, I remove the ball from the `everything` array. For the slingshot operation, I don't remove the target but change its `img` property to be feathers. Please note that in the code, `chicken` and `feathers` are `Image` objects. Each has a `src` property that points to a file.

```
var chicken = new Image();
chicken.src = "chicken.jpg";
var feathers = new Image();
feathers.src = "feathers.gif";
```

For both of these operations, I use the array method `splice`. It has two forms: you can just remove any number of elements or you can remove and then insert elements. The general form of `splice` is

*arrayname.splice(index where splice is to occur, number of items to be removed, new item(s) to be added)*

If more than one item is to be added, there are more arguments. In my code, I add a single item, which is itself an array. My representation of objects in the `everything` array uses an array for each object. The second argument of the array indicates if there is any rotation.

The following two lines of code do what I need: remove the target, stick in `htarget` with no rotation, and then remove the ball.

```
everything.splice(targetindex,1,[htarget,false]);
everything.splice(ballindex,1);
```

By the way, if I simply wanted to remove the last item in an array, I could use the method `pop`. In this situation, however, the target may be somewhere in the middle of the `everything` array, so I need to write code to keep track of its index value.

## Distance between points

There are two places in the slingshot program in which I use the distance between points or, more accurately, the square of the distance. I need to find out if the mouse cursor is on top of the ball and I want to make the initial velocity—the equivalent of the velocity out of the cannon—depending on the stretch, so to speak, of the slingshot, the distance  $(bx,by)$  to  $(s1x, s1y)$ . The formula for the distance between two points  $x1,y1$  and  $x2,y2$  is the square root of the sum of the squares of  $(x1-x2)$  and  $(y1-y2)$ . I decided to avoid the computation of taking a square root by just computing the sum of the squares. This provides the same test for the mouse cursor being on top of the ball. For the other task, I decided it was okay to use the

square of the distance for the initial velocity. I experimented with some numbers and, as I mentioned earlier, 700 seemed to work.

## Building the application and making it your own

Let's now take a look at the code for the basic firing of a cannonball, without a cannon, based on horizontal and initial vertical speeds; the firing of a cannonball from a cannon, based on angle and initial speed out of the cannon; and the slingshot, based on angle and initial speed determined from the position of the mouse. As in previous chapters, I'll present the functions and what they call or are called by for each application. In this case, the tables are similar, though not identical, for all three applications. The calling is more varied than previous examples in that there are situations in which functions are invoked because they are named as methods of a programmer-defined object or as part of a declaration (var) statement. This is a characteristic of *object-oriented, event-driven programming*. I'll also present the complete code for each application in its own table, along with an explanation of what each line does. Table 4-1 shows the functions for the basic cannonball application.

**Table 4-1.** Functions in the Simplest Cannonball Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
init	Action of the onLoad in body tag	drawall
drawall	Invoked directly by init, fire, change	Calls the draw method of all objects in the everything array. These are the functions drawball, drawrects.
fire	Invoked by action of the onSubmit attribute in form	drawall
change	Invoked by action of the setInterval function called in fire	drawall, calls the moveit method of cball, which is moveball
Ball	Invoked directly by code in a var statement	
Myrectangle	Invoked directly by code in a var statement	
drawball	Invoked by call of the draw method for the one Ball object	
drawrects	Invoked by call of the draw method for the target object	
moveball	Invoked by call of the moveit method for the one Ball object	

Table 4-2 shows the complete code for the simplest application, with the ball moving in an arc and no actual cannon.

**Table 4-2.** The First Cannonball Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	Opening html tag
<head>	Opening head tag
<title>Cannonball</title>	Complete title element
<style>	Opening style tag
form {	Style for the form
width:330px;	Width
margin:20px;	External margin
background-color:brown;	Color
padding:20px;	Internal padding
}	Close this style
</style>	Close style element
<script>	Opening script tag
var cwidth = 600;	Set value for width of canvas, used for clearing
var cheight = 400;	Set value for height of canvas, used for clearing
var ctx;	Variable to hold canvas context
var everything = [];	Array to hold all objects to be drawn. Initialized as an empty array
var tid;	Variable to hold identifier for the timing event
var horvelocity;	Variable to hold the horizontal velocity (aka displacement)

Code	Explanation
var verticalvel1;	Variable to hold vertical displacement at start of interval
var verticalvel2;	Variable to hold vertical displacement at end of interval, after change by gravity
var gravity = 2;	Amount of change in vertical displacement. Arbitrary. Makes for a nice arc.
var iballx = 20;	Initial horizontal coordinate for the ball
var ibally = 300;	Initial vertical coordinate for the ball
function Ball(sx,sy,rad,stylestring) {	Start of function to define a Ball. object. Use the parameters to set the properties.
this.sx = sx;	Set the sx property of THIS object
this.sy = sy;	...sy
this.rad = rad;	...rad
this.draw = drawball;	...draw. Since drawball is the name of a function, this makes draw a method that can be invoked
this.moveit = moveball;	...moveit set to the function moveball
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	...fillstyle
}	Close the Ball function
function drawball() {	Header for the drawball function
ctx.fillStyle=this.fillstyle;	Set up the fillStyle using the property of this object
ctx.beginPath();	Start a path
ctx.arc(this.sx,this.sy, this.rad,0,Math.PI*2,true);	Set up to draw a circle
ctx.fill();	Draw the path as a filled path

Code	Explanation
}	Close the function
function moveball(dx,dy) {	Header for the moveball function
this.sx +=dx;	Increment the sx property by dx
this.sy +=dy;	Increment the sy property by dy
}	Close function
var cball = new Ball(iballx,ibally,← 10,"rgb(250,0,0)");	Create a new Ball object at the indicated position, radius, and color. Assign it to the variable cball. Note that nothing is drawn at this time. The information is just set up for later use.
function Myrectangle(sx,sy,swidth,← sheight,stylestring) {	Header for function to construct a Myrectangle object
this.sx = sx;	Sets the sx property of THIS object
this.sy = sy;	...sy
this.swidth = swidth;	...swidth
this.sheight = sheight;	...sheight
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	...stylestring
this.draw = drawrects;	... draw. This sets up a method that can be invoked.
this.moveit = moveball;	....moveit. This sets up a method that can be invoked. It is not used in this program.
}	Close Myrectangle function
function drawrects() {	Header for drawrects function
ctx.fillStyle = this.fillstyle;	Set the fillStyle
ctx.fillRect(this.sx,this.sy,← this.swidth,this.sheight);	Draw the rectangle using the object properties
}	Close function

Code	Explanation
var target = new Myrectangle(300,100,→ 80,200,"rgb(0,5,90)");	Build a Myrectangle object and assign to target
var ground = new Myrectangle(0,300,→ 600,30,"rgb(10,250,0)");	Build a Myrectangle object and assign to ground
everything.push(target);	Add target to everything
everything.push(ground);	Add ground
everything.push(cball);	Add cball (which will be drawn last, so on top of other stuff)
function init(){	Header for init function
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Set up ctx in order to draw on the canvas
drawall();	Draw everything
}	Close init
function fire() {	Head for fire function
cball.sx = iballx;	Reposition cball in x
cball.sy = ibally;	Reposition cball in y
horvelocity = Number(document.f.hv.value);	Set horizontal velocity from form. Make a number
verticalvel1 = Number(document.f.vv.value);	Set initial vertical velocity from form
drawall();	Draw everything
tid = setInterval(change,100);	Start timing event
return false;	Return false to prevent refresh of HTML page
}	Close function

Code	Explanation
function drawall() {	Function header for drawall
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	Erase canvas
var i;	Declare var i for the for loop
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {	For each item in everything array...
everything[i].draw();}	...invoke the object's draw method. Close for loop.
}	Close function
function change() {	Header for change function
var dx = horvelocity;	Set dx to be horvelocity
verticalvel2 = verticalvel1 + gravity;	Compute new vertical velocity (add gravity)
var dy = (verticalvel1 + verticalvel2)*.5;	Compute average velocity for the time interval
verticalvel1 = verticalvel2;	Now set old to be new
cball.moveit(dx,dy);	Move cball computed amount
var bx = cball.sx;	Set bx to simplify the if
var by = cball.sy;	... and by
if ((bx>=target.sx)&&(bx<=(target.sx+target.swidth))&&(by>=target.sy)&&(by<=(target.sy+target.sheight)) {	Is the ball within the target horizontally... and vertically?
clearInterval(tid);	If so, stop motion
}	Close if true clause
if (by>=ground.sy) {	Is the ball beyond ground?

Code	Explanation
clearInterval(tid);	If so, stop motion
}	Close if true clause
drawall();	Draw everything
}	Close change function
</script>	Close script element
</head>	Close head element
<body onLoad="init();">	Open body and set call to init
<canvas id="canvas" width="600" height="400">	Define canvas
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Warning to users of non-compliant browsers
</canvas>	Close canvas
 	Line break
<form name="f" id="f" onSubmit="return fire();">	Starting form tag, with name and id. This sets up call to fire.
Set velocities and fire cannonball.  	Label and line break
Horizontal displacement <input name="hv" id="hv" value="10" type="number" min="-100" max="100" />	Label and specification of input field
 	Line break
Initial vertical displacement <input name="vv" id="vv" value="-25" type="number" min="-100" max="100"/>	Label and specification of input field
<input type="submit" value="FIRE"/>	Submit input element
</form>	Close form element

Code	Explanation
</body>	Close body element
</html>	Close html element

You certainly can make improvements to this application, but it probably makes more sense to first make sure you understand it as is and then move on to the next.

## Cannonball: with cannon, angle, and speed

Our next application adds a rectangle to represent the cannon, a picture for the original target instead of the simple rectangle used in the first application, and a second picture for the hit target. The cannon rotates as specified by input in the form. I made the everything array an array of arrays because I needed a way to add the rotation and translation information. I also decided to make the result more dramatic when the cannonball hits the target. This means the code in the change function for checking for a collision is the same, but the code in the if-true clause removes the old target, puts in the hit target, and removes the ball. Now, having said all this, most of the coding is the same. Table 4-3, which shows the functions, has two additional lines for Picture and drawAnImage.

**Table 4-3.** Functions in the Second Cannonball Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
init	Action of the onLoad in body tag	drawall
drawall	Invoked directly by init, fire, change	Calls the draw method of all objects in the everything array. These are the functions drawball, drawrects.
fire	Invoked by action of the onSubmit attribute in form	drawall
change	Invoked by action of the setInterval function called in fire	drawall, calls the moveit method of cball, which is moveball
Ball	Invoked directly by code in a var statement	
Myrectangle	Invoked directly by code in a var statement	
drawball	Invoked by call of the draw method for the one Ball object	
drawrects	Invoked by call of the draw method for the target object	

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
moveball	Invoked by call of the moveit method for the one Ball object	
Picture	Invoked directly by code in var statements	
drawAnImage	Invoked by call of the draw method for a Picture object	

Table 4-4 shows the complete code for the second application, but only the changed lines have comments.

**Table 4-4.** The Second Cannonball Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Cannonball</title>	
<style>	
form {	
width:330px;	
margin:20px;	
background-color:brown;	
padding:20px;	
}	
</style>	
<script type="text/javascript">	
var cwidth = 600;	

Code	Explanation
var cheight = 400;	
var ctx;	
var everything = [];	
var tid;	
var horvelocity;	
var verticalvel1;	
var verticalvel2;	
var gravity = 2;	
var cannonx = 10;	x location of cannon
var cannony = 280;	y location of cannon
var cannonlength = 200;	Cannon length (i.e., width)
var cannonht = 20;	Cannon height
var ballrad = 10;	
var targetx = 500;	x position of target
var targety = 50;	y position of target
var targetw = 85;	Target width
var targeth = 280;	Target height
var httargetx = 450;	x position of the hit target
var httargety = 220;	y position of the hit target
var httargetw = 355;	Hit target width
var httargeth = 96;	Hit target height

Code	Explanation
function Ball(sx,sy,rad,stylestring) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.rad = rad;	
this.draw = drawball;	
this.moveit = moveball;	
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	
}	
function drawball() {	
ctx.fillStyle=this.fillstyle;	
ctx.beginPath();	
//ctx.fillStyle= rgb(0,0,0);	
ctx.arc(this.sx,this.sy,this.rad,➥ 0,Math.PI*2,true);	
ctx.fill();	
}	
function moveball(dx,dy) {	
this.sx +=dx;	
this.sy +=dy;	
}	
var cball = new Ball(cannonx+cannonlength,➥ cannony+cannonht*.5,ballrad,"rgb(250,0,0)");	

Code	Explanation
function Myrectangle(sx,sy,swidth,sheight,➥ stylestring) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.swidth = swidth;	
this.sheight = sheight;	
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	
this.draw = drawrects;	
this.moveit = moveball;	
}	
function drawrects() {	
ctx.fillStyle = this.fillstyle;	
ctx.fillRect(this.sx,this.sy,➥ this.swidth,this.sheight);	
}	
function Picture (sx,sy,swidth,➥ sheight,filen) {	Header for function to set up Picture object
var imga = new Image();	Create an Image object
imga.src=filen;	Set the file name
this.sx = sx;	Set the sx property
this.sy = sy;	... sy
this.img = imga;	Set the img property to imga
this.swidth = swidth;	... swidth

Code	Explanation
this.sheight = sheight;	... sheight
this.draw = drawAnImage;	... draw. This will be the draw method for objects of this type.
this.moveit = moveball;	... This will be the moveit method. Not used.
}	Close Picture function
function drawAnImage() {	Header for drawAnImage function
ctx.drawImage(this.img, this.sx, ↵ this.sy, this.swidth, this.sheight);	Draw image using properties of this object
}	Closes function
var target = new Picture(targetx, targety, ↵ targetw, targeth, "hill.jpg");	Construct new Picture object and assign to target variable
var httarget = new Picture(htargetx, ↵ htargety, httargetw, httargeth, "plateau.jpg");	Construct new Picture object and assign to httarget variable
var ground = new Myrectangle(0, 300, ↵ 600, 30, "rgb(10, 250, 0)");	Construct new Myrectangle object and assign to ground
var cannon = new Myrectangle(cannonx, ↵ cannony, cannonlength, cannonht, "rgb(40, 40, 0)");	Construct new Myrectangle object and assign to cannon
var targetindex = everything.length;	Save what will be the index for target
everything.push([target, false]);	Add target to everything
everything.push([ground, false]);	Add ground to everything
var ballindex = everything.length;	Save what will be the index for cball
everything.push([cball, false]);	Add cball to everything
var cannonindex = everything.length;	Save what will be the index for cannon
everything.push([cannon, true, 0, ↵ cannonx, cannony + cannonht * .5]);	Add cannon to everything; reserve space for rotation

Code	Explanation
<pre>function init(){   ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');</pre>	
drawall();	
}	
function fire() {	
<pre>  var angle = Number(document.form.ang.value);</pre>	Extract angle from form, convert to number
<pre>  var outofcannon = Number(document.form.vo.value);</pre>	Extract velocity out of cannon from form, convert to number
<pre>  var angleradians = angle*Math.PI/180;</pre>	Convert to radians
<pre>  horvelocity = outofcannon*Math.cos(angleradians);</pre>	Compute horizontal velocity
<pre>  verticalvel1 = - outofcannon*Math.sin(angleradians);</pre>	Compute initial vertical velocity
<pre>  everything[cannonindex][2] = - angleradians;</pre>	Set information to rotate cannon
<pre>  cball.sx = cannonx + cannonlength*Math.cos(angleradians);</pre>	Set x for cball at mouth of what will be rotated cannon
<pre>  cball.sy = cannony+cannonht*.5 - cannonlength*Math.sin(angleradians);</pre>	Set y for cball at mouth of what will be rotated cannon
drawall();	
tid = setInterval(change,100);	
return false;	

Code	Explanation
}	
function drawall() {	
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	
var i;	
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {	
var ob = everything[i];	Extract array for object
if (ob[1]) {	Need to translate and rotate?
ctx.save();	Save original axes
ctx.translate(ob[3],ob[4]);	Do indicated translation
ctx.rotate(ob[2]);	Do indicated rotation
ctx.translate(-ob[3],-ob[4]);	Translate back
ob[0].draw();	Draw object
ctx.restore(); }	Restore axes
else {	Else (no rotation)
ob[0].draw(); }	Do drawing
}	Close for loop
}	Close function
function change() {	
var dx = horvelocity;	
verticalvel2 =verticalvel1 + gravity;	
var dy=(verticalvel1 + verticalvel2)*.5;	

Code	Explanation
verticalvel1 = verticalvel2;	
cball.moveit(dx,dy);	
var bx = cball.sx;	
var by = cball.sy;	
if ((bx>=target.sx)&&(bx<=(target.sx+target.swidth))&&	
(by>=target.sy)&&(by<=(target.sy+target.sheight))) {	
clearInterval(tid);	
everything.splice(targetindex,1,[htarget,false]);	Remove target and insert htarget
everything.splice(ballindex,1);	Remove the ball
drawall();	
}	
if (by>=ground.sy) {	
clearInterval(tid);	
}	
drawall();	
}	
</script>	
</head>	
<body onLoad="init();">	

Code	Explanation
<canvas id="canvas" width="600" height="400">	
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	
</canvas>	
<form name="f" id="f" onSubmit="return fire();">	
Set velocity, angle and fire cannonball.  	
Velocity out of cannon <input name="vo" id="vo" value="10" type="number" min="-100" max="100" />	Label indicating that this is the velocity out of mouth of cannon
Angle <input name="ang" id="ang" value="0" type="number" min="0" max="80"/>	Label indicating that this is the angle of the cannon
<input type="submit" value="FIRE"/>	
</form>	
</body>	
</html>	

This application provides many possibilities for you to make it your own. You can change the cannon, the ball, the ground, and the target. If you don't want to use images, you can use drawings for the target and the hit target. You can draw other things on the canvas. You just need to make sure that the cannonball (or whatever you set your projectile to be) is on top or wherever you want it to be. You could, for example, make the ground cover up the ball. You can use an animated gif for any Image object, including the httarget. You could also use images for the cannon and the ball. One possibility is to use an animated gif file to represent a spinning cannonball. Remember that all image files referenced in the code must be in the same folder as the uploaded HTML file. If they are in a different place on the Web, make sure the reference is correct.

The support for audio and video in HTML5 varies across the browsers. You can look ahead to the presentation of video as a reward for completing the quiz in Chapter 6, and to the audio presented as part of the rock-paper-scissors game in Chapter 8. If you want to tackle this subject, it would be great to have a sound when the cannonball hits the target and a video clip showing the target exploding.

Moving away from the look of the game, you can invent a scoring system, perhaps keeping track of attempts versus hits.

## Slingshot: using a mouse to set parameters of flight

The slingshot application is built on the cannonball application. There are differences, but much is the same. Reviewing and understanding how more complicated applications are built on simpler ones will help you to create your own work.

Creating the slingshot application involves designing the slingshot, and implementing the mouse events to move the ball and parts of the slingshot, and then fire the ball. The form is absent because the player's moves are just the mouse actions. In addition, I used a somewhat different approach for what to do when the target was hit. I check for the ball to intersect with an area within the target by 40 pixels. That is, I require the ball to hit the middle of the chicken! When there's a hit, I change the target.src value to be another Image element, going from a picture of a chicken to a picture of feathers. Moreover, I don't stop the animation, so the ball only stops when it hits the ground. As I indicated earlier, I don't have the slingshot slings return to their original position, as I wanted to see the position to plan my next attempt.

Table 4-5 shows the functions calling and being called in the slingshot application. This table is quite similar to the one for the cannonball applications.

**Table 4-5.** Functions in the Slingshot Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
init	Action of the onLoad in body tag	drawall
drawall	Invoked directly by init, fire, change	Calls the draw method of all objects in the everything array. These are the functions drawball, drawrects.
findball	Invoked by action of addEventListener in init for the mousedown event	drawall
distsq	Called by findball	
moveit	Invoked by action of addEventListener in init for the mousemove event	drawall
finish	Invoked by action of the addEventListener in init for the mouseup event	drawall

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
change	Invoked by action of the setInterval function called in finish	drawall, calls the moveit method of cball, which is moveball.
Ball	Invoked directly by code in a var statement	
Myrectangle	Invoked directly by code in a var statement	
drawball	Invoked by call of the draw method for the one Ball object	
drawrects	Invoked by call of the draw method for the target object	
moveball	Invoked by call of the moveit method for the one Ball object	
Picture	Invoked directly by code in var statements	
drawAnImage	Invoked by call of the draw method for a picture object	
Sling	Invoked directly by code in var statements	
drawsling	Invoked by call of the draw method for mysling	

Table 4-6 shows the code for the slingshot application, with the new or changed lines commented. Notice that the form is absent from the body element. Before looking at the code, try to identify what parts will be the same as in the cannonball application and what would be different.

**Table 4-6.** The Slingshot Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Slingshot pulling back</title>	
<script type="text/javascript">	
var cwidth = 1200;	

Code	Explanation
var cheight = 600;	
var ctx;	
var canvas1;	
var everything = [];	
var tid;	
var startrockx = 100;	Starting position x
var startrocky = 240;	Starting position y
var ballx = startrockx;	Set ballx
var bally = startrocky;	Set bally
var ballrad = 10;	
var ballradsq = ballrad*ballrad;	Save this value
var inmotion = false;	
var horvelocity;	
var verticalvel1;	
var verticalvel2;	
var gravity = 2;	
var chicken = new Image();	Name of original target
chicken.src = "chicken.jpg";	Set image file
var feathers = new Image();	Name of hit target
feathers.src = "feathers.gif";	Set image file
function Sling(bx,by,s1x,s1y,s2x,s2y, ↵ s3x,s3y,stylestring) {	Function defining a slingshot based on the four points plus a color

Code	Explanation
this.bx = bx;	Set property bx
this.by = by;	... by
this.s1x = s1x;	... s1x
this.s1y = s1y;	... s1y
this.s2x = s2x;	... s2x
this.s2y = s2y;	... s2y
this.s3x = s3x;	... s3x
this.s3y = s3y;	... s3y
this.strokeStyle = stylestring;	... strokeStyle
this.draw = drawsling;	Set the draw method
this.moveit = movesling;	Set the move method (not used)
}	Close function
function drawsling() {	Function header for drawsling
ctx.strokeStyle = this.strokeStyle;	Set this style
ctx.lineWidth = 4;	Set line width
ctx.beginPath();	Start the path
ctx.moveTo(this.bx, this.by);	Move to bx, by
ctx.lineTo(this.s1x, this.s1y);	Set up to draw to s1x, s1y
ctx.moveTo(this.bx, this.by);	Move to bx, by
ctx.lineTo(this.s2x, this.s2y);	Set up to draw to s2x, s2y
ctx.moveTo(this.s1x, this.s1y);	Move to s1x, s1y

Code	Explanation
ctx.lineTo(this.s2x, this.s2y);	Set up to draw to s2x, s2y
ctx.lineTo(this.s3x, this.s3y);	Draw to s3x, s3y
ctx.stroke();	Now draw the path
}	Close function
function movesling(dx,dy) {	Header for movesling
this.bx +=dx;	Add dx to bx
this.by +=dy;	Add dy to by
this.s1x +=dx;	Add dx to s1x
this.s1y +=dy;	Add dy to s1y
this.s2x +=dx;	Add dx to s2x
this.s2y +=dy;	Add dy to s2y
this.s3x +=dx;	Add dx to s3x
this.s3y +=dy;	Add dy to s3y
}	Close function
var mysling= new Sling(startrockx,startrocky,← startrockx+80,startrocky-10,startrockx+80,← startrocky+10,startrockx+70,← startrocky+180,"rgb(120,20,10)");	Build new Sling and assign it to the mysling variable
function Ball(sx,sy,rad,stylestring) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.rad = rad;	
this.draw = drawball;	

Code	Explanation
this.moveit = moveball;	
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	
}	
function drawball() {	
ctx.fillStyle=this.fillstyle;	
ctx.beginPath();	
ctx.arc(this.sx,this.sy,this.rad,➥ 0,Math.PI*2,true);	
ctx.fill();	
}	
function moveball(dx,dy) {	
this.sx +=dx;	
this.sy +=dy;	
}	
var cball = new Ball(startrockx,startrocky,➥ ballrad,"rgb(250,0,0)");	
function myrectangle(sx,sy,swidth,➥ sheight,stylestring) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	

Code	Explanation
this.swidth = swidth;	
this.sheight = sheight;	
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	
this.draw = drawrects;	
this.moveit = moveball;	
}	
function drawrects() {	
ctx.fillStyle = this.fillstyle;	
ctx.fillRect(this.sx, this.sy, ↵ this.swidth, this.sheight);	
}	
function Picture (sx, sy, swidth, ↵ sheight, imga) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.img = imga;	
this.swidth = swidth;	
this.sheight = sheight;	
this.draw = drawAnImage;	
this.moveit = moveball;	
}	
function drawAnImage() {	

Code	Explanation
ctx.drawImage(this.img, this.sx, this.sy, this.swidth, this.sheight); }	
var target = new Picture(700, 210, 209, 179, chicken);	Build new Picture object and assign it to target
var ground = new myrectangle(0, 370, 1200, 30, "rgb(10,250,0)");	
everything.push(target);	
everything.push(ground);	Put the ground on top of the chickens' feet
everything.push(mysling);	
everything.push(cball);	
function init(){	
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');	
canvas1.addEventListener('mousedown', findball, false);	Set up event handling for the mousedown event
canvas1.addEventListener('mousemove', moveit, false);	Set up event handling for the mousemove event
canvas1.addEventListener('mouseup', finish, false);	Set up event handling for the mouseup event
drawall();	
}	
function findball(ev) {	Function header for mousedown event
var mx;	Variable to hold mouse x

Code	Explanation
var my;	Variable to hold mouse y
if ( ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0) {	ev.layerX is okay
mx= ev.layerX;	Use it for mx
my = ev.layerY; }	Use layerY for my
else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	Else try offset
mx = ev.offsetX;	Set mx
my = ev.offsetY; }	Set my
if (distsq(mx,my, cball.sx, cball.sy)<ballradsq) {	Is mouse over ball?
inmotion = true;	Set inmotion
drawall();	Draw everything
}	Close if over ball
}	Close function
function distsq(x1,y1,x2,y2) {	Header for distsq
return (x1-x2)*(x1-x2)+(y1-y2)*(y1-y2);	Return distance squared
}	Close function
function moveit(ev) {	Function header for mousemove event
var mx;	For mouse x
var my;	For mouse y
if (inmotion) {	in motion?
if ( ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0) {	Does layerX work?
mx= ev.layerX;	Use it for mx

Code	Explanation	
my = ev.layerY;	ev.layerY for my	
{ } else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	Does offsetX work?	
mx = ev.offsetX;	Use it for mx	
my = ev.offsetY;	Use offsetY for my	
}	Close if true	
cball.sx = mx;	Position ball x	
cball.sy = my;	...and y	
mysling.bx = mx;	Position sling bx	
mysling.by = my;	... and by	
drawall();	Draw everything	
}	Close if in motion	
}	Close function	
function finish(ev) {	Function for mousedown	
if (inmotion) {	In motion?	
inmotion = false;	Reset inmotion	
var outofcannon =	Base outofcannon proportional to square of	
distsq(mysling.bx,mysling.by, ↵	bx,by to s1x,s1y	
mysling.s1x,mysling.s1y)/700;		
var angleradians = -Math.atan2( ↵	Compute angle	
(mysling.s1y-mysling.by, ↵		
mysling.s1x-mysling.bx);		
horvelocity = outofcannon*Math.cos( ↵		
(angleradians);		
verticalvel1 = - outofcannon*Math.sin( ↵		
(angleradians);		

Code	Explanation
drawall();	
tid = setInterval(change,100);	
}	
}	
function drawall() {	
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	
var i;	
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {	
everything[i].draw();	
}	
}	
function change() {	
var dx = horvelocity;	
verticalvel2 = verticalvel1 + gravity;	
var dy = (verticalvel1 + ↵ verticalvel2)*.5;	
verticalvel1 = verticalvel2;	
cball.moveit(dx,dy);	
var bx = cball.sx;	
var by = cball.sy;	
if ((bx>=target.sx+40)&&(bx<=→ (target.sx+target.swidth-40))&&→ (by>=target.sy+40)&&(by<=→ (target.sy+target.sheight-40))) {	Check for inside of target (40 pixels)

Code	Explanation
target.img = feathers; }	Change target img
if (by>=ground.sy) { clearInterval(tid);	
} drawall();	
}   	
</script>	
</head>	
<body onLoad="init();">	
<canvas id="canvas" width="1200" height="600">	
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	
</canvas>	
Hold mouse down and drag ball. Releasing the mouse button will shoot the slingshot.	Instructions for using mouse
Slingshot remains at the last position. Reload page to try again.	
</body>	
</html>	

## Testing and uploading the application

These applications can be created without external image files, but using images for the target and the hit target is fun, so you remember to include those files when you upload your project. You can choose your own targets. Perhaps you feel kindly towards chickens!

You'll need to test that the program performs correctly in three situations: when the ball plops down to the left of the target, when the ball hits the target, and when the ball sails over the target. Note that I massaged the values so that the chicken needs to be hit in the middle, so it is possible for the ball to touch the head or tail and not cause the feathers to appear.

You can vary the position of the cannon and its target and hit target, and the slingshot and the chicken and the feathers, by changing the variables such as `startrockx`, and you can modify the gravity variable. If you put the slingshot closer to the target, you can have more ways to hit the chicken: pulling more to the left for a direct shot versus pulling down for more of a lob. Enjoy!

As I mentioned, you could use an animated gif for the hit target in either the cannonball or slingshot applications. This would produce a nice effect.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to create two ballistics applications. It is important to understand how they are the same and how they are different. The programming techniques and HTML5 features include

- programmer-defined objects
- `setInterval` to set up a timing event for the animation, as done for the bouncing ball
- building an array using the `push` method and using the array as a list of what to display
- modifying arrays using the `splice` method
- the use of trig functions with calculations to rotate the cannon and to resolve the horizontal and vertical velocities so as to simulate gravity
- using a `form` for player input
- handling mouse events (`mousedown`, `mousemove`, `mouseup`), with `addEventListener` to obtain player input
- move drawing arcs, rectangles, lines and images on a canvas

The technique of programmer-defined objects and the use of an array of objects to display will come up again in later chapters. The next chapter focuses on a familiar game known as either memory or concentration. It will use a different timing event as well as the `Date` function, introduced in Chapter 1.

## Chapter 5



# The Memory (aka Concentration) Game

---

In this chapter, we will cover

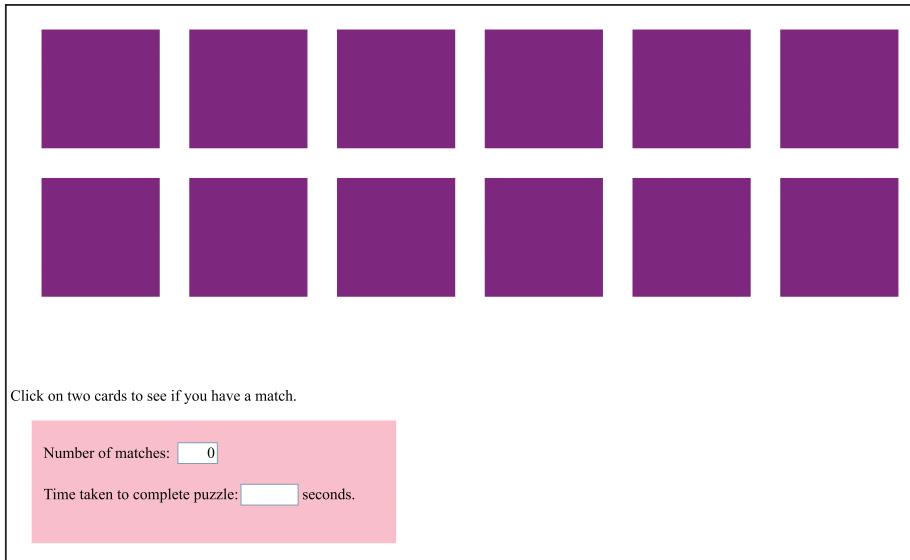
- drawing polygons
- placing text on the canvas
- programming techniques for representing information
- programming a pause
- calculating elapsed time
- one method of shuffling a set of card objects

## Introduction

This chapter demonstrates two versions of a card game known variously as memory or concentration. Cards appear face down, and the player turns over two at a time (by clicking on them) in an attempt to find matched pairs. The program removes matches from the board but [virtually] flips back cards that do not match. When players make all the matches, the game shows the elapsed time.

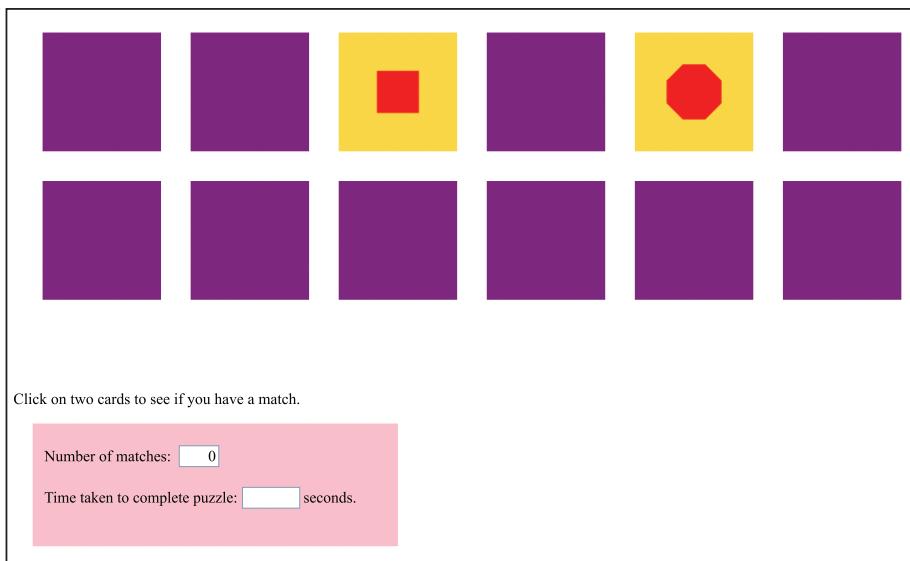
The first version of the game I describe uses polygons for the face cards; the second uses family photos. You'll notice other differences, which were made to illustrate several HTML5 features, but I also urge you to think about what the versions have in common.

Figure 5-1 shows the opening screen of version one. When a player completes the game, the form that keeps track of matches also shows the elapsed time.



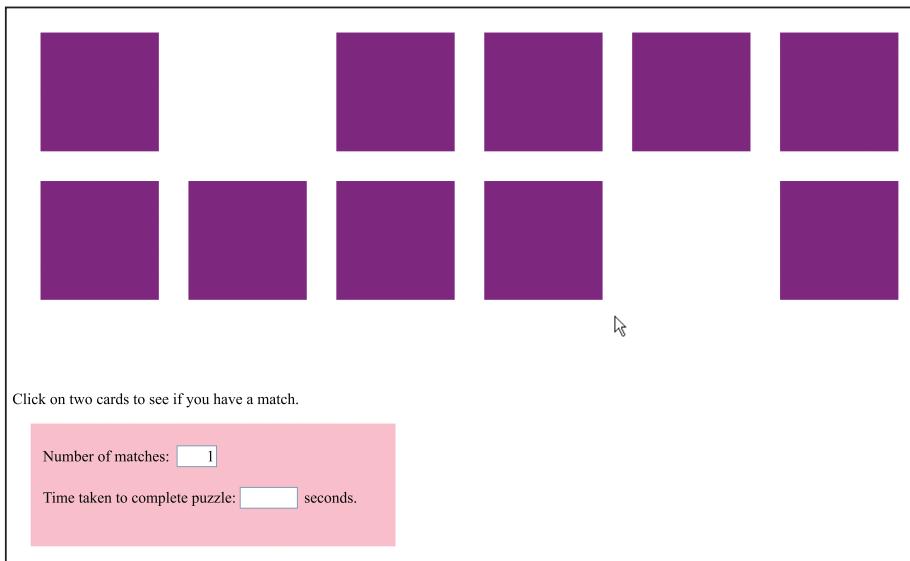
**Figure 5-1.** Opening screen of the memory game, version one

Figure 5-2 displays the result after a player has clicked on two cards (the purple squares). The depicted polygons don't match, so after a pause the program replaces them with images of the card backs, making the cards appear to have flipped over.



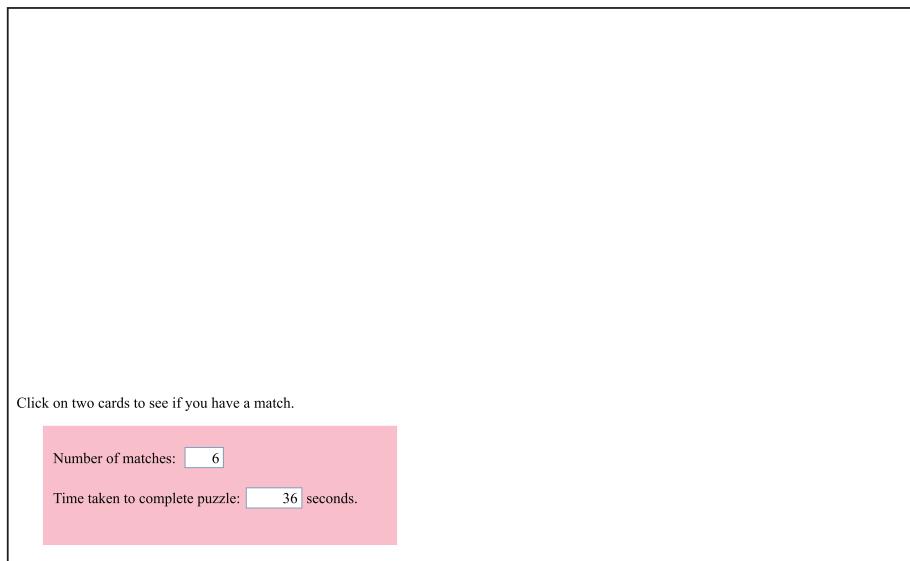
**Figure 5-2.** Two card fronts: no match

When two cards match, the application removes them and notes the match in the form (Figure 5-3).



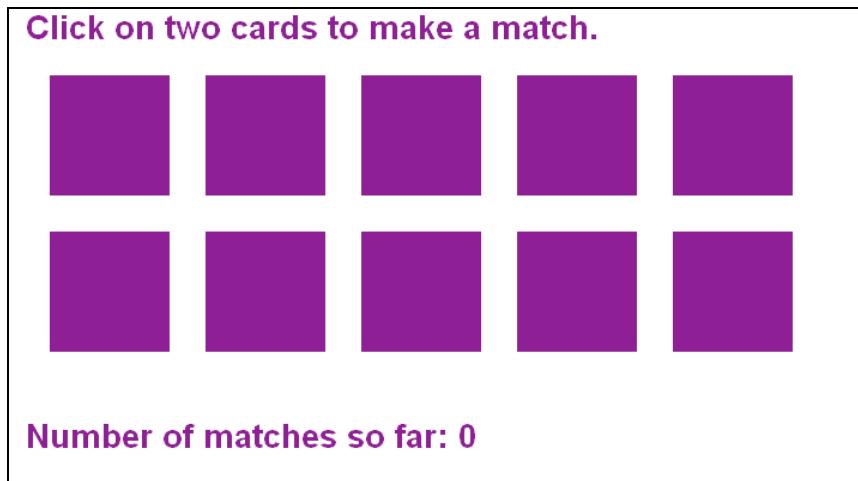
**Figure 5-3.** The application has removed the two cards that matched.

As illustrated in Figure 5-4, the game displays the result—in this case, 6 matches in 36 seconds—when the player finishes.



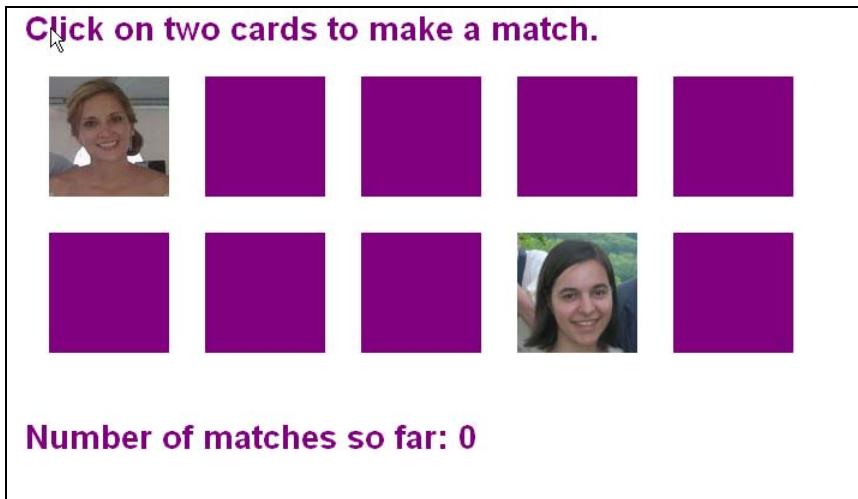
**Figure 5-4.** Version one of the game after the player has completed it.

In version two of the game, the card fronts display photographs of people rather than polygons. And note that although many memory games consider images to be the same only if they're completely identical, this one is similar to a 2 of Hearts matching a 2 of Diamonds in a deck of playing cards. To illustrate a programming point, we'll define a match as the same person, even in differing pictures. This requires a method of encoding the information we use to determine matching states. Version two of the game also demonstrates writing text on the canvas, as you can see in Figure 5-5, which depicts the opening screen.



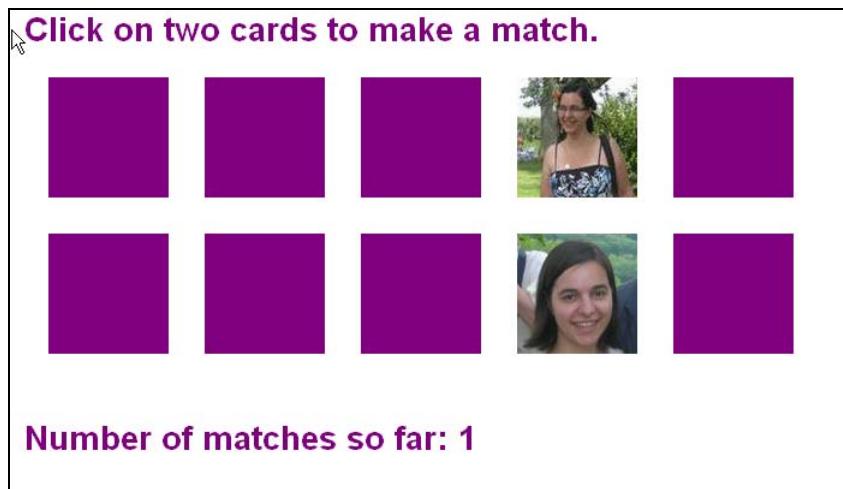
**Figure 5-5.** The memory game, version two, opening screen

To see one possible result of clicking on two cards in our new game, look at Figure 5-6.



**Figure 5-6.** This screen shows non-matching photos.

Because the result shows two different people—after pausing to let the player view both pictures—the application flips the cards over and lets the player try again. Figure 5-7 shows a successful selection—two images of the same person (albeit in different pictures).



**Figure 5-7.** This screenshot shows a match (different scenes, but the same person).

The application removes matched images from the board. When all cards are removed, the time taken to complete the game appears along with instructions on how to play again, as shown in Figure 5-8.



**Figure 5-8.** The final screen of the game (photo version). All images have been matched, so no cards appear.

You can play the game using photos available for download from the book's page on the Friends of ED web site ([www.friendsofed.com/](http://www.friendsofed.com/)), but it's more fun to use your own. You can start with a small number—say two or three pairs of images—then work up to images of the whole family, class, or club. And for version one of the game, you can replace the polygons with your own designs.

## Critical requirements

The digital versions of the games require ways to represent the card backs (which are all the same) and the fronts with their distinct polygons or photos. The applications must also be able to tell which cards match and where cards are on the board. Additionally, players require feedback. In the real-world game, participants flip over two cards and look for a match (which takes a few moments). If there's none, they flip the cards face down again.

The computer program must show the faces of the selected cards and pause after revealing the second card so players have time to see the two faces. This pause is an example of something required for a computer implementation that occurs more-or-less naturally when people play the game. The application should also display the current number of pairs found and, when the game is complete, the length of time participants took to find them all. The polygon and photo versions of the program use different approaches to accomplish these tasks.

Here's a summary of what the two game versions must do:

- Draw the card backs.
- Shuffle the cards before a player makes an initial selection so the same array of choices doesn't appear every time.
- Detect when a player clicks on a card, and distinguish between a first and a second click.
- On detecting a click, show the appropriate card face by: drawing polygons in the case of game version one or displaying the correct photograph for version two.
- Remove pairs that match.
- Operate appropriately even if those pesky players do the unexpected, such as clicking on the same card twice or on an empty space formerly occupied by a card.

## HTML5, CSS, JavaScript features

Let's go over the specific HTML5 and JavaScript features that provide what we need to implement the games. We'll build on material covered previously: the general structure of HTML documents; how to draw rectangles, images, and paths made up of line segments on a canvas element; programmer-defined and built-in functions; programmer objects; the `form` element; and arrays.

New HTML5 and JavaScript features include the time out event, the use of `Date` objects for the calculation of elapsed time, writing and drawing text on the canvas, and several useful programming techniques that you'll find valuable in future applications.

As in the previous chapters, this section describes the HTML5 features and programming techniques in general terms. You can see all the code in context in the "Building the Application" section. If you like, you can skip to that section to see the code, then return here for explanations of how the features work.

## Representing cards

When we hold a physical card in our hands, we can see what it is. There's a card face and back, and the backs are all the same. We can clearly determine the cards' positions on the game board and whether their faces or backs show. To implement a computer game, we must represent—*encode*—all that information. Encoding is an essential part of creating many computer applications, not just games.

In this chapter (and throughout the book), I describe one way to accomplish the task. Keep in mind, though, that there's rarely just one way to implement a feature of an application. That said, different strategies for building an application will likely have some techniques in common.

Our approach to handling cards will employ a programmer-defined object. Creating a programmer-defined object in JavaScript involves writing the constructor function; in this case we'll call it `Card`. The advantage of using programmer-defined objects is that JavaScript provides the dot notation needed to access information and code for objects of a common type. We did this for the cannonball and slingshot games in Chapter 4.

We'll give the `Card` object properties that will hold the card's location (`sx` and `sy`) and dimensions (`swidth` and `sheight`), a pointer to a function to draw a back for the card, and for each case, the information that specifies the appropriate front (`info`).

In the case of a polygon, the value of `info` will indicate the number of sides to be drawn. (In a later section we'll discuss the code for drawing it.) For a photo card face, the value will be a reference, `img`, to an `Image` object we've created. The object will hold a specific image file along with a number (`info`) that ties together pictures that match. To draw the image for the file, we'll use the built-in `drawImage` method.

Needless to say, the cards don't exist as physical entities, with two sides. The application draws the card's face or back on the canvas where the player expects to see it. The function `flipback` draws the card's back. To give the appearance of a removed card, `flipback` effectively erases a card by drawing a rectangle that's the color of the board.

Both applications use a function named `makedeck` to prepare the deck, a process that includes creation of the `Card` objects. For the polygon version of the game, we store the number of sides (from three to eight) in the `Card` objects. The application draws no polygons during setup, though. The photos version sets up an array called `pairs`, listing the image file names for the photos. You can follow this example to create your own family or group memory game.

*Tip: If you use the online code to play the game, as noted earlier, you can download the image files. To make the game your own, you need to upload the pictures and then change the code to reference your files. The code indicates what you need to change.*

The `makedeck` function creates the `Image` objects and uses the `pairs` array to set the `src` property to the `image` object. When the code creates `Card` objects, it puts in the index value that controls the `pairs` array so that matched photos have the same value. As in the polygon version, the application draws no image on the canvas during the creation of the deck. On the screen, the cards all appear the same; the information is different, though. These cards are in fixed positions—shuffling comes later.

The code interprets position information, the `sx` and `sy` properties, differently for `Card` and `Polygon`. In the first case, the information refers to the upper-left corner. In the second case, the value identifies the center of the polygon. You can compute one from the other, though.

## Using Date for timing

We need a way to determine how long the player took to make all the matches. JavaScript provides a way to measure elapsed time. You can view the code in context in the “Building the Application section.” Here I

provide an explanation of how to determine the number of seconds between two distinct events in a running program.

A call to `Date()` generates an object with date and time information. The two lines

```
starttime = new Date();
starttime = Number(starttime.getTime());
```

store the number of milliseconds (thousands of a second) since the start of 1970 in the variable `starttime`. (The reason JavaScript uses 1970 doesn't matter.)

When either of our two memory programs determines the game is over, it invokes `Date()` again as follows:

```
var now = new Date();
var nt = Number(now.getTime());
var seconds = Math.floor(.5+(nt-starttime)/1000);
```

This code

1. creates a new `Date` object and stores it in the variable `now`.
2. extracts the time using `getTime`, converts it to `Number`, and assigns it to the variable `nt`. This means `nt` holds the number of milliseconds from the start of 1970 until the point at which the code called `Date`. The program then subtracts the saved starting time, `starttime`, from the current time, `nt`.
3. divides by 1,000 to get to seconds.
4. adds .5 and invokes `Math.floor` to round the result up or down to whole seconds.

If you need more precision than seconds provides, omit or modify the last step.

You can use this code whenever you need to calculate time elapsed between two events in a program.

## Providing a pause

When we play memory using real cards, we don't consciously pause before flipping nonmatching cards face down. But as noted earlier, our computer implementation must provide a pause so players have time to see the two differing cards. You may recall from chapters 3 and 4 that the animation applications—bouncing ball, cannonball, and slingshot—used the JavaScript function `setInterval` to set up events at fixed time intervals. We can employ a related function, `setTimeout`, in our memory games. (To see the complete code in context, go to the “Building the Application” section.) Let's see how to set up the event and what happens when the pause time runs out.

The `setTimeout` function sets up a single event, which we can use to impose a pause. The `choose` function, called when a player clicks on the canvas, first checks the `firstpick` variable to determine if the person has made a first or second selection. In either case, the program draws the card front on the canvas in the same spot as the card back. If the click was a second choice and the two cards match, the code sets the variable `matched` to `true` or `false`, depending on whether the cards did or didn't match. If the application determines that the game isn't over, the code invokes

```
setTimeout(flipback,1000);
```

This leads to a call to the `flipback` function in 1,000 milliseconds (1 second). The function `flipback` then uses the `matched` variable to determine whether to redraw card backs or erase the cards by drawing rectangles with the table background color at the appropriate card locations.

You can use `setTimeout` to set up any individual timed events. You need to specify the time interval and the function you want invoked when the interval expires. Remember that the time unit is milliseconds.

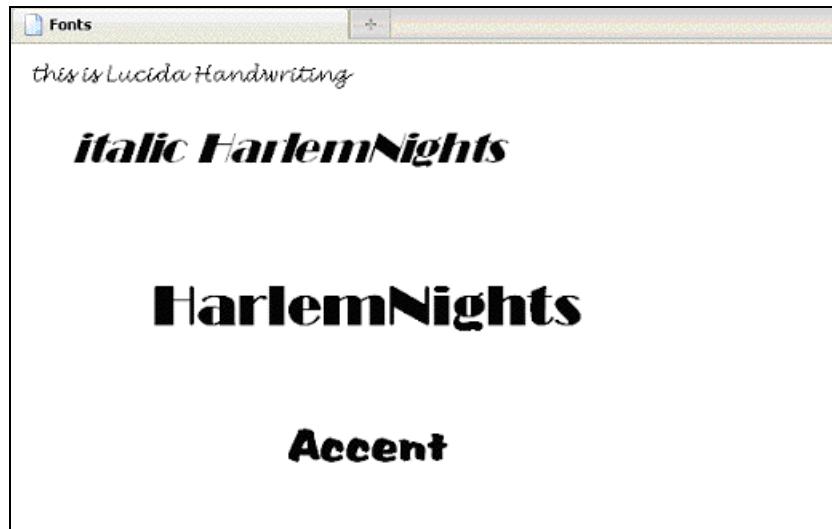
## Drawing text

HTML5 includes a mechanism for placing text on the canvas. This provides a much more dynamic, flexible way to present text than previous versions. You can create some good effects by combining text placement with the drawing of rectangles, lines, arcs, and images we've already demonstrated. In this section, we'll outline the steps for placing text in a canvas element, and we'll include a short example that you can try. If you want, skip ahead to the "Building the Application" section to view the complete description of the code that produces what you see in Figures 5-5 through 5-8 for the photos version of the memory game.

To put text on the canvas, we write code that sets the font, and then we use `fillText` to draw a string of characters starting at a specified x-y location. The following example creates words using an eclectic set of fonts (see the caution note later in the section).

```
<html>
<head>
    <title>Fonts</title>
    <script type="text/javascript">
        var ctx;
        function init(){
            ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');
            ctx.font="15px Lucida Handwriting";
            ctx.fillText("this is Lucida Handwriting", 10, 20);
            ctx.font="italic 30px HarlemNights";
            ctx.fillText("italic HarlemNights",40,80);
            ctx.font="bold 40px HarlemNights"
            ctx.fillText("HarlemNights",100,200);
            ctx.font="30px Accent";
            ctx.fillText("Accent", 200,300);
        }
    </script>
</head>
<body onLoad="init();">
<canvas id="canvas" width="900" height="400">
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.
</canvas>
</body>
</html>
```

This HTML document produces the screenshot shown in Figure 5-9.



**Figure 5-9.** Text in different fonts drawn on the canvas, produced using the `font` and `fillText` functions

*Caution: Make sure you pick fonts that will be present on the computers of all your players. In Chapter 10 you'll learn how to use a CSS feature, called `font-family`, that provides a systematic way to specify a primary font and backups.*

Note that although what you see appears to be text, you're actually looking at ink on the canvas—that is, bitmap images of text, not a text field that you can modify in place. This means that to change the text, we need to write code that will completely erase the current image. We do so by setting the `fillStyle` to the value we placed in the variable `tablecolor` earlier, and use `fillRect` at the appropriate location and with the necessary dimensions.

After creating the text image, the next step is to set `fillStyle` to a color other than `tablecolor`. We'll use the color we chose for the card backs. For the opening screen display of the photograph memory game, here's the code to set the font used for all text:

```
ctx.font="bold 20pt sans-serif";
```

Using the `sans-serif` font makes sense, since it's a standard font present on any computer.

Putting together what we've done to this point, here's the code to display the number of matches at a particular point in the game:

```
ctx.fillStyle= tablecolor;  
ctx.fillRect(10,340,900,100);  
ctx.fillStyle=backcolor;  
ctx.fillText  
  ("Number of matches so far: "+String(count),10,360);
```

The first two statements erase the current tally and the next two put in the updated result. The expression "Number of matches so far: "+String(count) deserves more explanation. It accomplishes two tasks:

- It takes the variable count, which is a number, and turns it into a string of characters.
- It concatenates the constant string "Number of matches so far: " with the result of String(count).

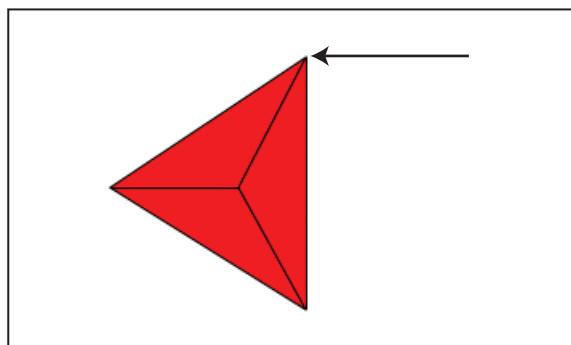
The concatenation demonstrates that the plus sign has two meanings in JavaScript: If the operands are numbers, the sign indicates addition. If the operands are character strings, it indicates the two strings should be concatenated—put together. A fancy phrase for a single symbol having several meanings is *operator overloading*.

What will JavaScript do if one operand is a string and the other a number? The answer depends on which of the two operands is what data type. You'll see examples of code in which the programmer doesn't put in the commands to convert text to a number or vice versa, but the statement works because of the specific order of operations.

I suggest not taking chances, though. Instead, try to remember the rules that govern interpretation of the plus sign. If you notice that your program increases a number from, say, 1 to 11 to 111 when you're expecting 1, 2, 3, your code is concatenating strings instead of incrementing numbers, and you need to convert strings to numbers.

## Drawing polygons

Creating polygons provides a good demonstration of HTML5's drawing facilities. To understand the code-development process used here for drawing polygons, think of the geometric figure as a wheel-like shape with spokes emanating from its center to each of its vertices. The spokes will not appear in the drawings, but are to help you, like they helped me, figure out how to draw a polygon. Figure 5-10 illustrates this with a triangle.



**Figure 5-10.** Representing a triangle as a spoked geometric shape can help clarify code development for drawing polygons. The arrow indicates the first point in the drawing path.

To determine the measure of the angle between spokes, we divide the quantity `2*Math.PI` (representing a complete circle) by the number of sides the polygon has. We use the angle value and the `moveTo` method to draw the points of the path.

The program draws the polygon as a filled-in path that starts at the point (indicated by the arrow in Figure 5-10) specified by one-half the value of angle. To get to the point, we use the `moveTo` method along with the radius, `Math.sin` and `Math.cos`. We then use the `lineTo` method for  $n-1$  more points, proceeding in clockwise fashion. For the triangle,  $n-1$  is two more points. For the octagon it would be seven more. After running through a `for` loop with the `lineTo` points, we invoke the `fill` method to produce a filled-in shape. To see the complete annotated code, go to the “Building the Application” section.”

*Note: Drawing and redrawing polygons takes time, but that doesn't cause problems with this application. If a program has a large number of intricate designs, preparing them ahead of time as pictures may make sense. That approach, however, requires users to download the files, which can take quite a while. You need to experiment to see which approach works better overall.*

## Shuffling cards

As noted previously, the memory game requires the program to shuffle the cards before each round, since we don't want the cards to appear in the same position time after time. The best way to shuffle sets of values is the subject of extensive research. In Chapter 10, which describes the card game called blackjack or 21, you'll find a reference to an article that describes a technique claimed to be the most efficient way to produce a shuffled deck.

For memory/concentration, let's implement the way I played the game as a child. I and the others would lay out all the cards, then pick up and swap pairs. When we thought we had done it a sufficient number of times, we would begin to play. In this section, we'll explore a few more concepts behind this approach. (To examine the `shuffle` function, you can skip ahead to the “Building the Application” section.)

To write the JavaScript for the `swap` method of shuffling, we first need to define “sufficient number of times.” Let's make that three times the number of cards in the deck, which we've represented in the array variable `deck`. But since there are no cards, just data representing cards, what are we swapping? The answer is the information uniquely defining each card. For the polygon memory game, this is the property `info`. For the picture game, it's `info` and `img`.

To get a random card, we use the expression `Math.floor(Math.random()*d1)`, where `d1`, standing for deck length, holds the number of cards in the deck. We do this twice to obtain the pair of cards to be (virtually) swapped. This could produce the same number, meaning a card is swapped with itself, but that's not really a concern. If it happens, this step in this process has no effect. The code mandates a large number of swaps, so one swap not doing anything is okay.

Carrying out the swap is the next challenge, and it requires some temporary storage. We'll use one variable, `holder`, for the polygon version of the game and two variables, `holderimg` and `holderinfo`, for the picture case.

## Implementing clicking on a card

The next step is to explain how we implement the player moves, namely the player clicking on a card. In HTML5, we can handle the `click` event employing much the same approach that we took with the `mousedown` event (described in Chapter 4). We'll use the `addEventListener` method:

```
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');
canvas1.addEventListener('click',choose,false);
```

This appears in the `init` function. The `choose` function must contain code to determine which card we choose to shuffle. The program must also return the coordinates of the mouse when the player clicks on the canvas. The methodology for obtaining mouse coordinates is also the same as that covered in Chapter 4.

Unfortunately, different browsers implement handling of mouse events in different ways. I discussed this in Chapter 4, and I repeat the explanation here. The following works in Chrome, Firefox, and Safari.

```
if ( ev.layerX || ev.layerX==0 ) {
  mx= ev.layerX;
  my = ev.layerY;
}
else if (ev.offsetX || ev.offsetX==0 ) {
  mx = ev.offsetX;
  my = ev.offsetY;}
```

This works because if `ev.layerX` doesn't exist, it will be assigned a value of `false`. If it does exist but has value 0, the value will also be interpreted as `false`, but `ev.layerX==0` will be `true`. So if there's a good `ev.layerX` value, the program uses it. Otherwise, the code looks at `ev.offsetX`. If neither works, `mx` and `my` won't get set.

Because the cards are rectangles, going through the deck and doing compare operations is relatively easy using the mouse cursor coordinates (`mx, my`), the location of the upper-left corner, and the width and height of each card. Here's how we construct the `if` condition:

```
if ((mx>card.sx)&&(mx<card.sx+card.swidth)&&(my>card.sy)&&(my<card.sy+card.sheight))
{
```

*Note: The next chapter, which describes the way you create HTML markup at runtime, shows how to set up event handling for specific elements positioned on the screen as opposed to using the whole canvas element.*

We clear the variable `firstpick` and initialize it as `true`, which indicates that this is the first of two picks by a player. The program changes the value to `false` after the first pick and back to `true` after the second. Variables like this, which flip back and forth between two values, are called *flags* or *toggles*.

## Preventing certain types of cheating

Note that the specifics of this section apply just to these memory games, but the general lesson holds for building any interactive application. There are at least two ways a player can thwart the game. Clicking twice on the same card is one; clicking on a region where a card has been removed (that is, the board has been painted over) is another.

To deal with the first case, after the `if-true` clause that determines whether the mouse is over a certain card, insert the `if` statement

```
if ((firstpick) || (i!=firstcard)) break;
```

This line of code triggers an exit from the `for` statement if the index value (`i`) is fine, which happens when either: 1) this is a first pick or 2) this isn't a first pick and `i` doesn't correspond to the first card chosen.

Preventing the second problem—clicking on a “ghost” card—requires more work. When the application removes cards from the board, in addition to painting over that area of the canvas, we can assign a value (-1, say) to the `sx` property. This will mark the card as having been removed. This is part of the `flipback` function. The `choose` function contains the code that examines the `sx` property and does the checking (only if `sx` is  $\geq 0$ ). The function incorporates both cheating tests in the following `for` loop:

```
for (i=0;i<deck.length;i++){
    var card = deck[i];
    if (card.sx >=0)
        if ((mx>card.sx)&&(mx<card.sx+card.swidth)&&(my>card.sy)&&(my<card.sy+card.sheight)) {
            if ((firstpick)|| (i!=firstcard)) break;
        }
}
```

In the three `if` statements, the second is the whole clause of the first. The third has the single statement `break`, which causes control to leave the `for` loop. Generally, I recommend using brackets (for example: `{` and `}`) for `if true` and `else` clauses, but here I used the stripped-down format for single statements to show you that format and also because it seemed clear enough.

Now let's move on to building our two memory games.

## Building the application and making it your own

This section presents the complete code for both versions of the game. Because the applications contain multiple functions, the section provides a table for each game that tells what each function calls and is called by.

Table 5-1 is the function listing for the polygon version of the memory game. Notice that some of the invocation of functions is done based on events.

**Table 5-1.** Functions in the Polygon Version of the Memory Game

Function	Invoked By/Called By	Calls
init	Invoked in response to the <code>onLoad</code> in the body tag	<code>makedeck</code> <code>shuffle</code>
choose	Invoked in response to the <code>addEventListener</code> in <code>init</code>	<code>Polycard</code> <code>drawpoly</code> (invoked as the <code>draw</code> method of a polygon)
flipback	Invoked in response to the <code>setTimeout</code> call in <code>choose</code>	

Function	Invoked By/Called By	Calls
drawback	Invoked as the draw method for a card in makedeck and flipback	
Polycard	Called in choose	
shuffle	Called in init	
makedeck	Called in init	
Card	Called by makedeck	
drawpoly	Called as the draw method of Polygon in choose	

Table 5-2 shows the commented code for the complete polygon version of the application. When reviewing it, think about the similarities to applications described in other chapters. And remember that this illustrates just one way to name the application's components and program it. Other ways may work equally well.

Whatever programming choices you make, put comments in your code (using two slashes per line: //) and include blank lines. You don't need to comment every line, but doing a decent job of commenting will serve you well when you have to go back to your code to make improvements.

**Table 5-2.** Complete Code for the Polygon Version of the Memory Game

<html>	Starting html tag
<head>	Starting head tag
<title>Memory game using polygons</title>	Complete title element
<style>	Starting style tag
form {	Specify styling for the form
width:330px;	Set the width
margin:20px;	Set the external margin
background-color:pink;	Set the color

Padding:20px;	Set the internal padding
}	Close the style
input {	Set the styling for input fields
text-align:right;	Set right alignment—suitable for numbers
}	Close the style
</style>	Close the style element
<script type="text/javascript">	Start the <code>script</code> element. The <code>type</code> specification isn't necessary but is included here because you'll see it.
var ctx;	Variable that holds the canvas context
var firstpick = true;	Declare and initialize <code>firstpick</code>
var firstcard;	Declare a variable to hold the info defining the first pick
var secondcard;	Declare a variable to hold the info defining the second pick
var frontbgcolor = "rgb(251,215,73)";	Set the background color value for the card fronts
var polycolor = "rgb(254,11,0)";	Set the color value for the polygons
var backcolor = "rgb(128,0,128)";	Set the color value for card backs

var tablecolor = "rgb(255,255,255)";	Set the color value for the board (table)
var cardrad = 30;	Set the radius for the polygons
var deck = [];	Declare the deck, initially an empty array
var firstsx = 30;	Set the position in x of the first card
var firstsy = 50;	Set the position in y of the first card
var margin = 30;	Set the spacing between cards
var cardwidth = 4*cardrad;	Set the card width to four times the radius of the polygons
var cardheight = 4*cardrad;	Set the card height to four times the radius of the polygons
var matched;	This variable is set in choose and used in flipback
var starttime;	This variable is set in init and used to calculate elapsed time
function Card(sx,sy,swidth,sheight,info) {	Header for the Card function, setting up card objects
this.sx = sx;	Set the horizontal coordinate
this.sy = sy;	... vertical coordinate
this.swidth = swidth;	... width

this.sheight = sheight;	.... height
this.info = info;	... info (the number of sides)
this.draw = drawback;	Specify how to draw
}	Close the function
function makedeck() {	Function header for setting up the deck
var i;	Used in the for loop
var acard;	Variable to hold the first of a pair of cards
var bcard;	Variable to hold the second of a pair of cards
var cx = firstsx;	Variable to hold the x coordinate. Start out at the first x position.
var cy = firstsy;	Will hold the y coordinate. Start out at the first y position.
for(i=3;i<9;i++) {	Loop to generate cards for triangles through octagons
acard = new Card(cx,cy,cardwidth,cardheight,i);	Create a card and position
deck.push(acard);	Add to deck
bcard = new Card(cx,cy+cardheight+margin,cardwidth,cardheight,i);	Create a card with the same info, but below the previous card on screen
deck.push(bcard);	Add to deck

<code>cx = cx+cardwidth+ margin;</code>	Increment to allow for card width plus margin
<code>aCard.draw();</code>	Draw the card on the canvas
<code>bCard.draw();</code>	Draw the card on the canvas
<code>}</code>	Close the for loop
<code>Shuffle();</code>	Shuffle the cards
<code>}</code>	Close the function
<code>function shuffle() {</code>	Header for shuffle function
<code>var i;</code>	Variable to hold a reference to a card
<code>var k;</code>	Variable to hold a reference to a card
<code>var holder;</code>	Variable needed to do the swap
<code>var dl = deck.length</code>	Variable to hold the number of cards in the deck
<code>var nt;</code>	Index for the number of swaps
<code>for (nt=0;nt&lt;3*dl;nt++) {</code>	For loop
<code>    i = Math.floor(Math.random()*dl);</code>	Get a random card
<code>    k = Math.floor(Math.random()*dl);</code>	Get a random card
<code>    holder = deck[i].info;</code>	Store the info for i
<code>    deck[i].info = deck[k].info;</code>	Put in i info for k
<code>    deck[k].info = holder;</code>	Put into k what was in k

}	Close for loop
}	Close function
function Polycard(sx,sy,rad,n) {	Function header for Polycard
this.sx = sx;	Set up the x coordinate
this.sy = sy;	... the y
this.rad = rad;	...the polygon radius
this.draw = drawpoly;	...how to draw
this.n = n;	...number of sides
this.angle = (2*Math.PI)/n	Compute and store the angle
}	Close the function
function drawpoly() {	Function header
ctx.fillStyle= frontbgcolor;	Set the front background
ctx.fillRect(this.sx-2*this.rad,this.sy-2*this.rad,4*this.rad,4*this.rad);	The corner of the rectangle is up and to the left of the center of the polygon
ctx.beginPath();	Start the path
ctx.fillStyle=polycolor;	Change to color for polygon
var i;	Index variable
var rad = this.rad;	Extract the radius
ctx.moveTo(this.sx+rad*Math.cos(-.5*this.angle),this.sy+rad*Math.sin(-.5*this.angle));	Move up to the first point

for (i=1;i<this.n;i++) {	For loop for the successive points
ctx.lineTo(this.sx+rad*Math.cos((i-.5)*this.angle),this.sy+rad*Math.sin((i-.5)*this.angle));	Set up drawing of line segments
}	Close for loop
ctx.fill();	Fill in the path
}	Close function
function drawback() {	Function header
ctx.fillStyle = backcolor;	Set card back color
ctx.fillRect(this.sx,this.sy,this.swidth,this.sheight);	Draw rectangle
}	Close function
function choose(ev) {	Function header for choose (click on a card)
var mx;	Variable to hold mouse x
var my;	Variable to hold mouse y
var pick1;	Variable to hold reference to created Polygon object
var pick2;	Variable to hold reference to created Polygon object
if ( ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0) {	Can we use layerX and layerY?
mx= ev.layerX;	Set mx
my = ev.layerY;	Set my

}	Close if true
else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	Can we use offsetX and offset?
mx = ev.offsetX;	Set mx
my = ev.offsetY;	Set my
}	Close else
var i;	Declare variable for indexing in the for loop
for (i=0;i<deck.length;i++){	Loop through the whole deck
var card = deck[i];	Extract a card reference to simplify the code
if (card.sx >=0)	Check that card isn't marked as having been removed
if ((mx>card.sx)&&(mx<card.sx+card.swidth)&&(my>card.sy)&&(my<card.sy+card.sheight)) {	And then check if the mouse is over this card
if ((firstpick)   (i!=firstcard)) break;	If so, check that the player isn't clicking on the first card again, and if this is true, leave the for loop
}	Close if true clause
	Close for loop
if (i<deck.length) {	Was the for loop exited early?
if (firstpick) {	If this is a first pick...

firstcard = i;	...Set firstcard to reference the card in the deck
firstpick = false;	Set firstpick to false
pick1 = new Polycard(card.sx+cardwidth*.5,card.sy+cardheight*.5,cardrad,card.info);	Create polygon with its coordinates at the center
pick1.draw();	Draw polygon
}	Close if first pick
else {	Else...
secondcard = i;	...Set secondcard to reference the card in the deck
pick2 = new Polycard(card.sx+cardwidth*.5,card.sy+cardheight*.5,cardrad,card.info);	Create polygon with its coordinates at the center
pick2.draw();	Draw polygon
if (deck[i].info==deck[firstcard].info) {	Check for a match
matched = true;	Set matched to true
var nm = 1+Number(document.f.count.value);	Increment the number of matches
document.f.count.value = String(nm);	Display the new count
if (nm>= .5*deck.length) {	Check if the game is over
var now = new Date();	Get new Date info
var nt = Number(now.getTime());	Extract and convert the time
var seconds = Math.floor(.5+(ntstarttime)/1000);	Compute the seconds elapsed

document.f.elapsed.value = String(seconds);	Output the time
}	Close if this is the end of the game
}	Close if there's a match
else {	Else...
matched = false;	Set matched to false
}	Close the else clause
firstpick = true;	Reset firstpick
setTimeout(flipback,1000);	Set up the pause
}	Close not first pick
}	Close good pick (click on a card—for loop exited early)
}	Close the function
function flipback() {	Function header—flipback handling after the pause
if (!matched) {	If no match...
deck[firstcard].draw();	...Draw the card back
deck[secondcard].draw();	...Draw the card back
}	...Close the clause
else {	Else need to remove cards
ctx.fillStyle = tablecolor;	Set to the table/board color

ctx.fillRect(deck[secondcard].sx,deck[secondcard].sy,deck[secondcard].swidth,deck[secondcard].sheight);	Draw over the card
ctx.fillRect(deck[firstcard].sx,deck[firstcard].sy,deck[firstcard].swidth,deck[firstcard].sheight);	Draw over the card
deck[secondcard].sx = -1;	Set this so the card won't be checked
deck[firstcard].sx = -1;	Set this so the card won't be checked
}	Close if there's no match
}	Close the function
function init(){	Function header init
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Set ctx to do all the drawing
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');	Set canvas1 for event handling
canvas1.addEventListener('click',choose,false);	Set up event handling
makedeck();	Create the deck
document.f.count.value = "0";	Initialize visible count
document.f.elapsed.value = "";	Clear any old value
starttime = new Date();	First step to setting starting time
starttime = Number(starttime.getTime());	Reuse the variable to set the milliseconds from benchmark
shuffle();	Shuffle the card info values

}	Close the function
</script>	Close the script element
</head>	Close head element
<body onLoad="init();">	Body tag, set up init
<canvas id="canvas" width="900" height="400">	Canvas start tag
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Warning message
</canvas>	Close canvas element
 	Line break before instructions
Click on two cards to see if you have a match.	Instructions
<form name="f">	Form start tag
Number of matches: <input type="text" name="count" value="0" size="1"/>	Label and input element used for output
<p>	Paragraph break
Time taken to complete puzzle: <input type="text" name="elapsed" value=" " size="4"/> seconds.	Label and input element used for output
</form>	Close form
</body>	Close body
</html>	Close html

You can change this game by changing the font, font size, color, and background color for the form. More ways to make the application your own are suggested later in this section.

The version of the memory game that uses pictures has much the same structure as the polygon version. It doesn't require a separate function to draw the picture. Table 5-3 is the function listing for this version of the game.

**Table 5-3.** Functions in the Photo Version of the Memory Game

Function	Invoked By/Called By	Calls
init	Invoked in response to the onLoad in the body tag	makedeck shuffle
choose	Invoked in response to the addEventListener in init	
flipback	Invoked in response to the setTimeout call in choose	
drawback	Invoked as the draw method for a card in makedeck and flipback	
shuffle	Called in init	
makedeck	Called in init	
Card	Called by makedeck	

The code for the photos version of the memory game is similar to that for the polygon version. Most of the logic is the same. But because this example demonstrates the writing of text on the canvas, the HTML document doesn't have a form element. The code follows in Table 5-4, with comments on the lines that are different. I also indicate where you would put in the names of the image files for your photographs. Before looking at this second version of the memory game, think about which parts are likely to be the same and which may be different.

**Table 5-4.** Complete Code for the Photo Version of the Memory Game

<html>	
<head>	
<title>Memory game using pictures</title>	Complete title element
<script type="text/javascript">	
var ctx;	
var firstpick = true;	

var firstcard = -1;	
var secondcard;	
var backcolor = "rgb(128,0,128)";	
var tablecolor = "rgb(255,255,255)";	
var deck = [];	
var firstsx = 30;	
var firstsy = 50;	
var margin = 30;	
var cardwidth = 100;	You may need to change this if you want your pictures to be a different width...
var cardheight = 100;	...and/or height
var matched;	
var starttime;	
var count = 0;	Needed to keep count internally
var pairs = [	The array of pairs of image files for the five people
["allison1.jpg", "allison2.jpg"],	This is where you put in the names of your picture files
[ "grant1.jpg", "grant2.jpg"],	...
["liam1.jpg", "liam2.jpg"],	...
["aviva1.jpg", "aviva2.jpg"],	...

["daniel1.jpg", "daniel2.jpg"]	You can use any number of paired pictures, but notice how the array holding the last pair does not have a comma after the bracket.
]	
function Card(sx,sy,swidth,sheight, img, info) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.swidth = swidth;	
this.sheight = sheight;	
this.info = info;	Indicates matches
this.img = img;	Img reference
this.draw = drawback;	
}	
function makedeck() {	
var i;	
var acard;	
var bcard;	
var pica;	
var picb;	
var cx = firstsx;	
var cy = firstsy;	
for(i=0;i<pairs.length;i++) {	

pica = new Image();	Create the Image object
pica.src = pairs[i][0];	Set to the first file
acard = new Card(cx,cy,cardwidth,cardheight,pica,i);	Create Card
deck.push(acard);	
picb = new Image();	Create the Image object
picb.src = pairs[i][1];	Set to second file
bcard = new Card(cx,cy+cardheight+margin,cardwidth,cardheight,picb,i);	Create Card
deck.push(bcard);	
cx = cx+cardwidth+ margin;	
acard.draw();	
bcard.draw();	
}	
}	
function shuffle() {	
var i;	
var k;	
var holderinfo;	Temporary place for the swap
var holderimg;	Temporary place for the swap
var dl = deck.length	
var nt;	
for (nt=0;nt<3*dl;nt++) { //do the swap 3 times deck.length times	

i = Math.floor(Math.random()*dl);	
k = Math.floor(Math.random()*dl);	
holderinfo = deck[i].info;	Save the info
holderimg = deck[i].img;	Save the img
deck[i].info = deck[k].info;	Put k's info into i
deck[i].img = deck[k].img;	Put k's img into i
deck[k].info = holderinfo;	Set to the original info
deck[k].img = holderimg;	Set to the original img
}	
}	
function drawback() {	
ctx.fillStyle = backcolor;	
ctx.fillRect(this.sx, this.sy, this.swidth, this.sheight);	
}	
function choose(ev) {	
var out;	
var mx;	
var my;	
var pick1;	
var pick2;	
if ( ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0 ) {	Reminder: This is the code for handling differences among the three browsers

mx= ev.layerX;	
my = ev.layerY;	
} else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	
mx = ev.offsetX;	
my = ev.offsetY;	
}	
var i;	
for (i=0;i<deck.length;i++){	
var card = deck[i];	
if (card.sx >=0) //this is the way to avoid checking for clicking on this space	
if ((mx>card.sx)&&(mx<card.sx+card.swidth)&&(my>card.sy)&&(my<card.sy+card.sheight)) {	
if ((firstpick)   (i!=firstcard)) {	
break;}	
}	
if (i<deck.length) {	
if (firstpick) {	
firstcard = i;	
firstpick = false;	
ctx.drawImage(card.img,card.sx,card.sy,card.swidth,card.sheight);	Draw the photo
}	
else {	

secondcard = i;	
ctx.drawImage(card.img,card.sx,card.sy,card.swidth,card.sheight);	Draw the photo
if (card.info==deck[firstcard].info) {	Check if there's a match
matched = true;	
count++;	Increment count
ctx.fillStyle= tablecolor;	
ctx.fillRect(10,340,900,100);	Erase area where text will be
ctx.fillStyle=backcolor;	Reset to the color for text
ctx.fillText("Number of matches so far: "+String(count),10,360);	Write out count
if (count>= .5*deck.length) {	
var now = new Date();	
var nt = Number(now.getTime());	
var seconds = Math.floor(.5+(nt-starttime)/1000);	
ctx.fillStyle= tablecolor;	
ctx.fillRect(0,0,900,400);	Erase the whole canvas
ctx.fillStyle=backcolor;	Set for drawing
out="You finished in "+String(seconds)+ " secs.;"	Prepare the text
ctx.fillText(out,10,100);	Write the text
ctx.fillText("Reload the page to try again.",10,300);	Write the text
}	

```
}

else {

    matched = false;

}

firstpick = true;

setTimeout(flipback,1000);

}

}

}

function flipback() {

    var card;

    if (!matched) {

        deck[firstcard].draw();

        deck[secondcard].draw();

    }

    else {

        ctx.fillStyle = tablecolor;

        ctx.fillRect(deck[secondcard].sx,deck[secondcard].sy,deck[second
card].swidth,deck[secondcard].sheight);

        ctx.fillRect(deck[firstcard].sx,deck[firstcard].sy,deck[firstcar
d].swidth,deck[firstcard].sheight);

        deck[secondcard].sx = -1;

        deck[firstcard].sx = -1;

    }

}
```

}	
}	
function init(){	
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');	
canvas1.addEventListener('click',choose,false);	
makedeck();	
shuffle();	
ctx.font="bold 20pt sans-serif";	Set font
ctx.fillText("Click on two cards to make a match.",10,20);	Display instructions as text on canvas
ctx.fillText("Number of matches so far: 0",10,360);	Display the count
starttime = new Date();	
starttime = Number(starttime.getTime());	
}	
</script>	
</head>	
<body onLoad="init();">	
<canvas id="canvas" width="900" height="400">	
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	
</canvas>	
</body>	
</html>	

Though these two programs are real games, they can be improved. For example, the player can't lose. After reviewing this material, try to figure out a way to force a loss, perhaps by limiting the number of moves or imposing a time limit.

These applications start the clock when they're loaded. Some games wait to begin timing until the player performs the first action. If you want to take this friendlier approach, you'd need to set up a logical variable initialized to `false` and create a mechanism in the `choose` function for checking whether this variable has been set to `true`. Since it may not have been, you'd have to include code for setting the `starttime` variable.

This is a single-player game. You can devise a way to make it a game for two. You probably need to assume that the people are taking turns properly, but the program can keep separate scores for each participant.

Some people like to set up games with levels of difficulty. To do so, you could increase the number of cards, decrease the pause time, or take other measures.

You can make this application yours by using your own pictures. You can, of course, use images of friends and family members, but you could also create an educational game with pictures that represent items or concepts such as musical-note names and symbols, countries and capitals, maps of counties and names, and more. You can change the number of pairs as well. The code refers to the length of the various arrays, so you don't need to go through the code changing the number of cards in the deck. You may need to adjust the values of the `cardwidth` and `cardheight` variables, though, to arrange the cards on the screen.

Another possibility, of course, is using a standard deck of 52 cards (or 54 with jokers). For an example using playing cards, skip ahead to Chapter 10, which takes you through creation of a blackjack game. For any matching game, you'll need to develop a way to represent the information defining which cards match.

## Testing and uploading the application

When we, the developers, check our programs, we tend to do the same thing on each pass. Users, players, and customers, however, often do strange things. That's why getting others to test our applications is a good idea. So ask friends to test out your game. You should always have people who had no hand in building the application test it. You may discover problems you didn't identify.

The HTML document for the polygon version of the memory game contains the complete game, since the program draws and redraws the polygons on the fly. The photo version of the game requires you to upload all the images. You can vary this game by using image files from the Web (outside of your own Web page). Note that the `pairs` array needs to have the complete addresses.

## Summary

In this example, you learned how to implement two versions of the game known as memory or concentration) using programming techniques and HTML5 features. These included

- examples of programmer-defined functions and programmer-defined objects
- how to draw polygons on the canvas using `moveTo` and `lineTo` along with Math trig methods
- guidance on how to use a form to show information to players
- a method for drawing text with a specified font on the canvas
- instructions about how to draw images on the canvas
- using `setTimeout` to force a pause
- employing `Date` objects to compute elapsed time

The applications demonstrated ways to represent information to implement two versions of a familiar game. The next chapter will temporarily depart from the use of canvas to demonstrate dynamic creation and positioning of HTML elements. It also will feature the use of HTML5's video element.



## Chapter 6

# Quiz

---



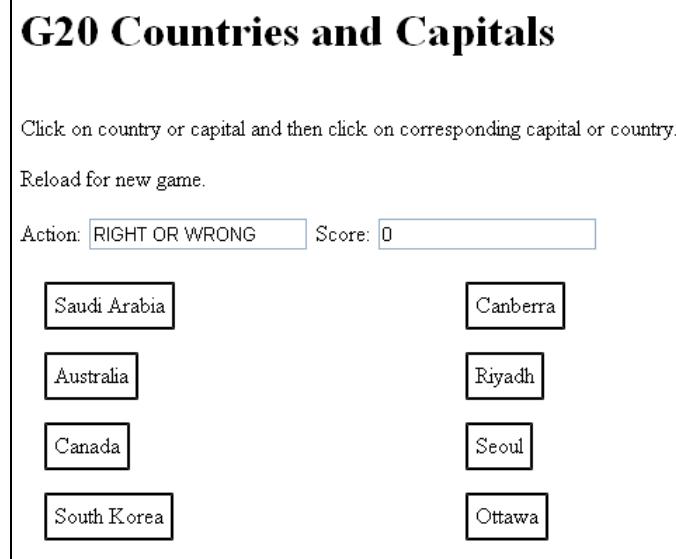
In this chapter, we will cover

- creating HTML by code
- positioning and repositioning HTML elements
- responding to clicks of the mouse
- arrays of arrays
- playing video

## Introduction

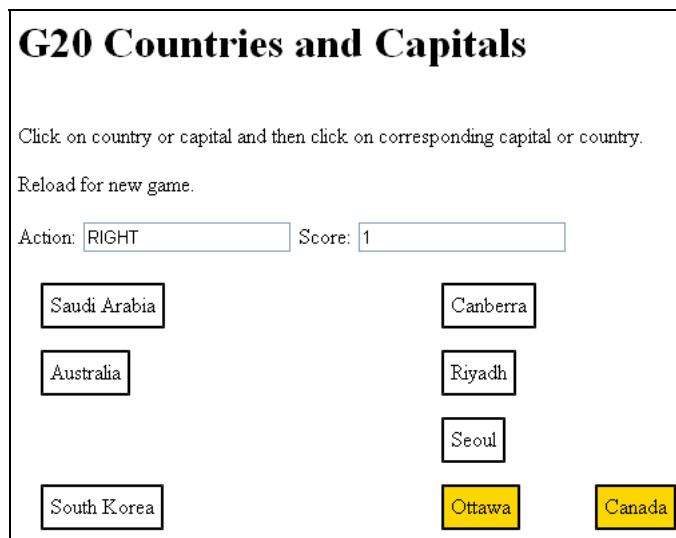
This chapter demonstrates how HTML elements can be created dynamically and then positioned and repositioned on the screen. This is in contrast not only to drawing on a canvas element but also to the old way of creating static web pages. Our goal is to produce a quiz in which the player must match the names of countries and capital cities. We will use an array of arrays to hold the necessary information and build on the game to give more feedback to the player, including playing a video clip as a reward for getting the correct answers. The ability to display video directly (or *natively*) using HTML5 is a big improvement over the old system, which required using the `<object>` element and third-party plug-ins on the player's computer. In our game, the video serves only a minor role, but the fact that developers and designers can use HTML5 and JavaScript to produce a specific video at a specific point in the running of an application is very important.

The basic information for the quiz consists of country and capital city name pairs for the G20 countries. (Note: the European Union is one of the entries.) The program chooses at random four country/capital pairs and presents them in boxes on the screen. Figure 6-1 shows an opening screen.



**Figure 6-1.** An opening screen for the quiz

Players attempt to match a country and its capital by clicking first on one and then the other, and the blocks change color to indicate success. Figure 6-2 shows the correct matching of Canada and Ottawa, and Figure 6-3 shows a second match. Notice that the blocks have been colored in and the Score goes to 1 and then to 2.



**Figure 6-2.** One pair correctly matched

## G20 Countries and Capitals

Click on country or capital and then click on corresponding capital or country.

Reload for new game.

Action:  Score:

Saudi Arabia

Canberra

Australia

Riyadh

South Korea

Seoul

Ottawa

Canada

**Figure 6-3.** A second successful match

Now the player makes a mistake by pairing Riyadh with Australia. Figure 6-4 shows the result: the program moves the Riyadh block, but the Action field indicates WRONG. The Score is still 2, and the blocks remain white.

## G20 Countries and Capitals

Click on country or capital and then click on corresponding capital or country.

Reload for new game.

Action:  Score:

Saudi Arabia

Canberra

Australia

Riyadh

South Korea

Seoul

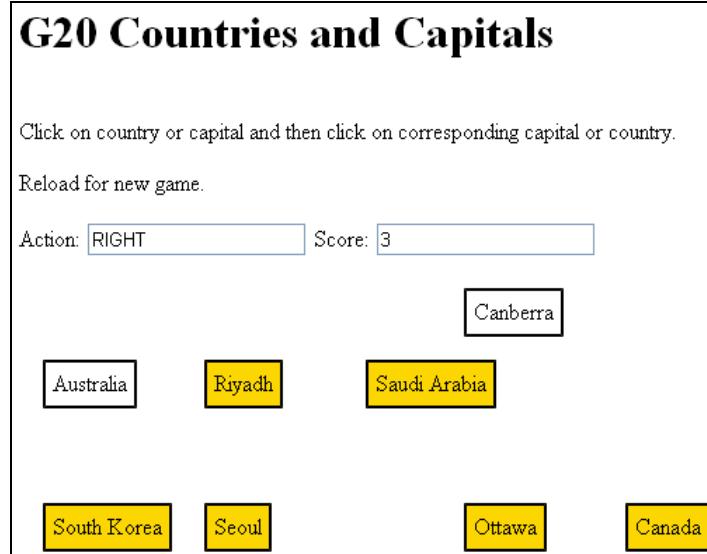
Ottawa

Canada



**Figure 6-4.** After two correct and one incorrect plays

This quiz program allows the player to try again, as shown in Figure 6-5.



**Figure 6-5.** Choosing the correct match for Riyadh

The second version of the quiz provides more feedback to the player. Clicking on a country or capital turns its color to tan, as in Figure 6-6. If the attempted match is correct, the blocks become gold as in the first game. If not, the color changes back to white.



**Figure 6-6.** A first selection changes color.

Matching all four correctly results in a short video clip. Figure 6-7 shows the start of the video.

## G20 Countries and Capitals

Click on country or capital and then click on corresponding capital or country.

Reload for new game.

Action:

Score:



**Figure 6-7.** After success, a video clip

A game or, indeed, any application, must communicate effectively with the user. Sometimes, you may want to be subtle, but a good rule is to provide feedback for every user action, or at least think carefully and make a conscious decision to not provide direct feedback. The color changes are feedback. The video is feedback: the player who completes the game gets a visual reward.

This program should be considered a starting point. As designer, you will need to make decisions on retries, game completion, hints, and so forth. I decided to make this game a random selection of 4 questions from a set of 20. You could consider these sets of 4 questions rounds in a longer game. You could present one country along with several alternatives for its capital. And you could use images (img elements with the src values set by code) in place of names. See the “Building the Application and Making It Your Own” section for more ideas.

Our quiz program creates HTML elements that change and move around the screen as a result of player action. It also uses arrays of arrays to hold information, and it includes video that plays at a specific point in the game. It’s hard to imagine a sophisticated game nowadays that wouldn’t include such elements. Moreover, this program suggests the potential of games for education, certainly an area worth exploring.

## Critical requirements

A quiz requires a way to store information or, to use a fancier term, a knowledge base. We need a way to choose specific questions to ask, hopefully randomly, so the player sees a different set of challenges each time. Since what we’re storing is simply pairs of names, we can use a simple technique.

Next we need to present questions to the player and provide feedback, something different each time. In this example, the player sees the country and capital names in blocks on the screen, and then clicks on the appropriate blocks to indicate a possible match. This means we need a way to generate JavaScript to detect mouse clicks on specific blocks and then reposition the first block clicked on to be next to the second block. We want a correct pairing to be indicated by a change in color as well as text, and an increase in the score.

Notice that we are not using the `<canvas>` element. We could have, and you can read the Comment below for a comparison of dynamically created HTML markup and the `canvas`. The Hangman application in Chapter 9 includes dynamically generated HTML elements *and* drawing on a `canvas` element.

Since video is such an important advance for HTML5, I wanted to demonstrate it in an example. A critical aspect of using video as a “reward” for a successful game is the need to hide the video until that point in the game and then start playing it. What makes this more challenging is that currently not all browsers accept the same video encodings. Still, as mentioned earlier, the new capability in HTML5 means that developers can make very precise use of video without relying on third-party plug-ins.

## HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

Now let’s delve into the specific features of HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement the quiz. I again build on what has been explained before, with some redundancy just in case you skipped around in your reading.

### Storing and retrieving information in arrays

You may remember that an array is a sequence of values and that a variable can be set up as an array. The individual components of an array can be any data type—including other arrays! Recall that in the memory games in Chapter 5, we used an array variable named `pairs` in which each element was itself an array of two elements, the matching photo image files.

```
var pairs = [
  ["allison1.jpg", "allison2.jpg"],
  ["grant1.jpg", "grant2.jpg"],
  ["liam1.jpg", "liam2.jpg"],
  ["aviva1.jpg", "aviva2.jpg"],
  ["daniel1.jpg", "daniel2.jpg"]]
```

The `pairs` array had 5 elements, each of which was an array. The inner arrays consisted of two elements and each of these elements was a string of characters, the name of an image file.

In the quiz application, we will again use an array of arrays. For the quiz show, we set up a variable named `facts` as an array to hold the information about the G20 members. Each element of the `facts` array is itself an array. My first thought on creating the application was that these inner arrays would each hold two elements, the country name and the capital city name. Later, I added a third element to hold whether or not this country/capital pair had been chosen in this round of the quiz. This meant that the inner arrays had three different elements: two character strings and a Boolean (true/false) value.

The individual components of an array are accessed or set using square brackets. Arrays in JavaScript are indexed starting from zero and ending at one less than the total number of elements in the array. One

trick to remember that the indexing starts from zero is to imagine the array all lined up. The first element will be at the start; the second 1 unit away; the third 2 units away, and so on.

The length of the array is kept in an attribute of the array named `length`. To access the first component of the `facts` array, you use `fact[0]`; for the second element, `fact[1]`, and so on. You will see this in the coding.

A common way to do something with each element in an array is to use a `for` loop. (See also the explanation for setting up the gradient in the walls of the bounding box in Chapter 3.) Suppose you have an array named `prices` and your task is to write code to increase each of the prices by 15%. Further, each price has to increase by a minimum of 1, even if 1 is more than the 15%. You could use the construct in Table 6-1 to perform this task. As you can see in the Explanation column, the `for` loop does the same thing for each component of the array, using the indexing variable `i` in this example. This example also shows the use of the `Math.max` method.

**Table 6-1.** Increasing Prices in an Array Using a For Loop

Code	Explanation
<code>for(var i=0;i&lt;prices.length;i++) {</code>	Do the statements inside the brackets, changing the value of <code>i</code> , starting at 0 and increasing by 1 (that's what <code>i++</code> does) until the value is not less than <code>prices.length</code> , the number of elements in the array.
<code>  prices[i] += Math.max→(prices[i]*.15,1);</code>	Remember to interpret this from the inside out. Compute .15 times the $i^{\text{th}}$ element of the array <code>prices</code> . See what's greater, this value or 1. If it is this value, that's what <code>Math.max</code> returns. If it is 1 (if 1 is more than <code>prices[i]*.15</code> ), use 1. Add this value to the current value of <code>prices[i]</code> . That's what <code>+=</code> does.
<code>}</code>	Close the <code>for</code> loop

Notice that the code does not state the size of the `prices` array explicitly. Instead it is represented in the expression `prices.length`. This is good because it means that the value of `length` changes automatically if and when you add elements to the array. Of course, in our example we know the number to be 20, but in other situations it's better to keep things flexible. This application can be a model for a quiz involving any number of facts when a fact is two pieces of information.

Our `facts` array is an array of arrays, which means you'll see the following in the code:

`facts[i][0]` the country name

`facts[i][1]` the capital city name

`facts[i][2]` the true/false value indicating this country/capital has been used

These expressions are interpreted as the  $0^{\text{th}}$  element of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  element of the `facts` array and so on. I do refer to the inner arrays as rows, but keep in mind that there are not really any columns. Some programming languages support multi-dimensional arrays as a primitive data type, but JavaScript only

supports one-dimensional arrays. The facts array is one-dimensional. The facts[0] element is itself an array, and so on.

*Note: If the knowledge base was much more complex or if I were sharing the information or accessing it from somewhere else, I might need to use something other than an array of arrays. I could also store the knowledge base separate from the HTML document, perhaps using an eXtended Markup Language (XML) file. JavaScript has functions for reading in and accessing XML.*

The design for the quiz is to present a randomly chosen set of four facts for each game, so we define a variable nq (standing for number in a quiz) to be 4. This never changes, but making it a variable means that if we wanted to change it, it would be easy to do.

The HTML that's created dynamically (see next section) will take up two columns on the screen, with the countries in the left column and the capitals in the right. I don't want the pairs to line up, so I use the Math.random facility to position the capitals in the nq different positions. I think of these as slots. The logic, presented here in pseudo-code, is the following

*Make a random choice, from 0 to facts.length. If this fact has been used, try again  
Mark this choice as used.*

*Create new HTML to be a block for the country and place in the next ↵  
position on the left.*

*Make a random choice, 0 to 3, to determine the slot for the capital. ↵  
If this slot has been taken, try again.*

*Mark this slot as used.*

So how do we code this? As indicated earlier, the fact array contains arrays and the third element of the inner arrays is a Boolean variable. Initially, these values will each be false, meaning the elements haven't yet been used in the game. After a time, of course, some facts will have been used, so I use another type of loop, a do-while construct that will keep trying until it comes to a fact that hasn't been used:

```
do {c = Math.floor(Math.random()*facts.length);}  
while (facts[c][2]==true)
```

The do-while exits as soon as facts[c][2] is false, that is, when the element at index c is available for use.

We use similar coding to determine the slot for the capital. We define an array called slots. Now, we could have made the values in the slots array Booleans, but instead we're going to store the value c that holds the index in the facts array once the code determines what that value is. For an initial value for each element of slots, we'll use an arbitrary value of -100. The used values are in the range 0 to 19 (facts.length). The coding is:

```
do {s = Math.floor(Math.random()*nq);}  
while (slots[s]>=0)  
slots[s]=c;
```

## Creating HTML during program execution

An HTML document typically consists of the text and markup you include when you initially write the document. However, you can also add to the document while the file is being interpreted by the browser,

specifically, when the JavaScript in the `script` element is being executed (called *execution time* or *runtime*). This is what I mean by creating HTML dynamically. For the quiz application, I created two types of elements that we'll add, with the names "country" and "cap". For each of these, we insert an element of type `div`, a general element type that suits our purposes here. (Be aware that HTML5 has added several other types—for example, `header`, `footer`, `article`, and `section`—that convey more specific meaning and should be considered for your applications. Chapter 1 shows one use of `section`, and in Chapter 10, I'll show `footer`.)

The `div` is a block type, meaning it can contain other elements as well as text, and it is displayed with line breaks before and after. Table 6-2 shows methods we'll use.

**Table 6-2.** Methods for Creating HTML

Code	Explanation
<code>createElement</code>	Creates the HTML element
<code>appendChild</code>	Adds the element to the document by appending it to something in the document
<code>getElementbyID</code>	Gets a reference to the element

One trick needed for applications such as this is to come up with unique `id` values for the elements that are created. We'll do this using a variable that's incremented for each set of country and capital. The `id` value consists of that number, converted to a string and then preceded by a "c" or a "p". Why a "p"? Because I'm using "c" for country and "p" came to mind when thinking of capital. By the way, the `id` values don't have to be numbers or take any particular form. As you see, in our application, they are single letters followed by numbers.

The matching country and capital city will have the same number so we can use the `id` values to check for a match. We use a `String` method, `substring`, that extracts a portion of any string of characters. Let's look at a couple of examples. To use `substring`, you specify the starting position and, optionally, one more than the ending position. That is, the extracted string starts at the first parameter and goes up until the second. If our code doesn't include the second parameter, the extract goes to the end of the string. Suppose you had a variable

```
var class ;
```

for course or class names. Most colleges use specific patterns for such names, such as three letters for department and then perhaps four numbers to indicate the specific course. Now let's suppose the variable `class` has been assigned the value "MAT1420". In that case,

```
class.substring(0,3) would produce "MAT"  
class.substring(3) would produce "1420"  
class.substring(3,7) would produce "1420"  
class.substring(3,6) would produce "142"  
class.substring(3,4) would produce "1"
```

*Tip: JavaScript and many other languages also provide a string method called `substr` that works a little differently. The second argument of `substr` is the length of the piece of string. For the class name example,*

`class.substr(0,3)`, coincidentally, also produces "MAT"

`class.substr(3,4)` produces "1420"

`class.substr(3,1)` produces "1"

In our implementation of the quiz, we use the portion of the string starting from the position numbered 1, that is, the second position, to the end of the string.

Once we create these new HTML elements, we use `addEventListener` to set up events and event handlers. The `addEventListener` method is used for a variety of events. Remember, we used it on the `canvas` element in Chapter 4.

For the quiz application, the following statement sets up the JavaScript engine to "listen" for clicks for each element and to invoke the `pickelement` function that we'll create.

```
thingelem.addEventListener('click',pickelement,false);
```

(The `false` in this statement refers to a technicality involving other possible listeners for this event.)

In the `pickelement` function, you'll see code containing the term `this`, such as

```
thisx= this.style.left;
```

In the code, `this` refers to the current instance, namely the element that the player clicked. We set up listening for the event for each element so when `pickelement` is executed, the code can refer to the specific element that *heard* the click using the `this`. When the player clicks on the Brazil block, the code *knows* it, where by "knows" I am anthropomorphizing the program more than I would like. Putting it another way, the same `pickelement` function will be invoked for all the blocks we have placed on the screen, but, by using `this`, the code can refer to the specific one that the player clicks on each time.

*Note: If we didn't have these elements and the capability to do the `addEventListener` and refer to the attributes using the `this` (forgive the awkward English) and instead drew stuff on a canvas, we would need to perform calculations and comparisons to determine where the mouse cursor was and then look up the corresponding information in some way to check for matches. (Recall the coding for the Slingshot in Chapter 4.) Instead, the JavaScript engine is doing much of the work, and doing it more efficiently—faster—than we could by writing the code ourselves.*

After the new HTML is created, its contents are set using the `innerHTML` attribute. Next, the new element is added to the document by being appended as a child of the `body` element. This may seem odd, but it is how things are done.

```
d.innerHTML = (
  "<div class='thing' id='"+uniqueid+">placeholder</div>");  
document.body.appendChild(d);
```

The placeholder text will be replaced and the whole thing will be repositioned. We set the text by assigning a value to the attribute `textContent`. Next, we'll look at how to use CSS with our code to position the elements and change their color.

You'll see the code in complete context in the Building the Application section.

## Changing elements by modifying CSS using JavaScript code

Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) lets you specify the formatting of parts of an HTML document. Chapter 1 showed a very basic example of CSS, which is powerful and useful even for static HTML. Essentially, the idea is to use CSS for the formatting, that is, the look of the application, and to reserve HTML for structuring the content. See David Powers' *Getting StartED with CSS* (friends of ED, 2009) for more information on CSS.

Let's take a brief look here at what we'll use to generate the dynamically created blocks holding the country and capital names.

A style element in an HTML document holds one or more styles. Each style refers to

- an element type using the element type name; or
- a specific element, using the `id` value; or
- a class of elements.

In Chapter 1, we used a style for the `body` element and for the `section` elements. For the video, we'll use a reference to a specific element. Here is a fragment of the coding, starting with what goes in the `style` element:

```
#vid {position: absolute; visibility: hidden; z-index: 0; }
```

where `vid` is the `id` used in the `video` element in the `body` element.

```
<video id="vid" controls="controls" preload="auto">
```

We'll get into the details of this soon when I discuss the `video` element and its visibility.

Now let's set the formatting for a class of elements. The class is an attribute that can be specified in any element starting tag. For this application, I came up with a class `thing`. Yes, I know it's lame. It refers to a `thing` our code will place on the screen. The style is

```
.thing {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: 2px; border-style: double; background-color: white; margin: 5px; padding: 5px; }
```

The period before `thing` indicates that this is a class specification. The `position` is set to `absolute` and `top` and `left` include values that can be changed by code.

The `absolute` setting refers to the way the `position` is specified in the document window—as specific coordinates. The alternative is `relative`, which you'd use if the part of the document was within a containing block that could be anywhere on the screen. The unit of measurement is the pixel and so the positions from the left and from the top are given as `0px` for 0 pixels, and the border, margin, and padding measurements are 2 pixels, 5 pixels, and 5 pixels, respectively.

Now let's see how to use the `style` attributes to position and format the blocks. For example, after creating a dynamic element to hold a country, we can use the following lines of code to get a reference to the `thing`

just created, put the text holding the country name into the element, and then position it at a specified point on the screen.

```
thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);
thingelem.textContent=facts[c][0];
thingelem.style.top = String(my)+"px";
thingelem.style.left = String(mx)+"px";
```

Here, `my` and `mx` are numbers. Setting `style.top` and `style.left` requires a string, so our code converts the numbers to strings and adds the "px" at the ends of the strings.

We want to change the color of both boxes when there is a correct match. We can do this pretty much as when changing the top and left to reposition the block. However, the name of the attribute for JavaScript is slightly different than the one in the CSS: no dash.

```
elementinmotion.style.backgroundColor = "gold";
this.style.backgroundColor = "gold";
```

The gold is one of the set of established colors, including red, white, blue, etc. that can be referred to by name. Alternatively, you can use the hexadecimal RGB values available from a program such as Corel Paint Shop Pro, Adobe Photoshop, or Adobe Flash. For the second version of the game, I used tan and white.

*Tip: You can specify a font in the style section. You can put 'safe web fonts' in any search engine and get a list of fonts purported to be available on all browsers and all computers. However, an alternative approach is to specify an ordered list of fonts so if the first one is not available, the browser will attempt to find the next. See Chapter 8 for more information.*

## Text feedback using form and input elements

The player gets feedback in two ways in the two applications: in both versions, a selected block always gets moved. In the second version of the game, the first block clicked gets changed to tan. If the match is correct, the color of both blocks is set to gold. Otherwise, both blocks revert to white. Text feedback is given using input fields of a `form` element. This form is not used for input and so there's no button, either as a separate button element or as an `input` element of type `submit`.

The following two lines set one input field to RIGHT and the other to one more than the previous value. Note that the value must be converted from text to number before incrementing, then converted back.

```
document.f.out.value = "RIGHT";
document.f.score.value =String(1+Number(document.f.score.value));
```

What if our pesky player clicks twice on the same block? We have code to check for this.

```
if (makingmove) {
    if (this==elementinmotion) {
        elementinmotion.style.backgroundColor = "white";
        makingmove = false;
        return;
    }
}
```

This makes the player start over with a new move if she clicks twice on the same block. Since the block will change back to white, this should be clear to the player.

## Presenting video

HTML5 provides the new video element for presenting video, either as part of a static HTML document or under the control of JavaScript. This may well become the new standard. For more information, see Silvia Pfeiffer's *The Definitive Guide to HTML5 Video* (Apress, 2010).

In brief, video comes in different file types, just like images do. The file types vary based on the containers for the video and the associated audio, as well as on how the video and the audio are encoded. The browser needs to know how to handle the container and how to decode the video to display the frames—the still images making up the video—in succession on the screen, and how to decode the audio to send the sound to the computer speakers.

Videos involve a considerable amount of data, so people still are working on the best ways to compress the information, taking advantage, for example, of what is similar between frames without losing too much quality. Web sites are now displayed on small screens on cell phones as well as large high-definition TV screens, so it's important to take advantage of any knowledge of what the display device will be. With this in mind, though we can hope that browser makers standardize on one format in the future, the HTML5 video element provides a way to work around the lack of standardization by referencing multiple files. Developers, therefore, and that includes those of us creating this quiz application, need to produce different versions of the same video.

I downloaded a Fourth of July fireworks video clip and then used a free tool (Miro video converter) to create three different versions with different formatting of the same short video clip. I then used the new HTML5 video element as well as the source element to code references to all three video files. The codecs attribute in the source element provides information on what the encoding is for the file specified in the src attribute.

```
<video controls="controls">
<source src="sfire3.mp4" type='video/mp4; codecs="avc1.42E01E, mp4a.40.2"'>
<source src="sfire3.theora.ogv" type='video/ogg; codecs="theora, vorbis"'>
<source src="sfire3.webmvp8.webm" type="video/webm; codec="vp8, vorbis'">
</video>
```

Including controls="controls" puts the familiar controls on the screen to allow the player/user to start or pause the video clip. This code, as part of a standard HTML document, produces what is shown in Figure 6-8.



**Figure 6-8.** Video clip with controls

Note that the display will vary slightly across the different browsers.

The tag for the video element provides other attributes, including a standard width and height and autoplay and preload. Three different source files are indicated in the HTML. The type attribute supplies information on both the video and audio encoding, and you must use the single and double quotation marks. That is, the double quotation marks indicate something within the longer single quote. The browser interprets the HTML starting from the first source element. As soon as the determination is made that this is a file type the browser can display, that file is downloaded to the client computer.

This is the basic way to present video. However, as mentioned earlier, for our quiz application we are going to hide the video until it is time to play it. To do this, we define a style for the video element specifying the visibility as hidden. We also need the video clip to be on top of any other elements, including the elements created dynamically in the code. Placing elements on top of other elements is controlled by the z-index, what you might consider the third dimension after x and y. To do this we need the following style:

```
#vid {position: absolute; visibility: hidden; z-index: 0; }
```

This style specifies the original settings. The code will change it when it is time to play the video. #vid refers to the id of the video element.

```
<video id="vid" controls="controls" preload="auto">
<source src="sfire3.mp4" type='video/mp4; codecs="avc1.42E01E, mp4a.40.2"'>
<source src="sfire3.theora.ogv" type='video/ogg; codecs="theora, vorbis"'>
<source src="sfire3.webmvp8.webm" type="video/webm; codec="vp8, vorbis'">
Your browser does not accept the video tag.
</video>
```

We not only want the video to appear, we also want it to be on top of everything else. To do this, we will modify the z-index. Think of z as the dimension coming out of the screen toward the user.

Note that the position is never changed, but the z-index only works if position has been specified in a style.

When the code calculates that it is time for the video clip, it changes the visibility and the z-index and then invokes the play method.

```
v = document.getElementById("vid");
v.style.visibility = "visible";
v.style.zIndex = "10000";
v.play();
```

*Tip: CSS has its own language, sometimes involving hyphens in terms. The CSS term for expressing how elements are layered on the screen is z-index; the JavaScript term is zIndex.*

With this considerable JavaScript, HTML, and CSS knowledge, we are now ready to describe the details of the quiz application.

## Building the application and making it your own

The knowledge base for the quiz is represented in the facts variable, which is an array of arrays. If you want to change the quiz to another topic, one that consists of pairs of names or other text, you just need to change facts. Of course, you also need to change the text that appears as an h1 element in the body element to let the player know the category of questions. I defined a variable named nq, for number in each quiz (the number of pairs to appear onscreen) to be 4. You can, of course, change this value if you want to present a different number of pairs to the player. The other variables are used for the original positions of the blocks and to hold status information, such as whether it's a first click or a second click.

I created three functions for this application: init, setupgame and pickelement. I could have combined init and setupgame, but made them separate to facilitate a replay button. Table 6-3 describes these functions and what they call or are called by.

**Table 6-3.** Functions in the Quiz Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
init	Invoked by the action of the onLoad in the <body> tag	setupgame
setupgame	called by init	
pickelement	Called as a result of the addEventListener calls in setupgame	

The setupgame function is where the HTML is created for the blocks. Briefly, an expression using Math.random is evaluated to pick one of the rows in the facts array. If that row has been used, the code tries again. When an unused row is found, it is marked as used (the third element, index value 2) and the blocks are created.

An alternative approach would be to remove a used fact from the array and to keep going until all rows have been chosen. Look back to the use of splice in Chapter 4 for an idea of how you could achieve this.

The block for the capital is placed randomly in one of the four available slots. This produces the countries and capital cities in two columns, but mixed up. The `pickElement` function does one thing if it is a first click and another if it is a second click, determined by the value of `makingMove`, which starts off being false and then is set to true at a first click.

Table 6-4 supplies a line-by-line explanation of the code.

**Table 6-4.** The Complete Code for the First Quiz Application

Code	Explanation
<code>&lt;html&gt;</code>	Starting <code>html</code> tag
<code>&lt;head&gt;</code>	Starting <code>head</code> tag
<code>&lt;title&gt;Quiz&lt;/title&gt;</code>	Complete <code>title</code> element
<code>&lt;style&gt;</code>	Start of <code>style</code> section
<code>.thing {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: 2px; border-style: double; background-color: white; margin: 5px; padding: 5px; }</code>	A style for all elements of the class <code>thing</code> . The original position is at the top, left corner of the window. There's a thick border and a white background color.
<code>&lt;/style&gt;</code>	End of <code>style</code> element
<code>&lt;script&gt;</code>	Start <code>script</code> element
<code>var facts = [</code>	Start of declaration of the <code>facts</code> variable, array of arrays
<code>["China", "Beijing", false],</code>	Each row is a complete array, 3 elements, country, capital, false
	The <code>false</code> field will be changed if this row is chosen to be presented
<code>["India", "New Delhi", false],</code>	
<code>["European Union", "Brussels", false],</code>	
<code>["United States", "Washington, DC", false],</code>	

Code	Explanation
["Indonesia", "Jakarta", false],	
["Brazil", "Brasilia", false],	
["Russia", "Moscow", false],	
["Japan", "Tokyo", false],	
["Mexico", "Mexico City", false],	
["Germany", "Berlin", false],	
["Turkey", "Ankara", false],	
["France", "Paris", false],	
["United Kingdom", "London", false],	
["Italy", "Rome", false],	
["South Africa", "Pretoria", false],	
["South Korea", "Seoul", false],	
["Argentina", "Buenos Aires", false],	
["Canada", "Ottawa", false],	
["Saudi Arabia", "Riyadh", false],	
["Australia", "Canberra", false]	
];	Closing the array
var thingelem;	Variable declaration for created elements
var nq = 4;	Number of pairs presented to the player
var elementinmotion;	Variable to hold the first element clicked on
var makingmove = false;	Variable to distinguish first click situation and second click situation

Code	Explanation
var inbetween = 300;	Variable holding the distance between the original two columns
var col1 = 20;	Variable holding the horizontal position of the first column
var row1 = 200;	Variable holding the vertical position of the first row
var rowsize = 50;	Variable holding the height of a row (the block itself and the spacing) for creation of all the rows
var slots = new Array(nq);	An array variable to hold which slots in the right column have been filled
function init(){	Start of init function
setupgame();	Invoked setupgame();
}	Close of init function
function setupgame() {	Start of setupgame function
var i;	Variable used for the for loops
var c;	Variable used for the choice of row (inner array) of facts
var s;	Variable used for choice of slots
var mx = col1;	Variable holding the horizontal position
var my = row1;	Variable holding the initial vertical position
var d;	Variable holding the created html element
var uniqueid;	Variable holding the created id
for (i=0;i<facts.length;i++) {	Start of a for loop to mark all facts as not being used
facts[i][2] = false;	Set (reset) the third value, index 2, to be false
}	Close the for loop
for (i=0;i<nq;i++) {	Start of a for loop to set all the slots to unused

Code	Explanation
slots[i] = -100;	Used values will be 0 to 19
}	Close of for loop
for(i=0;i<nq;i++) { do {c = Math.floor(Math.random()*facts.length);}	Start of for loop to choose nq country/capital pairs Recall our nq is set to 4, 4 country-capital pairs
while (facts[c][2]==true) facts[c][2]=true;	Start of do/while loop. What is in the brackets is done at least once. The variable c is set to a random value 0 to 1 less than the length of the array.
uniqueid = "c"+String(c); d = document.createElement('country');	Do this again if this inner array (country/capital pair) has been chosen
d.innerHTML = (	Outside of loop, now set this country/capital pair array as being used
"<div class='thing' id='"+uniqueid+"'>placeholder</div>"); document.body.appendChild(d);	Construct the id for the country block Create an html element of type country Add this element to the document as a child of the body element
thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);	Get a pointer to the element just created
thingelem.textContent=→ facts[c][0];	Set its textContent to the country name
thingelem.style.top =→ String(my)+"px";	Position it vertically by changing the top style
thingelem.style.left =→ String(mx)+"px";	... and horizontally by changing the left style

Code	Explanation
thingelem.addEventListener('click', pickelement, false);	Set up to listen for the click event
uniqueid = "p"+String(c);	Now construct the id for the capital block
d = document.createElement('cap');	Create a new element
d.innerHTML = (  "<div class='thing' id='"+uniqueid+"'>placeholder</div>");	Set its innerHTML to be  a div, class thing, with the id. placeholder will be changed
document.body.appendChild(d);	Add this to the document as a child to the body element
thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);	Get a pointer to the thing element
thingelem.textContent=facts[c][1];	Set its textContent to the capital city name
do {s = Math.floor( (Math.random()*nq);}	Start a do while loop, the code in brackets is executed at least once. Determine a random choice from empty slots.
while (slots[s]>=0)	But repeat if this slot IS already taken
slots[s]=c;	Store away the country/capital number
thingelem.style.top = String( (row1+s*rowsize)+"px";	Position this block according to formula based on which slot and rowsize vertically
thingelem.style.left = String( (col1+inbetween)+"px";	Position this block horizontally in the second column (inbetween over from col1)
thingelem.addEventListener('click', pickelement, false);	Set up to listen for the click event
my +=rowsize;	Increase the my value to prepare for the next block
}	Close loop

Code	Explanation
document.f.score.value = "0";	Set score to 0
return false;	This is done to prevent an HTML reloading of the page
}	Close <code>setupgame</code> function
function pickelement(ev) {	Start of <code>pickelement</code> function
var thisx;	Variable to hold the horizontal position of this element (the element that received the <code>click</code> event)
var thisxn;	Variable to hold the number represented by <code>thisx</code> , which is text
if (makingmove) {	Is this a second click?
thisx= this.style.left;	Set <code>thisx</code>
thisx = thisx.substring(0, thisx.length-2);	Remove the px from the string.
thisxn = Number(thisx) + 110;	Turn <code>this</code> into a number and then add fudge factor to position the element first clicked to the right of this element
elementinmotion.style.left = String(thisxn)+"px";	<code>elementinmotion</code> holds the first click element. position it horizontally to the calculated <code>thisxn</code> value.
elementinmotion.style.top = this.style.top;	Position it vertically the same as the <code>this</code> element
makingmove = false;	Set <code>makingmove</code> back to false
if (this.id.substring(1)==elementinmotion.id.substring(1)) {	Check if this is a match by comparing the ids, after using <code>substring</code> to leave off the first character
elementinmotion.style.backgroundColor = "gold";	If it was a match, change the color of <code>elementinmotion</code> and
this.style.backgroundColor = "gold";	this element
document.f.out.value = "RIGHT";	Output the value RIGHT

Code	Explanation
document.f.score.value = String→ (1+Number(document.f.score.value));	Increment the score (need to change value to number, add 1, and then change back to text)
}	Close if match true clause
else {	Else
document.f.out.value = "WRONG";}	Output the value WRONG
}	Close else clause
else {	If it wasn't a second click
makingmove = true;	Check makingmove
elementinmotion = this;	Save this element in the elementinmotion variable
}	End else clause
}	End pickelement
</script>	End script
</head>	End head
<body onLoad="init();">	Start body tag. Set up call to init on loading.
<h1>G20 Countries and→ capitals </h1> 	Heading on the screen
Click on country or capital→ and then click on corresponding→ capital or country.	Directions
<p>	Paragraph
Reload for new game.	Directions
<form name="f" >	Start of form
Action: <input name="out" type=→ "text" value="RIGHT OR WRONG"/>	Text label and then input field

Code	Explanation
Score: <input name="score" type="text" value="0"/>	Text label and then input field
</form>	Close form
</p>	Close paragraph
</body>	Close body
</html>	Close html

The first step to making this application your own is to choose the content of your quiz. It needs to be pairs of values. The values here are names, held in text, but they could be numbers, or numbers and text. You also could create `img` tags and use the information kept in the array to set the `src` values of `img` elements. More complicated, but still doable is to incorporate audio. Start simple, with something resembling the G20 facts, and then be more daring.

You can change the look of the application by modifying the original HTML and/or the created HTML. You can modify or add to the CSS section.

You can easily change the number of questions, or change the four-question game to a four-question round and make a new round happen automatically after a certain number of guesses or when clicking on a button. You would need to decide if country/capital pairs are to be repeated from round to round.

You can also incorporate a time feature. There are two general approaches: keep track of time and simply display it when the player completes a game/round successfully (see the memory games in Chapter 5) or impose a time limit. The first approach allows someone to compete with themselves but imposes no significant pressure. The second does put pressure on the player and you can decrease the allowed time for successive rounds. It could be implemented using the `setTimeout` command.

Table 6-5 shows the code for the second version of the game, which includes changing a first selection to tan, and the video. As was the case in other chapters with multiple versions, think about what is the same in this game, and what we've changed or added.

**Table 6-5.** The Complete Code for the Second Version of the Quiz Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Quiz (multiple videos)</title>	
<style>	

Code	Explanation
<pre>.thing {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: 2px; border-style: double; background-color: white; margin: 5px; padding: 5px; }</pre>	
<pre>#vid {position: absolute; visibility: hidden; z-index: 0; }</pre>	Style for the video element.
<pre>&lt;/style&gt;</pre>	
<pre>&lt;script type="text/javascript"&gt;</pre>	
<pre>  var facts = [</pre>	
<pre>    ["China", "Beijing", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["India", "New Delhi", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["European Union", "Brussels", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["United States", "Washington, DC", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Indonesia", "Jakarta", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Brazil", "Brasilia", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Russia", "Moscow", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Japan", "Tokyo", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Mexico", "Mexico City", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Germany", "Berlin", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Turkey", "Ankara", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["France", "Paris", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["United Kingdom", "London", false],</pre>	
<pre>    ["Italy", "Rome", false],</pre>	

Code	Explanation
["South Africa", "Pretoria", false],	
["South Korea", "Seoul", false],	
["Argentina", "Buenos Aires", false],	
["Canada", "Ottawa", false],	
["Saudi Arabia", "Riyadh", false],	
["Australia", "Canberra", false]	
];	
var thingelem;	
var nq = 4;	
var elementinmotion;	
var makingmove = false;	
var inbetween = 300;	
var col1 = 20;	
var row1 = 200;	
var rowsize = 50;	
var slots = new Array(nq);	
function init(){	
setupgame();	
}	
function setupgame() {	
var i;	

Code	Explanation
var c;	
var s;	
var mx = col1;	
var my = row1;	
var d;	
var uniqueid;	
for (i=0;i<facts.length;i++) {	
facts[i][2] = false;	
}	
for (i=0;i<nq;i++) {	
slots[i] = -100;	
}	
for(i=0;i<nq;i++) {	
do {c = Math.floor(	
(Math.random()*facts.length);}	
while (facts[c][2]==true)	
facts[c][2]=true;	
uniqueid = "c"+String(c);	
d = document.createElement('country');	
d.innerHTML = (	
"<div class='thing' id='"+uniqueid+"'>placeholder</div>");	

Code	Explanation
document.body.appendChild(d);	
thingelem = document.➥ getElementById(uniqueid);	
thingelem.textContent=facts[c][0];	
thingelem.style.top =➥ String(my)+"px";	
thingelem.style.left =➥ String(mx)+"px";	
thingelem.addEventListener➥ ('click',pickelement,false);	
uniqueid = "p"+String(c);	
d = document.createElement➥ ('cap');	
d.innerHTML = (	
<div class='thing'➥ id='"+uniqueid+"'>placeholder</div>");	
document.body.appendChild(d);	
thingelem = document.➥ getElementById(uniqueid);	
thingelem.textContent=facts[c][1];	
do {s = Math.floor➥ (Math.random()*nq);}	
while (slots[s]>=0)	
slots[s]=c;	
thingelem.style.top =➥ String(row1+s*rowsize)+"px";	

Code	Explanation
thingelem.style.left = String(col1+inbetween)+"px";	
thingelem.addEventListener('click',pickelement,false);	
my +=rowsize;	
}	
document.f.score.value = "0";	
return false;	
}	
function pickelement(ev) {	
var thisx;	
var thisxn;	
var sc;	Variable for the number of correct matches
if (makingmove) {	
if (this==elementinmotion) {	Check that the player hasn't clicked twice on the same block
elementinmotion.style.backgroundColor = "white";	If so, reset color to white
makingmove = false;	Reset makingmove
return;	Return
}	Close if clause
thisx= this.style.left;	
thisx = thisx.substring(0,thisx.length-2);	

Code	Explanation
thisxn = Number(thissx) + 115;	
elementinmotion.style.left = String(thisxn)+"px";	
elementinmotion.style.top = this.style.top;	
makingmove = false;	
if (this.id.substring(1)== elementinmotion.id.substring(1)) {	
elementinmotion. style.backgroundColor = "gold";	
this.style. backgroundColor = "gold";	
document.f.out.value = "RIGHT";	
sc = 1+Number (document.f.score.value);	Pick up the score, convert to number, and increment by 1
document.f.score .value = String(sc);	
if (sc==nq) {	If game over
v = document .getElementById("vid");	...find video element
v.style .visibility = "visible";	...set visibility to visible
v.style.zIndex="10000";	...set zIndex to a very big number
v.play();	...play the video
}	...close if clause

Code	Explanation
}	
else {  document.f.out➥	
.value = "WRONG";  elementinmotion➥	
style.backgroundColor = "white";  }	
}	
else {  makingmove = true;	
elementinmotion = this;  elementinmotion.style➥	
backgroundColor = "tan";  }	Set first block color to tan
}	
}	
</script>	
</head>	
<body onLoad="init();">	
<h1>G20 Countries and capitals </h1> 	
Click on country or capital and then➥ click on corresponding capital or country.	
<p>	
Reload for new game.	
<form name="f" >	

Code	Explanation
Action: <code>&lt;input name="out" type="text" value="RIGHT OR WRONG"/&gt;</code>	
Score: <code>&lt;input name="score" type="text" value="0"/&gt;</code>	
</form>	
</p>	
<video id="vid" controls="controls" preload="auto">	Video with controls
<source src="sfire3.mp4" type='video/mp4; codecs="avc1.42E01E, mp4a.40.2"'>	Source for the mp4 file
<source src="sfire3.theora.ogv" type='video/ogg; codecs="theora, vorbis"'>	Source for the ogv file
<source src="sfire3.webmvp8.webm" type='video/webm; codec="vp8, vorbis"'>	Source for the webm file
Your browser does not accept the video tag.	Message to noncompliant browsers
</video>	Closing tag
</body>	
</html>	

To make this game your own, consider other questions from geography or even other entirely different categories. As suggested earlier, you can make one or both of the pairs of information images. The video treat can vary depending on the content or even the player's performance.

You can identify links to web sites that discuss the facts or to Google map locations as mini-awards for correct answers—or as clues.

You may not like the way the quiz blocks remain on the screen while the video is showing. You can remove them using a loop that makes each element invisible. Look ahead to the Hangman application in Chapter 9 for ideas.

## Testing and uploading the application

The random feature of the game does not impact the testing. If you wish, you can substitute fixed choices after the `Math.random` coding, do the bulk of the testing, and then remove these lines of code and test again. The important thing to do for this and similar games is to make sure your testing involves both correct guesses and incorrect guesses. You also need to click on the country name first and then the capital, and then do it the other way. Check the color changes and the scores. If you add a *new round* feature, make sure that the score remains or is reset as you want.

*Warning: The player can cheat! There is no check to prevent the player from repeating a correct move. See if you can make this improvement in the coding. You can add a new element to the inner arrays in facts to mark a correctly answered question.*

The basic G20 game is complete in the HTML file (which you can download from [www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html](http://www.friendsofed.com/downloads.html)). The game with the video reward requires you to download the video from the Friends of Ed site or use your own. To play your own choice of video, you must:

- create or acquire the video
- produce the different versions, assuming you want to support the different browsers
- upload all the files to the server

You may need to work with your server staff to make sure the different video types are properly specified. This involves something called the **htaccess** file. HTML5 still is new and this way of featuring video on web pages may be new to the server support crews.

Alternatively, you can identify video already online and use absolute URLs as the `src` attributes in the source elements in the video elements.

## Summary

In this chapter, we implemented a simple quiz that asked a player to match the names of countries and capitals. The application used the following programming techniques and HTML5 features:

- creating HTML during runtime using `document.createElement`, `document.getElementById`, and `document.body.appendChild`
- setting up event handling for the mouse `click` event using `addEventListener`
- changing color of objects on the screen using code to change CSS settings
- an array of arrays to hold the quiz content
- `for` loops for iterating over the array
- `do-while` loops to make a random choice of an unused question set
- `substring` for determining a correct match
- video and source elements for displaying video encoded in formats acceptable by different browsers

You can make use of dynamically created and repositioned HTML along with the drawing on canvas that you learned in the previous chapters. The implementation of Hangman, described in Chapter 9, does just that. You can use video as a small part of an application, as was done here, or as the major part of a web site. In the next chapter we return to drawing on canvas as we build a maze and then travel through it.



## Chapter 7



# Mazes

---

In this chapter, we will cover

- responding to mouse events
- calculation of collision between circles and lines
- responding to the arrow keys
- form input
- encoding, saving, decoding, and restoring information from local storage using `try` and `catch` for testing if coding is recognized
- using `join` and `split` to encode and decode information
- using `javascript:` in a button to invoke functions
- radio buttons

## Introduction

In this chapter, we'll continue our exploration of programming techniques and HTML5 and JavaScript features, this time using programs that build and traverse mazes. Players will have the ability to draw a set of walls to make up a maze. They will be able to save and load their mazes, and to traverse them using collision detection to make sure they don't cross any walls.

The general programming techniques include using arrays for everything that needs to be drawn on the canvas as well as a separate array for the set of walls in the maze. The number of walls is not known before play starts, so a flexible approach is required. Once the maze is constructed, we'll see how to respond to presses of the arrow keys and how to detect collisions between the playing piece—a pentagon-shaped token—and the walls. With HTML5, we can handle mouse events so the player can press the mouse button down and then drag and release the button to define each wall of a maze; respond to the arrow keys to move the token; and save and retrieve the layout of walls on the local computer. As usual, we'll build more than one version of the application. In the first, everything is contained in one HTML file. That is, the player builds a maze, can travel through it, and can optionally save it to the local computer

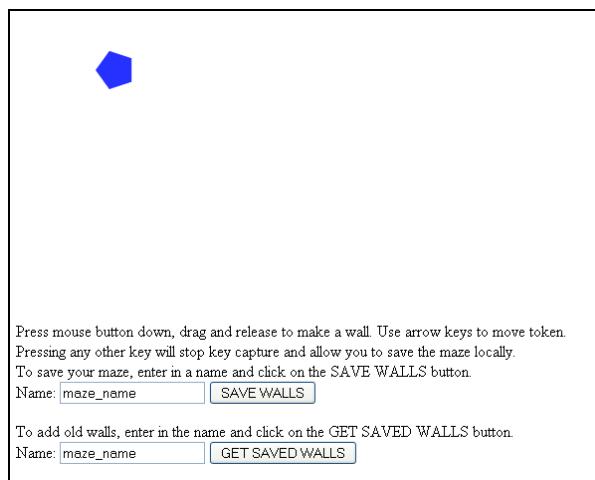
or restore a set of walls saved earlier. In the second version, there's one program to create the mazes and a second file that offers the player a choice of specific mazes to traverse, using radio buttons. Perhaps one person might build the mazes on a given computer and then ask a friend to try traversing them.

HTML5's local storage facility accepts only strings of characters, and so we'll look at how we can use JavaScript to encode the maze information into a character string and then decode it back to rebuild the walls of the maze. The saved information will remain on the computer even after it is turned off.

The individual capabilities we'll discuss in this chapter: building structures, using the arrow keys to move a game piece, checking for collisions, and encoding, saving, and restoring data on the user's computer, can all be reused in a variety of games and design applications.

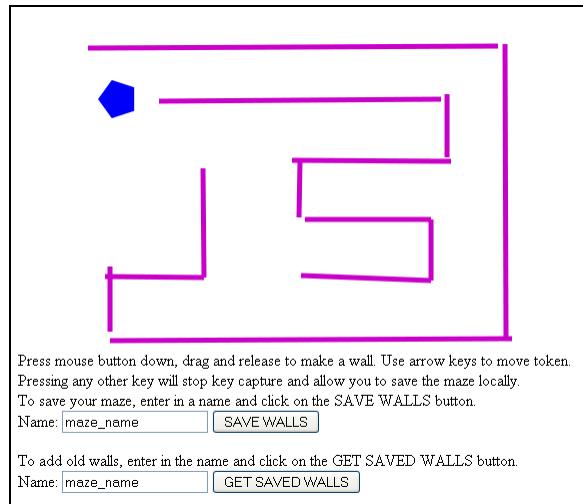
*Note: HTML files are generally called **scripts**, while the term **program** is typically reserved for languages such as Java or C. This is because JavaScript is an interpreted language: the statements are translated one at a time at execution time. In contrast, Java and C programs are compiled, that is, completely translated all at once, with the result stored for later use. Some of us are not so strict and use the terms **script**, **program**, **application**, or, simply, **file** for HTML documents with JavaScript.*

Figure 7-1 shows the opening screen for both the all-in-one program and the first script of the second program.



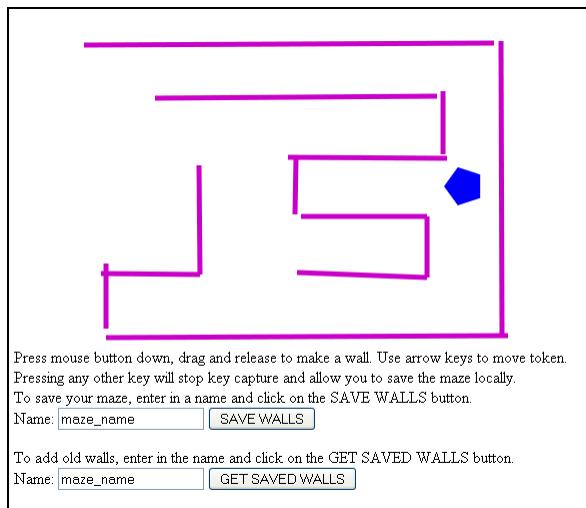
**Figure 7-1.** Opening screen for the maze game

Figure 7-2 shows the screen after some fairly sloppy walls have been placed on the canvas.



**Figure 7-2.** Walls for a maze

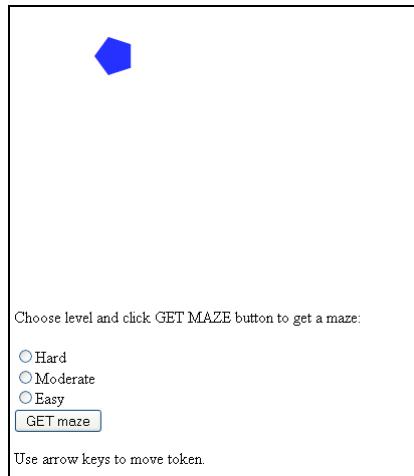
Figure 7-3 shows the screen after the player has used the arrow keys to move the token into the maze.



**Figure 7-3.** Moving the token inside the maze

If the player wants to save a set of walls, he or she types in a name and clicks on the button. To retrieve the walls, which are added to whatever is currently on the canvas, the player types in a name and presses the GET SAVED WALLS button. If there's nothing saved under that name, nothing happens.

The two-script application has the second script present the player with a choice. Figure 7-4 shows the opening screen.

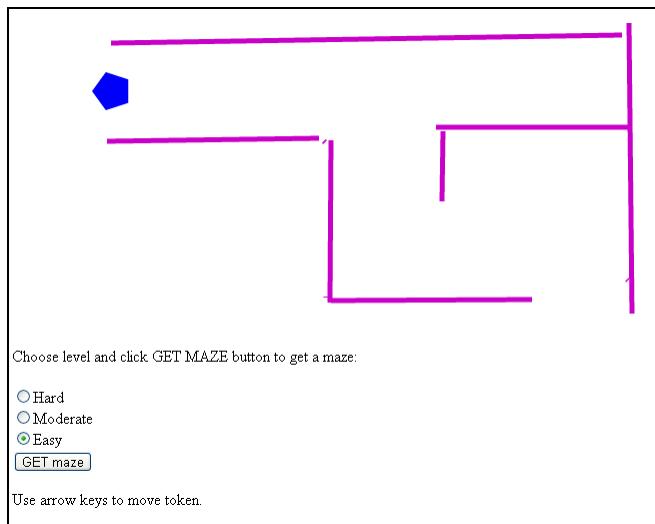


**Figure 7-4.** Opening screen of the travelmaze script

The two-script application assumes that someone has used the first script to create and save three mazes with the specific names used in the second script. Furthermore, the same browser must be used for creating a maze and for the travel maze activities. I do this to demonstrate the local storage facility of HTML5, which is similar to cookies—a way for Web application developers to store information about users.

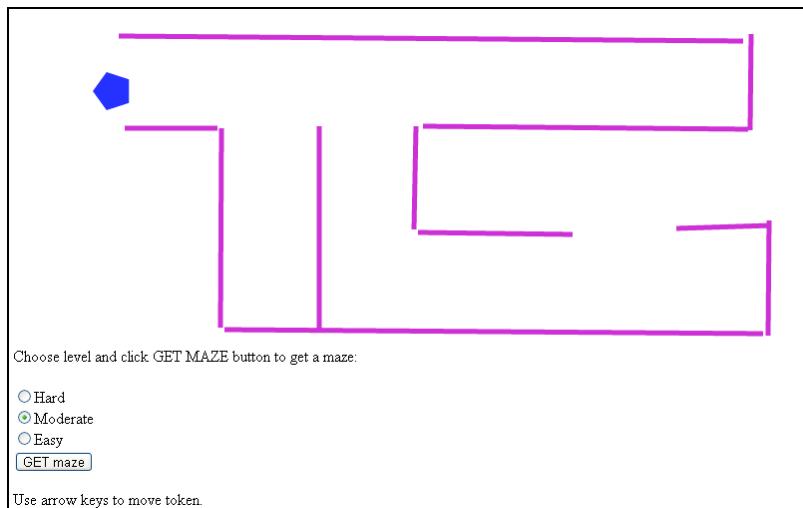
*Note: Cookies, and now HTML5 localStorage, are the basis of what is termed behavioral marketing. They bring convenience to us—we don't have to remember certain items of information such as passwords—but they are also a way to be tracked and the target of sales. I am not taking a position here, just noting the facility.*

Figure 7-5 shows an easy maze.



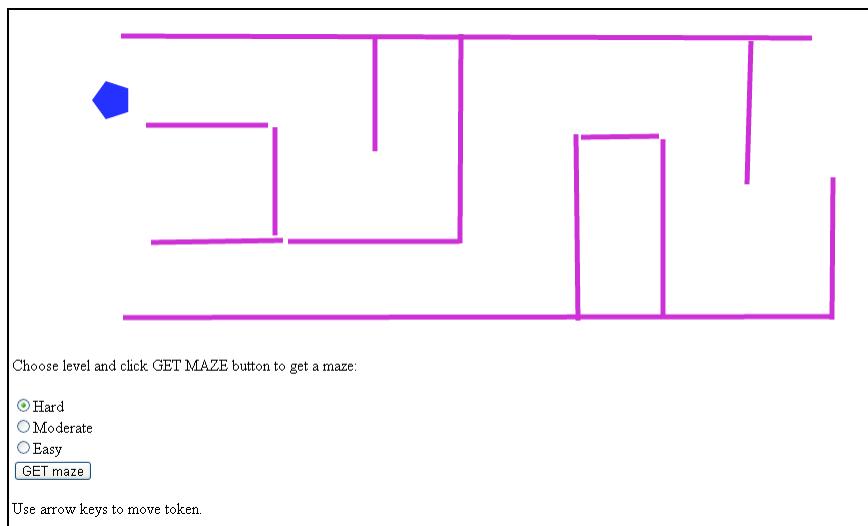
**Figure 7-5.** An easy maze

Figure 7-6 shows a slightly more difficult maze.



**Figure 7-6.** A moderate maze

Figure 7-7 shows a more difficult maze, more difficult mainly because the player needs to move away from the first entry point toward the bottom of the maze to make it through. Of course, it is up to the player/creator to design the mazes.



**Figure 7-7.** A harder maze

One important feature is that in the two-script application, clicking the GET maze button forces the current maze to be erased and the newly selected maze to be drawn. This is different from what happens in either the all-in-one program or the creation part of the second version, when old walls are added to what is present. As has been the case for the other examples, these are just stubs of programs, created to demonstrate HTML5 features and programming techniques. There is much opportunity for improvement to make the projects your own.

## Critical requirements

The maze application requires the display of a constantly updated game board, as new walls are erected and the token is moved.

The maze-building task requires responding to mouse events to collect the information needed to build a wall. The application displays the wall being built.

The maze-traveling task requires responding to the arrow keys to move the token. The game must not allow the token to cross any wall.

The save and retrieve operations require the program to encode the wall information, save it on the local computer, and then retrieve it and use it to create and display the saved walls. Mazes are moderately complex structures: a set of some number of walls, with each wall defined by starting and ending coordinates, that is, pairs of numbers representing x,y positions on the canvas. For the local storage facility to be used, this information has to be turned into a single string of characters.

The two-document version makes use of radio buttons to select a maze.

# HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

Now let's take a look at the specific features of HTML5 and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement the maze application. This builds on material covered in previous chapters: the general structure of an HTML document; using programmer-defined functions, including programmer-defined objects; drawing paths made up of line segments on a canvas element; programmer objects; and arrays. Previous chapters have addressed mouse events on the canvas (the cannonball and slingshot games in Chapter 4 and the memory game in Chapter 5) and mouse events on HTML elements (the quiz games in Chapter 6). New features we'll be covering include a different type of event: getting input from a player pressing on the arrow keys, called *keystroke capture*; and using local storage to save information on the local computer, even after the browser has been closed and the computer turned off. Remember, you can skip ahead to the "Building the Application" section to see all the code with comments and return to this section to read explanations of individual features and techniques.

## Representation of walls and the token

To start, we'll define a function, `Wall`, to define a wall object, and another function, `Token`, to define a token object. We'll define these functions in a more general manner than required by this application, but I believe this is okay: the generality does not affect much, if anything, in terms of performance, while giving us the freedom to use the code for other applications, such as a game with different playing pieces. I chose the pentagon shape because I liked it, and use `mypent` as the variable name for the playing piece.

The properties defined for a wall consist of the start and finish points specified by the mouse actions. I name these `sx`, `sy`, `fx`, and `fy`. The wall also has a `width` and a `strokestyle` string, and a `draw` method is specified as `drawAline`. The reason this is more general than necessary is because all walls will have the same width and style string, and all will use the `drawAline` function. When it comes time to save the walls to local storage, I save only the `sx`, `sy`, `fx`, and `fy` values. You can use the same techniques to encode more information if and when you write other programs and need to store values.

The token that moves around the maze is defined by a call to the `Token` function. This function is similar to the `Polygon` function defined for the polygon memory game. The `Token` function stores the center of the token, `sx` and `sy`, along with a radius (`rad`), number of sides (`n`), a `fillstyle`, and it links to the `drawtoken` function for the `draw` method and the `movetoken` function for the `moveit` method. In addition, a property named `angle` is computed immediately as  $(2 * \text{Math.PI}) / n$ . Recall that in the radian system for measuring angles,  $2 * \text{Math.PI}$  represents a full circle, so this number divided by the number of sides will be the angle from the center to the ends of each side.

As was the case with previous applications (see Chapter 4), after an object is created, the code adds it to the `everything` array. I also add all walls to the `walls` array. It is this array that is used to save the wall information to local storage.

## Mouse events to build and position a wall

Recall that in previous chapters we used HTML5 and JavaScript to define an event and specify an event handler. The `init` function contains code that sets up event handling for the player pressing the main mouse button, moving the mouse, and releasing the button.

```
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');
canvas1.addEventListener('mousedown', startwall, false);
```

```
canvas1.addEventListener('mousemove',stretchwall,false);
canvas1.addEventListener('mouseup',finish,false);
```

We'll also use a variable called `inmotion` to keep track of whether or not the mouse button is down. The `startwall` function determines the mouse coordinates (see Chapters 4 and 5 for accessing the mouse coordinates after an event), creates a new `Wall` object with a reference stored in the global variable `curwall`, adds the wall to the `everything` array, draws all the items in `everything`, and sets `inmotion` to be true. If `inmotion` is not true, then the `stretchwall` function returns immediately without doing anything. If `inmotion` is true, the code gets the mouse coordinates and uses them to set the `fx` and  values of `curwall`. This happens over and over as the player moves the mouse with the button pressed down. When the button is released, the function `finish` is called. This function sets `inmotion` back to false and adds the `curwall` to an array called `walls`.

## Detecting the arrow keys

Detecting that a key on the keyboard has been pressed and determining which one is called *capturing* a key stroke. This is another type of event that HTML5 and JavaScript can handle. We need to set up a response to a key event, which is analogous to setting up a response to a mouse event. The coding starts with invoking the `addEventListener` method, this time for the `window`:

```
window.addEventListener('keydown',getkeyAndMove,false);
```

The `window` is the object that holds the document defined by the HTML file. The third parameter, which could be omitted because `false` is the default, relates to the order of responding to the event by other objects. It isn't an issue for this application.

This means the `getkeyAndMove` function will be invoked if and when a key is pressed.

*Tip: Event handling is a big part of programming. Event-based programming is often more complex than demonstrated in this book. For example, you may need to consider if a contained object or a containing object also should respond to the event, or what to do if the user has multiple windows open. Devices such as cell phones can detect events such as tilting or shaking or using your fingers to stroke the screen. Incorporating video may involve invoking certain actions when the video is complete. HTML5 JavaScript is not totally consistent in handling events (setting up a time out or a time interval does not use `addEventListener`), but at this point, you know enough to do research to identify the event you want, try multiple possibilities to figure out what the event needs to be associated with (e.g., the `window` or a `canvas` element or some other object), and then write the function to be the event handler.*

Now, as you may expect at this point, the coding to get the information for which key was pressed involves different code for different browsers. The following code, with two ways to get the number corresponding to the key, works in all current browsers recognizing other new features in HTML5:

```
if(event == null)
{
    keyCode = window.event.keyCode;
    window.event.preventDefault();
}
else
```

```
{
  keyCode = event.keyCode;
  event.preventDefault();
}
```

The preventDefault method does what it sounds like: prevents any default action, such as a special shortcut action that is associated with the particular key in the particular browser. The only keys of interest in this application are the arrow keys. The following switch statement moves the Token referenced by the variable mypent; that is, the location information is changed so that the next time everything is drawn, the token will move. (This isn't quite true. The moveit function contains a collision check to make sure we don't hit any walls first, but that will be described later.)

```
switch(keyCode)
{
  case 37: //left arrow
    mypent.moveit(-unit,0);
    break;
  case 38: //up arrow
    mypent.moveit(0,-unit);
    break;
  case 39: //right arrow
    mypent.moveit(unit,0);
    break;
  case 40: //down arrow
    mypent.moveit(0,unit);
    break;
  default:
    window.removeEventListener('keydown',getkeyAndMove,false);
}
```

*Tip: Do put comments in your code as demonstrated by the comments indicating the keyCode for the different arrow keys. The examples in this book don't have comments because I've supplied an explanation for every line of code in the relevant tables, so this is a case of do as I say, not as I (mostly) do. Comments are critical for team projects and for reminding you of what's going on when you return to old work. In JavaScript, you can use the // to indicate that the rest of the line is a comment or surround multiple lines with /\* and \*/. Comments are ignored by the JavaScript interpreter.*

How did I know that the keycode for the left arrow was 37? You can look up keycodes on the Web (for example, [www.w3.org/2002/09/tests/keys.html](http://www.w3.org/2002/09/tests/keys.html)) or you can write code that issues an alert statement:

```
alert(" You just pressed keycode "+keyCode);
```

The default action for our maze application, which occurs when the key is not one of the four arrow keys, stops event handling on key strokes. The assumption here is that the player wants to type in a name to save or retrieve wall information to or from local storage. In many applications, the appropriate action to take would be a message, possibly using alert, to let the user know what the expected keys are.

## Collision detection: token and any wall

To traverse a maze, the player must not move the token across any wall. We will enforce this restriction by writing a function, `intersect`, that returns true if a circle with given center and radius intersects a line segment. For this task, we need to be exacting in our language: a line segment is part of a line, going from `sx`, `sy` to `fx`, `fy`. Each wall corresponds to a finite line segment. The line itself is infinite. The `intersect` function is called for each wall in the array `walls`.

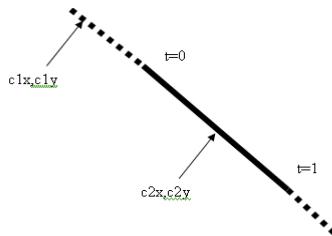
*Tip: My explanation of the mathematics in the intersection calculation is fairly brief, but may be daunting if you haven't done any math in a while. Feel free to skip over it and accept the coding as is if you don't want to work through it.*

The `intersect` function is based on the idea of a parameterized line. Specifically, the parameterized form of a line is (writing mathematical formula, as opposed to code)

Equation a:  $x = sx + t*(fx-sx);$

Equation b:  $y = sy + t*(fy-sy);$

As parameter  $t$  goes from 0 to 1, the  $x$  and  $y$  take on the corresponding values of  $x$ ,  $y$  on the line segment. The goal is to determine if a circle with center  $cx, cy$  and radius  $rad$  overlaps the line segment. One way to do this is to determine the closest point on the line to  $cx, cy$  and see if the distance from that point is less than  $rad$ . In Figure 7-8, you see a sketch of part of a line with the line segment depicted with a solid line and the rest of what is shown of the line indicated by dots. The value of  $t$  at one end is 0 and the other end is 1. There are two points  $c1x, c1y$  and  $c2x, c2y$ . The  $c1x, c1y$  point is closest to the line outside the critical line segment. The point  $c2x, c2y$  is closest somewhere in the middle of the line segment. The value of  $t$  would be between 0 and 1.



**Figure 7-8.** A line segment and two points

The formula for the distance between the two points  $(x,y)$  and  $(cx, cy)$  is

$$\text{distance} = \sqrt{((cx-x)*(cx-x)+(cy-y)*(cy-y))} . 5$$

Substituting for  $x$  and for  $y$  using equations a and b, we get a formula for distance.

$$\text{Equation c: distance} = \sqrt{((cx-sx+t*(fx-sx))*(cx-sx+t*(fx-sx))+(cy-sy+t*(fy-sy))*(cy-sy+t*(fy-sy)))} . 5$$

For our purposes, we want to determine the value of  $t$  when distance is at a minimum. Lessons from calculus and reasoning about minimum versus maximum in this situation tell us first that we can use the distance squared in place of the distance and so avoid taking square roots. Moreover, the value is at a minimum when the derivative (with respect to  $t$ ) is zero. Taking the derivative and setting that expression to zero, produces the value of  $t$  at which the  $cx, cy$  is closest to the line. In the code, we define two extra variables,  $dx$  and  $dy$ , to make the expressions simpler.

```
dx = fx-sx
dy = fy-sy;
t= 0.0 -((sx-cx)*dx+(xy-cy)*dy)/((dx*dx)+(dy*dy))
```

This will produce a value for  $t$ . The 0.0 is used to force the calculations to be done as floating point numbers (numbers with fractional parts, not restricted to whole numbers).

We use equations  $a$  and  $b$  to get the  $x, y$  point corresponding to the value of  $t$ . This is the  $x, y$  closest to  $cx, cy$ . If the value of  $t$  is less than 0, we check the value for  $t = 0$ , and if it is more than 1, we check the value for  $t = 1$ . This means that the closest point was not a point on the line segment, so we will check the appropriate end of the line segment closest to that point.

Is the distance from  $cx, cy$  to the closest point close enough to be called a collision? We again use distance squared and not distance. We evaluate the distance squared from  $cx, cy$  to the computed  $x, y$ . If it is less than the radius squared, there is an intersection of the circle with the line segment. If not, there is no intersection. Using the distance squared does not make a difference: if there is a minimum for the value squared, then there is a minimum for the value.

Now the very good news here is that most of the equations are not part of the coding. I did the work beforehand of determining the expression for the derivative. The `intersect` function follows, with comments:

```
function intersect(sx,sy,fx,fy,cx,cy,rad) {
  var dx;
  var dy;
  var t;
  var rt;
  dx = fx-sx;
  dy = fy-sy;
  t = 0.0 -((sx-cx)*dx+(sy-cy)*dy)/((dx*dx)+(dy*dy)); //closest t
  if (t<0.0) { //closest beyond the line segment at the start
    t=0.0; }
  else if (t>1.0) { //closest beyond the line segment at the end
    t = 1.0;
  }

  dx = (sx+t*(fx-sx))-cx; // use t to define an x coordinate
  dy = (sy +t*(fy-sy))-cy; // use t to define a y coordinate
  rt = (dx*dx)+(dy*dy); //distance squared
  if (rt<(rad*rad)) { // closer than radius squared?
    return true; } // intersect
else {
```

```
        return false; } // does not intersect
}
```

In our application, the player presses an arrow key and, based on that key, the next position of the token is calculated. We call the `intersect` function to see if there would be an intersection of the token (approximated as a circle) and a wall. If `intersect` returns `true`, the token is not moved. The checking stops as soon as there is an intersection. This is a common technique for collision checking.

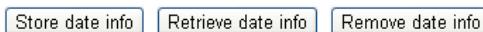
## Using local storage

The Web was originally designed for files being downloaded from the server to the local, so-called client computer for viewing, but with no permanent storage on the local computer. Over time, people and organizations building web sites decided that some sort of local storage would be advantageous. So, someone came up with the idea of using small files called *cookies* to keep track of things, such as user IDs stored for the convenience of the user as well as the web site owner. The use of cookies, Flash's shared objects, and now HTML5 local storage has grown considerably with the commercial Web. Unlike the situation for the applications shown here, the user often does not know that information is being stored and by whom, and for what purpose the information is accessed.

The `localStorage` facility of HTML5 is browser-specific. That is, a maze saved using Chrome is not available to someone using FireFox.

Let's take a closer look at using local storage by examining a small application that saves date and time information. Local storage and the `Date` function, introduced in Chapter 1, provide a way to store date/time information. Think of local storage as a database in which strings of characters are stored, each under a specific name. The name is called the *key*, the string itself is the *value*, and the system is called *key/value pairs*. The fact that local storage just stores strings is a restriction, but the next section shows how to work around it.

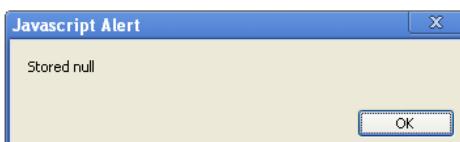
Figure 7-9 shows a screen shot from the opening screen of a simple date saving application.



```
Store date info   Retrieve date info   Remove date info
```

**Figure 7-9.** A simple save date application

The user has three options: store information on the current date and time, retrieve the last information saved, and remove the date information. Figure 7-10 shows what happens when clicking “Retrieve date info” the very first time using this application (or after the date has been removed).



```
Store date info   Retrieve date info   Remove date info
```

Javascript Alert  
Stored null  
OK

**Figure 7-10.** Data not yet saved or after removal

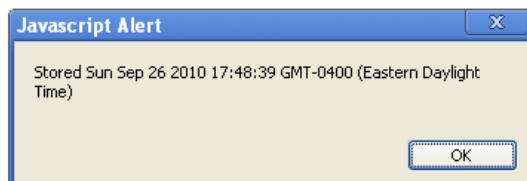
Our application uses a JavaScript alert box to show a message. The user needs to click the OK button to remove the alert box from the screen.

Figure 7-11 shows the message after a user clicks the Store date info button.



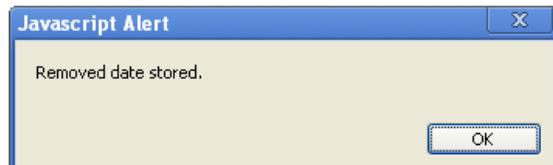
**Figure 7-11.** After storing date information

If the user later clicks on the Retrieve date info button, he'll see a message similar to Figure 7-12.



**Figure 7-12.** Retrieving the stored date information

You can give your players a way to remove the stored information using a Remove date info button. Figure 7-13 shows the result.



**Figure 7-13.** After removing stored information

HTML5 lets you save, fetch, and remove a key/value pair, using methods for the built-in object `localStorage`.

The command `localStorage.setItem("lastdate",olddate)` sets up a new key/value pair or replaces any previous one with the key equal to `lastdate`. The statement

```
last = localStorage.getItem("lastdate");
```

assigns the fetched value to the variable `last`. In the code for our simple example, we just display the results. You can also check for something being null and provide a friendlier message.

The command `localStorage.removeItem("lastdate")` removes the key/value pair with `lastdate` as the key.

For our simple date application, we set the `onClick` attribute of each button object to be some JavaScript code. For example:

```
<button onClick="javascript:store();">Store date info. </button>
```

causes `store()` to be invoked when the button is clicked.

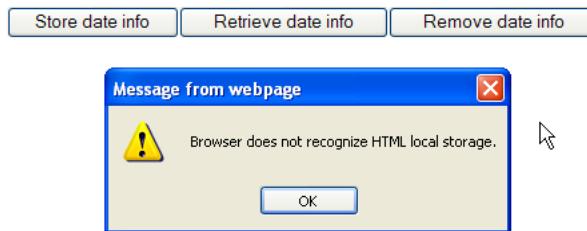
You may be wondering if anyone can read any of the saved information in local storage. The answer is that access to each key/value pair in `localStorage` (and in other types of cookies) is restricted to the Web site that stored the information. This is a security feature.

The Chrome browser allows testing of local storage with HTML5 scripts stored on the local computer. Firefox does not. This means that to test these applications in Firefox, you'll need to upload the file to a server.

Because browsers may not support local storage or there may be other problems such as exceeding limits set by the user for local storage and cookies, it is a good practice to include some error checking. You can use the JavaScript function `typeof` to check if `localStorage` is accepted by the browser:

```
if (typeof(localStorage)=="undefined")
```

Figure 7-14 shows the result of loading the date application and clicking on the `Store date info` button in an old version of Internet Explorer. (By the time you read this book, the latest version of IE may be out and this will not be a problem.)



**Figure 7-14.** The browser didn't recognize `localStorage`.

JavaScript also provides a general mechanism for avoiding the display of errors. The compound statement `try` and `catch` will try to execute some code and if it doesn't work, go to the `catch` clause.

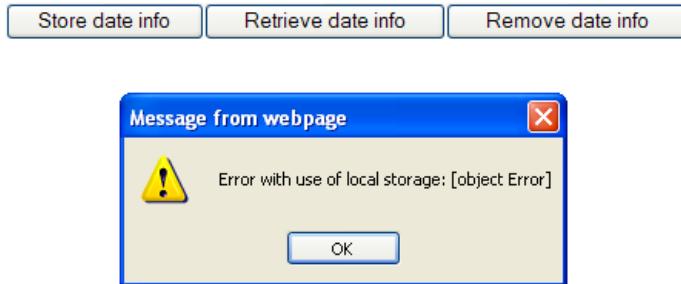
```
try {  
    olddate = new Date();  
    localStorage.setItem("lastdate",olddate);  
}
```

```

        alert("Stored: "+olddate);
    }
    catch(e) {
        alert("Error with use of local storage: "+e);
    }
}

```

If you removed the `if (typeof(localStorage) test` and tried the code in the old IE, you'd see the message shown in Figure 7-15.



**Figure 7-15.** Browser error, caught in a try/catch

The Table 7-1 shows the complete date application. Remember: you may need to upload this to a server to test it.

**Table 7-1.** Complete Code for the Date Application

Code	Explanation
<code>&lt;html&gt;</code>	Opening html tag
<code>&lt;head&gt;</code>	Opening head tag
<code>&lt;title&gt;Local Storage test&lt;/title&gt;</code>	Complete title
<code>&lt;script&gt;</code>	Opening script
<code>function store() {</code>	Store function header
<code>    if (typeof(localStorage) == "undefined") {</code>	Check if localStorage recognized
<code>        alert("Browser does not recognize HTML local storage.");</code>	Display alert message
<code>}</code>	Close if clause
<code>else {</code>	Else

Code	Explanation
try {	Set up try clause
olddate = new Date();	Define new Date
localStorage.setItem("lastdate",olddate);	Store in local storage using the key "lastdate"
alert("Stored: "+olddate);	Display message to show what was stored
}	Close try clause
Catch(e) {	Start catch clause: if there was a problem
alert("Error with use of local storage: "+e);}	Display message
}	Close try clause
Return false;	Return false to prevent any page refresh
}	Close function
function remove() {	Remove function header
if (typeof(localStorage) == "undefined") {	Check if localStorage recognized
alert("Browser does not recognize HTML local storage.");	Display alert message
}	Close if clause
else {	Else
localStorage.removeItem('lastdate');	Remove the item stored using the key 'lastdate'.
alert("Removed date stored.");	Display message indicating what was done

Code	Explanation
}	Close clause
return false;	Return false to prevent page refresh.
}	Close function
function fetch() {	Fetch function header
{ if (typeof(localStorage) == "undefined")	Check if localStorage recognized.
{ if (typeof(localStorage) == "undefined") alert("Browser does not recognize HTML local storage.");	Display alert message
} else {	Close if clause
alert("Stored "+localStorage.getItem('lastdate'));	Else
}	Fetch the item stored under the key 'lastdate' and display it.
} return false;	Close clause
} return false;	Return false to prevent page refresh.
} </script>	Close function
</head>	Close script element
<body>	Close head element
<button onClick="javascript:store();">Store date info </button>	Opening body tag
<button onClick="javascript:fetch();">Retrieve date info </button>	Button for storing
<button onClick="javascript:remove();">Remove date info </button>	Button for retrieving, that is, fetching the stored data.
	Button for removing

Code	Explanation
</body>	Closing body tag
</html>	Closing html tag

Combining the Date function with `localStorage` lets you do many things. For example, you can calculate the elapsed time between a player's current and last use of the application or, perhaps, the player winning two games. In Chapter 5, we used Date to compute the elapsed time using the `getTime` method. Recall that `getTime` stores the number of milliseconds from January 1, 1970. You can convert that value to a string, store it, and then when you fetch it back, do arithmetic to calculate elapsed time.

The `localStorage` key/value pairs last until they are removed, unlike JavaScript cookies, for which you can set a duration.

## Encoding data for local storage

For simplicity's sake, the first application consists of just one HTML document. You can use this version to create mazes, store and retrieve them, and move the token through the maze. The second version of the application involves two HTML documents. One script is the same as the first application and can be used for building, traversing, and saving mazes as well as traveling each maze. The second script is just for traveling one of a fixed list of saved mazes. A set of radio buttons allows the player to pick from easy, moderate, and hard options, assuming someone has created and saved mazes with the names `easymaze`, `moderatemaze`, and `hardmaze`. These names can be anything you want and as many as you want. You just need to be consistent between what you create in one program and what you reference in the second program.

Now let's address the issue that `localStorage` just stores character strings. The applications described here must store enough information about the walls so that these walls can be added to the canvas. In the one-document version, the old walls are actually added to whatever is on the canvas. The two-document version erases any old maze and loads the requested one. I use two forms, each with an input field for the name and a submit button. The player chooses the name for saving a maze and must remember it for retrieving.

The data to be stored is a character string, that is, a piece of text. We will create the text holding the information for a set of walls by doing the following for each wall:

- Combine the `sx`, `sy`, `fx`, `fy` into an array called `w` for a single wall.
- Using the `join` method, use the `w` array to generate a string separated by + signs.
- Add each of these strings to an array called `allw`, for all the walls.
- Using the `join` method again, use the `allw` array to produce a string called `sw`.

The `sw` string variable will hold all the coordinates (four numbers for each wall) for all the walls. The next step is to use the `localStorage.setItem` method to store `sw` under the name given by the player. We do this using the `try` and `catch` construction explained in the last section.

```
try {
  localStorage.setItem(lsname, sw);
}
```

```

catch (e) {
    alert("data not saved, error given: "+e);
}

```

This is a general technique that will try something, suppress any error message, and if there is an error, it will invoke the code in the catch block.

*Note: This may not always work as you intend. For example, when executing this application on Firefox directly on a computer, as opposed to a file downloaded from a server, the localStorage statement does not cause an error, but nothing is stored. This code does work when the HTML file is downloaded from a server using Firefox and the creation script works both as a local file and when downloaded using Chrome. The two-script version must be tested using a server for each of the browsers.*

Retrieving the information works in a corresponding way. The code extracts the name given by the player to set the variable lsname and then uses

```
swalls = localStorage.getItem(lsname);
```

to set the variable walls. If this is not null, we use the string method split to do the opposite of join: split the string on the symbol given (we split at every semicolon) and assign the values to the successive elements of an array. The relevant lines are

```
wallstgs = walls.split(";;");
```

and

```
sw = wallstgs.split("+");
```

Next, the code uses the information just retrieved and the fixed information for wall width and wall style to create a new Wall object:

```
curwall = new Wall(sx,sy,fx,fy,wallwidth,wallstyle);
```

Finally, there is code to add curwall to both the everything array and the walls array.

## Radio buttons

Radio buttons are sets of buttons in which only one member of the set can be selected. If the player makes a new choice, the old choice is deselected. They are an appropriate choice for the hard/moderate/easy selection for this application. Here's the HTML markup in the <body> section:

```

<form name="gf" onSubmit="return getwalls()" >
<br/>
<input type="radio" value="hard" name="level" />Hard <br/>
<input type="radio" value="moderate" name="level" />Moderate <br/>
<input type="radio" value="easy" name="level" />Easy<br/>
<input type="submit" value="GET maze"/><br/>
</form>

```

Notice that all three input elements have the same name. This is what defines the group of buttons of which only one may be selected. In this case, the markup creates an array called level. The getwalls function will be shown in full in the next section. It is similar to the function in the all-in-one script. However, in this case, the name of the localStorage item is determined from the radio buttons. The code is

```
for (i=0;i<document.gf.level.length;i++) {  
  if (document.gf.level[i].checked) {  
    lsname= document.gf.level[i].value+"maze";  
    break;  
  }  
}  
}
```

The for loop iterates over all the input items. The if test is based on the checked attribute. When it detects a true condition, the variable lsname is constructed from the value attribute of that item, and the break; statement causes execution to leave the for loop. If you want your radio buttons to start with one of the items checked, use code like this:

```
<input type="radio" value="easy" name="level" checked />
```

or

```
<input type="radio" value="easy" name="level" checked="true" />
```

## Building the application and making it your own

Now let's take a look at the coding for the maze applications, first the all-in-one script and then the second script of the two-script version.

Table 7-2 shows the functions in the script for creating, saving, and retrieving, and traveling the maze. Notice that much of the invoking of functions is done through event handling: onLoad, onSubmit, addEventListener calls. These do not invoke the functions directly or immediately, but set up the call to be made when the indicated event occurs.

**Table 7-2.** Functions in the Maze Application

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
init	Invoked by action of onLoad in body tag	drawall
drawall	init startwall stretchwall getkeyAndMove getwalls	draw method for Walls and for token: drawtoken and drawAline
Token	var statement declaring mypent	
Wall	startwall	

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
drawtoken	drawall using draw method for the token object in the everything array	
movetoken	getkeyAndMove using the moveit method for mypent	intersect
drawAline	drawall using draw method for Wall objects in the everything array	
startwall	Invoked by action of an addEventListener call in init	drawall
stretchwall	Invoked by action of an addEventListener call in init	drawall
finish	Invoked by action of an addEventListener call in init	
getkeyAndMove	Invoked by action of an addEventListener call in init	movetoken using the moveit method for mypent
savewalls	Invoked by action of onSubmit for the sf form	
getwalls	Invoked by action of onSubmit for the gf form	drawall

Table 7-3 shows the complete code for the maze application, with comments.

**Table 7-3.** Complete Code for the All-in-one Maze Application

Code	Explanation
<html>	Opening html tag
<head>	Opening head tag
<title>Build maze & travel maze</title>	Complete title element
<script type="text/javascript">	Opening script tag
var cwidth = 900;	To clear canvas
var cheight = 350;	To clear canvas
var ctx;	To hold canvas context

Code	Explanation
var everything = [];	To hold everything
var curwall;	For wall in progress
var wallwidth = 5;	Fixed wall width
var wallstyle = "rgb(200,0,200)";	Fixed wall color
var walls = [];	Hold all walls
var inmotion = false;	Flag while wall being built by dragging
var unit = 10;	Unit of movement for token
function Token(sx,sy,rad,stylestring,n) {	Function header to build token
this.sx = sx;	Set sx property
this.sy = sy;	... sy
this.rad = rad;	... rad (radius)
this.draw = drawtoken;	Set the draw method
this.n = n;	... n number of sides
this.angle = (2*Math.PI)/n	Compute and set angle
this.moveit = movetoken;	Set moveit method
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	Set color
}	Close function
function drawtoken() {	Function header drawtoken
ctx.fillStyle=this.fillstyle;	Set color
var i;	Index
var rad = this.rad;	Set rad

Code	Explanation
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
ctx.moveTo(this.sx+rad*Math.cos(-.5*this.angle),this.sy+rad*Math.sin(-.5*this.angle));	Move to first vertex of the token polygon (which is a pentagon)
for (i=1;i<this.n;i++) {	For loop to draw the n sides of the token: 5 sides in this case
ctx.lineTo(this.sx+rad*Math.cos((i-.5)*this.angle),this.sy+rad*Math.sin((i-.5)*this.angle));	Specify line to next vertex, setting up the drawing of a side of the pentagon
}	Close for
ctx.fill();	Draw token
{}	Close function
function movetoken(dx,dy) {	Function header
this.sx +=dx;	Increment x value
this.sy +=dy;	Increment y value
var i;	Index
var wall;	Used for each wall
for(i=0;i<walls.length;i++) {	Loop over all walls
wall = walls[i];	Extract i <sup>th</sup> wall
if (intersect(wall.sx,wall.sy,wall.fx,wall.fy,this.sx,this.sy,rad)) {	Check for intersect. If there is an intersection between the new position of the token and this specific wall
this.sx -=dx;	... change x back—don't make this move
this.sy -=dy;	... change y back—don't make this move
break;	Leave for loop because it isn't necessary to do any more checking if there is a collision with one wall.

Code	Explanation
}	Close if true clause
}	Close for loop
}	Close function
function Wall(sx,sy,fx,fy,width,stylestring) {	Function header to make Wall
this.sx = sx;	Set up sx property
this.sy = sy;	... sy
this.fx = fx;	... fx
this.fy = fy;	... fy
this.width = width;	... width
this.draw = drawAline;	Set draw method
this.strokeStyle = stylestring;	... strokestyle
}	Close function
function drawAline() {	Function header drawAline
ctx.lineWidth = this.width;	Set the line width
ctx.strokeStyle = this.strokeStyle;	Set the strokestyle
ctx.beginPath();	Begin path
ctx.moveTo(this.sx,this.sy);	Move to start of line
ctx.lineTo(this.fx,this.fy);	Set line to finish
ctx.stroke();	Draw the line
}	Close function
var mypent = new Token(100,100,20,"rgb(0,0,250)",5);	Set up mypent as a pentagonal shape to be the playing piece
everything.push(mypent);	Add to everything

Code	Explanation
function init(){	Function header init
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Define the ctx (context) for all drawing
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');	Define canvas1, used for events
canvas1.addEventListener('mousedown', startwall, false);	Set up handling for mousedown
canvas1.addEventListener('mousemove', stretchwall, false);	Set up handling for mousemove
canvas1.addEventListener('mouseup', finish, false);	Set up handling for mouseup
window.addEventListener('keydown', getkeyAndMove, false);	Set up handling for use of the arrow keys
drawall();	Draw everything
}	Close function
function startwall(ev) {	Function header startwall
var mx;	Hold mouse x
var my;	Hold mouse y
if ( ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0) {	Can we use layerX to determine the position of the mouse? Necessary because browsers are different.
mx= ev.layerX;	Set mx
my = ev.layerY;	Set my
} else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	Else can we use offsetX?
mx = ev.offsetX;	Set mx
my = ev.offsetY;	Set my

Code	Explanation
}	Close clause
curwall = new Wall(mx,my,mx+1,my+1,wallwidth,wallstyle);	Create new wall. It is small at this point.
inmotion = true;	Set inmotion to true
everything.push(curwall);	Add curwall to everything
drawall();	Draw everything
}	Close function
function stretchwall(ev) {	Function header stretchwall to that uses the dragging of the mouse to stretch out a wall while the mouse is dragged.
if (inmotion) {	Check if inmotion
var mx;	Hold mouse x
var my;	Hold mouse y
if ( ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0) {	Can we use layerX?
mx= ev.layerX;	Set mx
my = ev.layerY;	Set my
} else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	Else can we use offsetX? This is necessary for different browsers.
mx = ev.offsetX;	Set mx
my = ev.offsetY;	Set my
}	Close clause
curwall.fx = mx;	Change curwall.fx to mx
curwall.fy = my;	Change curwall.fy to my

Code	Explanation
drawall();	Draw everything (will show growing wall)
}	Close if inmotion
}	Close function
function finish(ev) {	Function header finish
inmotion = false;	Set inmotion to false
walls.push(curwall);	Add curwall to walls
}	Close function
function drawall() {	Function header drawall
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	Erase whole canvas
var i;	Index
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {	Loop through everything
everything[i].draw();	Draw everything
}	Close loop
}	Close function
function getkeyAndMove(event) {	Function header getkeyAndMove
var keyCode;	Hold keyCode
if(event == null) {	If event null
keyCode = window.event.keyCode;	Get keyCode using window.event
Window.event.preventDefault();	Stop default action
}	Close clause
else {	Else

Code	Explanation
keyCode = event.keyCode;	Get keyCode from event
event.preventDefault();	Stop default action
}	Close clause
switch(keyCode) {	Switch on keyCode
case 37:	If left arrow
mypent.moveit(-unit,0);	Move back horizontally
break;	Leave switch
case 38:	If up arrow
mypent.moveit(0,-unit);	Move up screen
break;	Leave switch
case 39:	If right arrow
mypent.moveit(unit,0);	Move left
break;	Leave switch
case 40:	If down arrow
mypent.moveit(0,unit);	Move down screen
break;	Leave switch
Default:	Anything else
window.removeEventListener('keydown', getkeyAndMove, false);	Stop listening for keys. Assume player trying to save to local storage or retrieve from local storage.
}	Close switch
Drawall();	Draw everything

Code	Explanation
}	Close function
Function intersect(sx,sy,fx,fy,cx,cy,rad) {	Function header intersect
var dx;	For intermediate value
var dy;	For intermediate value
var t;	For expression in t
var rt;	For holding distance squared
dx = fx-sx;	Set x difference
dy = fy-sy;	Set y difference
t = 0.0-((sx-cx)*dx+(sy-cy)*dy)/((dx*dx)+(dy*dy));	Taking the formula for the distance squared from each point to cx, cy. Take derivative and solve for 0.
if (t<0.0) {	If closest is at t < 0
t=0.0; }	Check at 0 (this will be further)
else if (t>1.0) {	If closest is at t>1
t = 1.0;	Check at 1 (this will be further)
}	Close clause
dx = (sx+t*(fx-sx))-cx;	Compute difference at this value of t
dy = (sy +t*(fy-sy))-cy;	Compute difference at this value of t
rt = (dx*dx) +(dy*dy);	Compute distance squared
if (rt<(rad*rad)) {	Compare to rad squared
Return true; }	Return true
else {	Else

Code	Explanation
Return false;}	Return false
}	Close function
function savewalls() {	Function savewalls header
var w = [];	Temporary array
var allw=[ ];	Temporary array
var sw;	Hold final string
var onewall;	Hold intermediate string
var i;	Index
var lsname = document.sf.slname.value;	Extract player's name for the local storage
for (i=0;i<walls.length;i++) {	Loop over all walls
w.push(walls[i].sx);	Add sx to w array
w.push(walls[i].sy);	Add sy to w array
w.push(walls[i].fx);	Add fx to w array
w.push(walls[i].fy);	Add fy to w array
onewall = w.join("+");	Make a string
allw.push(onewall);	Add to allw array
w = [];	Reset w to empty array
}	Close loop
sw = allw.join(";;");	Now make allw into a string
try {	Try
localStorage.setItem(lsname,sw);	Save localStorage

Code	Explanation
}	End try
catch (e) {	If a catchable error
alert("data not saved, ↵ error given: "+e);	Display message
}	End catch clause
return false;	Return false to avoid refresh
}	Close function
function getwalls() {	Function header getwalls
var swalls;	Temporary storage
var sw;	Temporary storage
var i;	Index
var sx;	Hold the sw value
var sy;	Hold the sy value
var fx;	Hold the fx value
var fy;	Hold the fy value
var curwall;	Hold walls being created
var lsname = document.gf.glname.value;	Extract player's name for storage to be retrieved
swalls=localStorage.getItem(lsname);	Get the storage
if (swalls!=null) {	If something was fetched
wallstgs = swalls.split(";" );	Split to make an array
for (i=0;i<wallstgs.length;i++) {	Loop through this array

Code	Explanation
sw = wallstgs[i].split("+");	Split individual item
sx = Number(sw[0]);	Extract 0 <sup>th</sup> value and convert to number
sy = Number(sw[1]);	...1 <sup>st</sup>
fx = Number(sw[2]);	...2 <sup>nd</sup>
fy = Number(sw[3]);	...3 <sup>rd</sup>
curwall = new Wall(sx,sy,fx,fy,wallwidth,wallstyle);	Create new Wall using extracted and fixed values
walls.push(curwall);	Add to walls array
everything.push(curwall);	Add to everything array
}	Close loop
drawall();	Draw everything
}	Close if not null
Else {	Was null
alert("No data retrieved.");	No data
}	Close clause
window.addEventListener('keydown', → getkeyAndMove, false);	Set up keydown action
return false;	Return false to prevent refresh
}	Close function
</head>	End head element
<body onLoad="init();" >	Start body, set up call to init
<canvas id="canvas" width="900" height="350">	Canvas tag
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Warning for certain browser.

Code	Explanation
</canvas>	Close canvas
 	Line break
Press mouse button down, drag ↵ and release to make a wall.	Instructions
Use arrow keys to move token.  	Instructions and line break
Pressing any other key will stop key ↵ capture and allow you to save the ↵ maze locally.	Instructions
<form name="sf" onSubmit="return savewalls()" >	Form tag, set up call to savewalls
To save your maze, enter in a name and ↵ click on the SAVE WALLS button.  	Instructions
Name: <input name="slname" value="maze_name" type="text">	Label and input field
<input type="submit" value="SAVE WALLS"/>	Submit button
</form>	Close form
<form name="gf" onSubmit="return getwalls()" >	Form tag, set up call to getwalls
To add old walls, enter in the name and ↵ click on the GET SAVED WALLS button.  	Instructions
Name: <input name="glname" value="maze_name" type="text">	Label and input field
<input type="submit" value="GET ↵ SAVED WALLS"/>	Submit button
</form>	Close form
</body>	Close body
</html>	Close html

## Creating the second maze application

The `localStorage` data can be accessed by a different application from the one that created the data, as long as it is on the same server. This is a security feature, as mentioned previously, restricting readers of local storage to scripts on the same server.

The second script is based on this feature. Table 7-4 shows the functions calling or being called; it is a subset of the previous one.

**Table 7-4.** Functions in the Travel Maze Script

Function	Invoked By / Called By	Calls
init	Invoked by action of <code>onLoad</code> in body tag	drawall
drawall	Init <code>startwall</code> <code>stretchwall</code> <code>getkeyAndMove</code> <code>getwalls</code>	draw method for Walls and for token: <code>drawtoken</code> and <code>drawAline</code>
Token	<code>var</code> statement declaring <code>mypent</code>	
Wall	<code>startwall</code>	
drawtoken	<code>drawall</code> using draw method for the token object in the <code>everything</code> array	
movetoken	<code>getkeyAndMove</code> using the <code>moveit</code> method for <code>mypent</code>	<code>intersect</code>
drawAline	<code>drawall</code> using draw method for Wall objects in the <code>everything</code> array	
getkeyAndMove	Invoked by action of an <code>addEventListener</code> call in <code>init</code>	<code>movetoken</code> using the <code>moveit</code> method for <code>mypent</code>
getwalls	Invoked by action of <code>onSubmit</code> for the <code>gf</code> form	<code>drawall</code>

The functions are exactly the same as in the all-in-one script with one exception, the `getwalls` function, so I've only commented the new or changed code. This application also has radio buttons in place of the form input fields. Table 7-5 shows the complete code for the `travelmaze` application.

**Table 7-5.** Complete Code for the Travel Maze Script

Code	Explanation
<html>	
<head>	
<title>Travel maze</title>	Travel maze
<script type="text/javascript">	
var cwidth = 900;	
var cheight = 350;	
var ctx;	
var everything = [];	
var curwall;	
var wallwidth = 5;	
var wallstyle = "rgb(200,0,200)";	
var walls = [];	
var inmotion = false;	
var unit = 10;	
function Token(sx,sy,rad,stylestring,n) {	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.rad = rad;	
this.draw = drawtoken;	
this.n = n;	

Code	Explanation
this.angle = (2*Math.PI)/n	
this.moveit = movetoken;	
this.fillstyle = stylestring;	
}	
function drawtoken() {	
ctx.fillStyle=this.fillstyle;	
ctx.beginPath();	
var i;	
var rad = this.rad;	
ctx.beginPath();	
ctx.moveTo(this.sx+rad*Math.cos➥ (-.5*this.angle),this.sy+rad*Math.sin➥ (-.5*this.angle));	
for (i=1;i<this.n;i++) {	
ctx.lineTo(this.sx+rad*Math.cos➥ ((i-.5)*this.angle),this.sy+rad*Math.sin➥ ((i-.5)*this.angle));	
}	
ctx.fill();	
}	
function movetoken(dx,dy) {	
this.sx +=dx;	
this.sy +=dy;	
var i;	

Code	Explanation
var wall;	
for(i=0;i<walls.length;i++) {	
wall = walls[i];	
if (intersect(wall.sx,wall.sy,wall.fx,wall.fy,this.sx,this.sy,	
this.rad)) {	
this.sx -=dx;	
this.sy -=dy;	
break;	
}	
}	
}	
function Wall(sx,sy,fx,fy,width,stylestring)	
{	
this.sx = sx;	
this.sy = sy;	
this.fx = fx;	
this.fy = fy;	
this.width = width;	
this.draw = drawAline;	
this.strokeStyle = stylestring;	
}	
function drawAline() {	

Code	Explanation
ctx.lineWidth = this.width;	
ctx.strokeStyle = this.strokeStyle;	
ctx.beginPath();	
ctx.moveTo(this.sx, this.sy);	
ctx.lineTo(this.fx, this.fy);	
ctx.stroke();	
}	
var mypent = new Token(100,100,20,"rgb(0,0,250)",5);	
everything.push(mypent);	
function init(){	
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas') .getContext('2d');	
window.addEventListener('keydown', getkeyAndMove, false);	
drawall();	
}	
function drawall() {	
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	
var i;	
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {	
everything[i].draw();	
}	

Code	Explanation
}	
function getkeyAndMove(event) {	
var keyCode;	
if(event == null)	
{	
keyCode = window.event.keyCode;	
window.event.preventDefault();	
}	
else	
{	
keyCode = event.keyCode;	
event.preventDefault();	
}	
switch(keyCode)	
{	
case 37: //left arrow	
mypent.moveit(-unit,0);	
break;	
case 38: //up arrow	
mypent.moveit(0,-unit);	
break;	

Code	Explanation
case 39: //right arrow	
mypent.moveit(unit,0);	
break;	
case 40: //down arrow	
mypent.moveit(0,unit);	
break;	
default:	
window.removeEventListener('keydown',getkeyAndMove, false);	
}	
drawall();	
}	
function intersect(sx,sy,fx,fy,cx,cy,rad) {	
var dx;	
var dy;	
var t;	
var rt;	
dx = fx-sx;	
dy = fy-sy;	
t =0.0-((sx-cx)*dx+(sy-cy)*dy)/((dx*dx)+(dy*dy));	
if (t<0.0) {	

Code	Explanation
t=0.0; }	
else if (t>1.0) {	
t = 1.0;	
}	
dx = (sx+t*(fx-sx))-cx;	
dy = (sy +t*(fy-sy))-cy;	
rt = (dx*dx) +(dy*dy);	
if (rt<(rad*rad)) {	
return true; }	
else {	
return false; }	
}	
function getwalls() {	
var swalls;	
var sw;	
var i;	
var sx;	
var sy;	
var fx;	
var fy;	
var curwall;	

Code	Explanation
var lsname;	
for (i=0;i<document.gf.level.length;i++) {	Iterate through the radio buttons in the gf form, level group
if (document.gf.level[i].checked) {	Is this radio button checked?
lsname=	If so, construct the local storage name using the value attribute of the radio button element
document.gf.level[i].value+"maze";	
break;	Leave the for loop
}	Close if
}	Close for
swalls=localStorage.getItem(lsname);	Fetch this item from local storage
if (swalls!=null) {	If it is not null, it is good data
wallstgs = walls.split(";" );	Extract the string for each wall
walls = [];	Removes any old walls from walls array
everything = [];	Removes any old walls from everything array
everything.push(mypent);	Do add the pentagon-shaped token called mypent to everything
for (i=0;i<wallstgs.length;i++) {	Proceed to decode each wall. The remaining code is the same as the all-in-one application.
sw = wallstgs[i].split("+");	
sx = Number(sw[0]);	
sy = Number(sw[1]);	
fx = Number(sw[2]);	
fy = Number(sw[3]);	

Code	Explanation
curwall = new Wall(sx,sy,fx,fy,wallwidth,wallstyle);	
walls.push(curwall);	
everything.push(curwall);	
}	
drawall();	
}	
else {	
alert("No data retrieved.");	
}	
window.addEventListener('keydown', getkeyAndMove, false);	
return false;	
}	
</script>	
</head>	
<body onLoad="init();" >	
<canvas id="canvas" width="900" height="350">	
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	
</canvas>	
Choose level and click GET MAZE button to get a maze:	

Code	Explanation
<form name="gf" onSubmit="return getwalls()">	
<input type="radio" value="hard" name="level">Hard  	Set up radio button, common level, value hard
<input type="radio" value="moderate" name="level">Moderate  	Set up radio button, common level, value moderate
<input type="radio" value="easy" name="level">Easy 	Set up radio button, common level, value easy
<input type="submit" value="GET maze"/> 	
</form>	
<p>	
Use arrow keys to move token.	
</p>	
</body>	
</html>	

There are a number of ways you can make this application your own.

Some applications in which the user places objects on the screen by dragging limit the possibilities by doing what is termed snapping the end points to grid points, perhaps even limiting the walls for a maze to be strictly horizontal or vertical.

The second application has two levels of user: the creator of the mazes and the player who attempts to traverse the mazes. You may want to design very intricate mazes, and for that you would want an editing facility. Another great addition would be a timing feature. Look back at the timing for the memory game in Chapter 5 for ways to calculate elapsed time.

Just as we added a video treat for the quiz show in Chapter 6, you could play a video when someone completes a maze.

The ability to save to local storage is a powerful feature. For this, and any game or activity that takes a fair amount of time, you may want to add the ability to save the current state. Another common use for local storage is to save the best scores.

Do understand that I wanted to demonstrate the use of local storage for intricate data, and these applications did do that. However, you may want to develop maze programs using something other than local storage. To build on this application, you need to define the sequence of starting and stopping points, four numbers in all, for each wall, and define walls accordingly. Look ahead to the word list implemented as an external script file in the Hangman game in Chapter 9.

This chapter and the previous one demonstrated events and event handling for mouse, keys, and timing. New devices provide new events, such as shaking a phone or using multiple touches on a screen. With the knowledge and experience you've acquired here, you'll be able to put together many different interactive applications.

## Testing and uploading application

The first application is complete in one HTML document, `buildmazesavelocally.html`. The second application uses two files, `buildmazes.html` and `travelmaze.html`. The `buildmazesavelocally.html` and `buildmaze.html` are identical, except for the titles. All three files are available on the friends of ED site. Please note that `travelmaze.html` will not work until you create mazes and save them using local storage on your own computer.

To test the save and restore feature, you need to load the file to a server for it to work using Firefox and, perhaps, other browsers. It works locally using Chrome. The two HTML documents for the two-script version must both be uploaded to a server to be tested.

Some people may limit the use of local storage and cookies. There are differences between these constructs. To use any of this in a production application requires considerable work. The ultimate fallback is to store information on the server using a language such as php.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to implement a program to support the building of a maze of walls and to store it on the local computer. You also learned how to create a maze travel game. We used the following programming techniques and HTML5 features:

- programmer-defined objects
- capturing key strokes; that is, setting up event handling for key presses, and deciphering which key was pressed
- `localStorage` for saving the layout of the walls of the maze on the player's computer
- `try` and `catch` to check if certain coding is acceptable
- the `join` method for arrays and the `split` method for strings
- mouse events
- mathematical calculations for determining collisions between the token and the walls of the maze
- radio buttons to present a choice to the player.

The use of local storage was fairly intricate for this application, requiring the encoding and decoding of the maze information. A simpler use might be for storing the highest score or the current score on any game. You can go back to previous chapters and see if you can incorporate this feature. Remember that `localStorage` is tied to the browser. In the next chapter, you will learn how to implement the rock-paper-scissors game, and how to incorporate audio in your application.



## Chapter 8

# Rock, Paper, Scissors

---

In this chapter, we will cover

- playing against a computer
- creating graphics to serve as buttons
- arrays of arrays for game rules
- the font-family property
- inherited style settings
- audio

## Introduction

This chapter combines programming techniques with HTML5 JavaScript features to implement the familiar rock-paper-scissors game. In the school yard version of this game, each player uses hand symbols to indicate one of the three possibilities: rock, paper, or scissors. The terminology is that a player *throws* one of the three options. The game rules are stated this way:

- Rock crushes scissors.
- Paper covers rock.
- Scissors cuts paper.

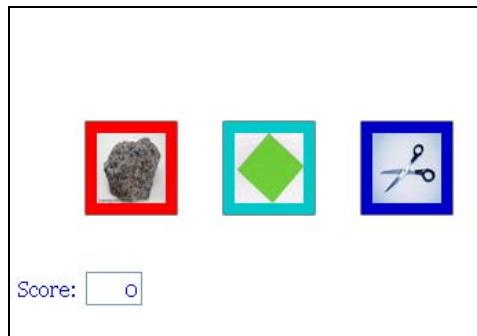
So each symbol beats one other symbol: rock beats scissors; paper beats rock; and scissors beats paper. If both players throw the same thing, it's a tie.

Since this is a two-player game that our player will play against the computer, we have to create the computer's moves. We will generate random moves, and the player needs to trust that the program is doing this and not basing its move on what the player threw. The presentation must reinforce this trust.

The first version of our game just uses the visuals you'll see here. The second version adds audio, four different clips governed by the three winning events plus the tie option. You can either use the sound files

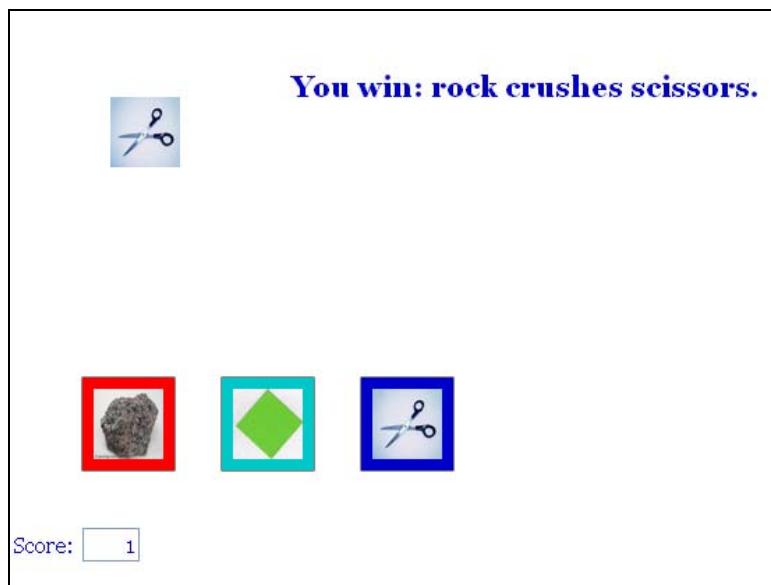
provided in the download pack from [www.friendsofed.com](http://www.friendsofed.com), or your own sounds. Note that you'll need to change the file names in the code to match the sound files you use.

This is a situation in which we want to use special graphics for the player moves. Figure 8-1 shows the opening screen of the application, consisting of three graphics that serve as buttons, as well as a field labeled with the string "Score:" that holds an initial value of zero.



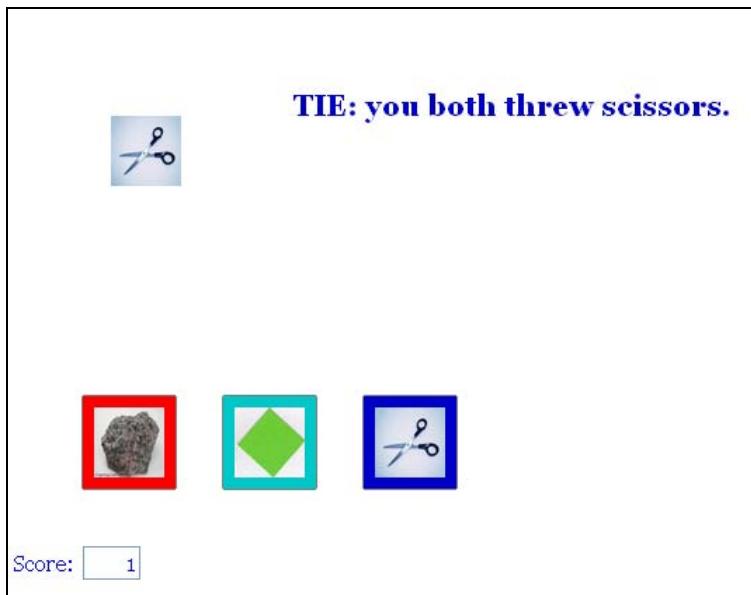
**Figure 8-1.** The Rock, Paper, Scissors opening screen

The player makes a move by clicking one of the symbols. Let's look at an example with the player clicking on the rock icon. We'll assume the computer chose scissors. After a short animated sequence in which a scissors symbol starts small and grows on the screen, a text message appears as shown in Figure 8-2. In the version with added audio, the audio clip would play a sound corresponding to a rock crushing a scissors. Notice that the score is now 1.



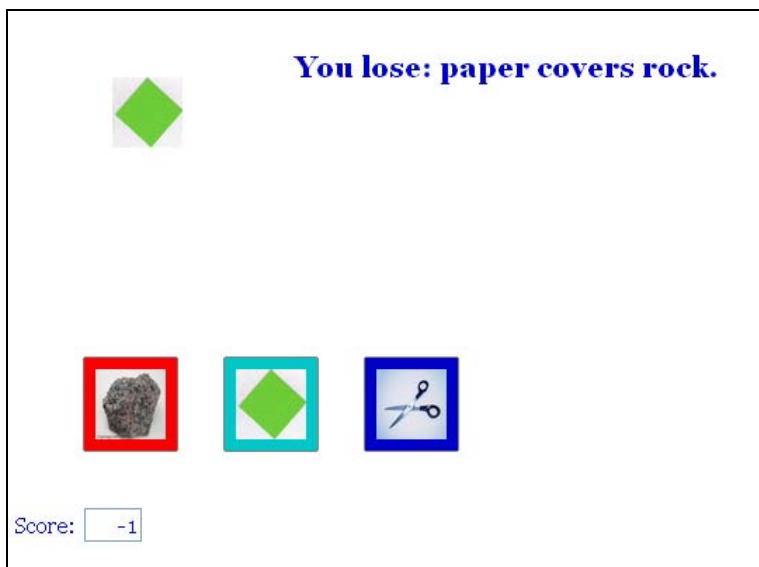
**Figure 8-2.** The player threw rock and computer threw scissors

Next in the game, the player and the computer tie, as shown in Figure 8-3. There's no change in the score when a tie occurs, so the score is still 1.



**Figure 8-3.** A tie

Later, the game has been even but the player loses and the score falls to negative 1, meaning the player is behind, as Figure 8-4 shows.



**Figure 8-4.** Later in the game, a losing move

This application, like all the examples in this book, is only a start. Both the plain and audio versions keep a running score for the player in which a loss results in a decrease. An alternative approach is to keep individual scores for player and computer, with only wins counted for either side. You could display a separate count of the games played. This is preferable if you don't want to show negative numbers. You could also save the player's score using `localStorage`, as described in the maze game in Chapter 7.

A more elaborate enhancement might feature video clips (look back at Chapter 6) or animated GIFs that show rock crushing scissors, paper covering rock, and scissors cutting paper. You can also look at this as a model for many different games. In all cases, you need to determine how to capture the player's moves and how to generate the computer's moves; you need to represent and implement the rules of the game; and you need to maintain the state of the game and display it for the player. The rock-paper-scissors game has no state information except for the running score. Putting it another way, a game consists of just one turn. This is in contrast to the dice game described in Chapter 2 in which a game can involve one to any number of throws of the dice, or the concentration game described in Chapter 5 in which a turn consists of two selections of cards and a completed game can take any number of turns with the minimum equal to half the number of cards.

*Note: There are competitions for rock-paper-scissors and also computer systems in which the computer makes moves based on the player's history of moves. You may find it interesting to check out the World RPS Society ([www.worldrps.com](http://www.worldrps.com)) and the USA RPS League ([www.usarps.com](http://www.usarps.com)).*

## Critical requirements

The implementation of rock-paper-scissors makes use of many HTML5 and JavaScript constructs demonstrated in earlier chapters, put together here in different ways. Programming is similar to writing. It is putting the representation of ideas together in some logical order, just like combining words into sentences and the sentences into paragraphs, and so on. While reading this chapter, think back to what you have learned about drawing rectangles, images, and text on the canvas, detecting where the player has clicked the mouse, setting up a timing event using `setInterval` to produce animation, and using arrays to hold information. These are the building blocks for the rock-paper-scissors application.

In planning this application, I knew I wanted our player to click on buttons, one button for each of the types of throws in the game. Once the player makes a throw, I wanted the program to make its own move, namely a random choice, and have a picture corresponding to that move appear on the screen. The program would then apply the rules of the game to display the outcome. A sound would play, corresponding to the three possible situations in which one throw beats another, plus a groan when there was a tie.

This application starts off with what appear as buttons or icons on the screen. These are pictures that the player can click on to make his or her move. There is also a box for the score.

The application must generate the computer move randomly and then display it in a way that appears as if the computer and the player are throwing their moves at the same time. My idea for this is to have the appropriate symbol start small on the screen and then get larger, seemingly emerging from the screen as if the computer were making its throw towards the player. This action starts right after the player clicks on one of the three possible throws, but it is soon enough to give the impression that the two happened at the same time.

The rules of the game must be obeyed! This includes both what beats what and the folksy message displayed to explain it—“rock crushes scissors”; “paper covers rock”, and “scissors cuts paper”. The score displayed goes up by one, down by one, or stays the same depending on whether the turn is a win, loss, or tie.

The audio-enhanced version of the game must play one of four audio clips depending on the situation.

## HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

Now let’s take a look at the specific features of HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement the game. Except for basic HTML tags and functions and variables, the explanations here are complete. If you’ve read the other chapters, you’ll notice that much of this chapter repeats explanations given previously.

We certainly could have used the types of buttons demonstrated in the other chapters, but I wanted these buttons to look like the throws they represent. As you’ll see, the way we implement the buttons is built on the concepts demonstrated in prior chapters. And we again use JavaScript pseudo-random processing for defining the computer move, and `setInterval` for animating the display of the computer move.

Our rock-paper-scissors game will demonstrate HTML5’s native audio facility. We will integrate coding for audio with applying the rules of the game.

### Providing graphical buttons for the player

There are two aspects to producing clickable buttons or icons on the screen: drawing the graphics on the canvas and detecting when the player has moved the mouse over a button and clicked the primary mouse button.

The buttons or icons we’ll produce consist of the outline (stroke) of a rectangle, a solid rectangle, and then an image on top of the rectangle with a vertical and horizontal margin. Since the similar operations will occur for all three buttons, we can use the approach first introduced in the cannonball and slingshot games in Chapter 4. We will set up a programmer-defined class of objects by writing a function named `Throw`. Recall that objects consist of data and coding grouped together. The function, described as a *constructor* function, will be used with the operator `new` to create a new object of type `Throw`. The term `this` is used within the function to set the values associated with each object.

```
function Throw(sx,sy, smargin,swidth,sheight,rectcolor,picture) {  
    this.sx = sx;  
    this.sy = sy;  
    this.swidth = swidth;  
    this.bwidth = swidth + 2*smargin;  
    this.bheight = sheight + 2*smargin;  
    this.sheight = sheight;  
    this.fillstyle = rectcolor;  
    this.draw = drawThrow;  
    this.img = new Image();  
    this.img.src = picture;  
    this.smargin = smargin;  
}
```

The parameters of the function hold all the information. The selection of names `sx`, `sy`, and so on, avoids built-in terms by making a simple modification: putting `s`, for stored, in front. The location of the button is at `sx`, `sy`. The color of the rectangle is represented by `rectcolor`. The file name for the image is held by `picture`. What we can think of as the inner and outer widths and the inner and outer heights are calculated based on the inputs `smargin`, `sheight`, and `swidth`. The `b` in `bheight` and `bwidth` stands for big. The `s` stands for small and stored. Don't get too hung up on the proper name—there is no such thing. The names are up to you and if a name works, meaning you remember it, it works.

The `img` attribute of a `Throw` object is an `Image` object. The `src` of that `Image` object is what points to the file name that was passed to the function in the `picture` parameter.

Notice that the attribute `this.draw` is set to be `drawThrow`. This sets up the `drawThrow` function to be used as the `draw` method for all objects of type `Throw`. The coding is more general than it needs to be: each of the three graphics has the same margin and width and height. However, there's no harm in making the coding general, and if you want to build on this application to make one in which objects representing the player's choices are more complex, much of this code would work.

*Tip: Don't worry when writing programs if you have code such as `this.draw = drawThrow`; and you haven't written the `drawThrow` function yet. You will. Sometimes it is impossible to avoid referencing a function or variable before it has been created. The critical factor is that all this coding is done before you try to execute the program.*

Here's the `drawThrow` method:

```
function drawThrow() {  
  ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(0,0,0)";  
  ctx.strokeRect(this.sx, this.sy, this.bwidth, this.bheight);  
  ctx.fillStyle = this.fillstyle;  
  ctx.fillRect(this.sx, this.sy, this.bwidth, this.bheight);  
  ctx.drawImage(this.img, this.sx+this.smargin, this.sy+this.smargin, ➔  
    this.swidth, this.sheight);  
}
```

As promised, this draws an outline of a rectangle using black for the color `rgb(0,0,0)`. Recall that `ctx` is the variable set with the property of the `canvas` element that is used for drawing. Black is actually the default color, making this line unnecessary. However, we'll put it in just in case you reuse this code in an application where the color has been changed previously. Next, the function draws a filled-in rectangle using the `rectcolor` passed in for this particular object. Lastly, the code draws an image on top of the rectangle, offset by the margin amount horizontally and vertically. The `bwidth` and `bheight` are calculated to be bigger than the `swidth` and `sheight`, respectively, by twice the `smargin` value. This in effect centers the image inside the rectangle.

The three buttons are created as `Throw` objects through the use of `var` statements, in which the variable is initialized using the `new` operator, and a call to the `Throw` constructor function. To make this work, we need pictures of rock, paper, and scissors, which I've acquired by a variety of means. The three image files are located in the same folder as the HTML file.

```
var rockb = new Throw(rocksbx, rockby, 8, 50, 50, "rgb(250,0,0)", "rock.jpg");  
var paperb = new Throw(paperbx, paperby, 8, 50, 50, "rgb(0,200,200)", "paper.gif");
```

```
var scib = new Throw(scissorsbx,scissorsby,8,50,50,"rgb(0,0,200)","scissors.jpg");
```

As in our previous applications, an array named everything is declared and initialized to the empty array. We push all three variables onto the everything array so we can treat them systematically.

```
everything.push(rockb);
everything.push(paperb);
everything.push(scib);
```

For example, to draw all the buttons, we use a function called drawall that iterates over the elements in the everything array.

```
function drawall() {
  ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);
  var i;
  for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {
    everything[i].draw();
  }
}
```

Again, this is more general than required, but it's useful, especially when it comes to object-oriented programming, to keep things as general as possible.

But how to make these graphics act as clickable buttons? Because these are drawn on the canvas, the code needs to set up the click event handling for the whole canvas and then use coding to check which, if any, button was clicked.

In the slingshot game described in Chapter 4, you saw code in which the function handling the mousedown event for the whole canvas made a calculation to see if the mouse cursor was on the ball. In the quiz show described in Chapter 6, we set up event handling for each country and capital block. The built-in JavaScript mechanism indicated which object had received, so to speak, the click event. This application is like the slingshot.

We set up the event handling in the init function, explained in full in the next section. The task is to get JavaScript to listen for the mouse click event and then do what we specify when the click happens. What we want is for the function choose to be invoked. The following two lines accomplish this task.

```
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');
canvas1.addEventListener('click',choose,false);
```

*Tip: Our code needs to distinguish between the element with the id canvas and the property of this element returned by getContext('2d'). That's just the way the HTML5 folks decided to do it. It is not something you could have deduced on your own.*

The choose function has the tasks of determining which type of throw was selected, generating the computer move and setting up the display of that move, and applying the rules of the game. Right now, we're just going to take a look at the code that determines what button has been clicked.

The code starts by handling differences among the browsers. Functions that are invoked as a result of a call to addEventListener are called with a parameter holding information about the event. This parameter, ev as we are calling it in the choose function, is examined to see what attributes exist to be

used. This complexity is forced on us because the browsers implement event handling using different terms.

```
function choose(ev) {  
  var mx;  
  var my;  
  if ( ev.layerX || ev.layerX == 0 ) {  
    mx= ev.layerX;  
    my = ev.layerY;  
  } else if (ev.offsetX || ev.offsetX == 0) {  
    mx = ev.offsetX;  
    my = ev.offsetY;  
}
```

The goal of this portion of the code is to make the variables `mx` and `my` respectively hold the horizontal and vertical coordinates for the mouse cursor when the mouse button is clicked. Certain browsers keep the cursor information in properties of the `ev` parameter named `layerX` and `layerY` and others use `offsetX` and `offsetY`. We will use local variables to make sure we track the cursor position across all browsers. The condition `ev.layerX` will evaluate as false if `ev.layerX` does not exist for this browser or if it does exist and has the value 0. Therefore, to check if the property exists, we need to use the compound condition `(ev.layerX || ev.layerX == 0)` to make sure the code works in all situations. By the way, if the second if test fails, nothing happens. This code works for Chrome, FireFox, and Safari, but presumably will work eventually with all browsers.

The next section of code iterates through the elements of `everything` (there are three elements, but that's not mentioned explicitly) to see if the cursor is on any of the rectangles. The variable `ch` holds a reference to a `Throw` and so all the `Throw` attributes, namely, `sx`, `sy`, `bwidth`, and `bheight`, can be used in the `compare` statements. This is shorthand for all the choices of `throws` held in the `everything` array.

```
var i;  
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++){  
  var ch = everything[i];  
  if ((mx>ch.sx)&&(mx<ch.sx+ch.bwidth)&&(my>ch.sy)&&(my<ch.sy+ch.bheight)) {  
    ...  
    break;  
  }  
}
```

The `...` indicates coding to be explained later. The compound condition compares the point `mx`, `my` with the left side, right side, top, and bottom of the outer rectangle of each of the three objects representing possible throws by the player. Each of these four conditions must be true for the point to be within the rectangle. This is indicated by the `&&` operator. Though long, this is a standard way to check for points inside rectangles and you will become accustomed to using it.

So that's how the graphics are drawn on the canvas and how they serve as buttons. Notice that if the player clicks outside of any button, nothing happens. Some people might recommend providing feedback to the player at this point, such as an alert box saying:

Please make your move by clicking on the rock, paper, or scissors!

Others would tell you to avoid cluttering on the screen and assume that the player will figure out what to do.

## Generating the computer move

Generating the computer move is similar to generating a throw of the dice, as we did in the dice game in Chapter 2. In the rock-paper-scissors game, we want a random selection from three possible throws instead of six possible die faces. We get that number with the line:

```
var compch = Math.floor(Math.random()*3);
```

The call to the built-in method `Math.random()` produces a number from zero up to, but not including, 1. Multiplying this by 3 produces a number from 0 up to, but not including, 3. Applying `Math.floor` produces a whole number not larger than its argument. It rounds the number down, knocking off any values over the highest integer floor. Therefore, the expression on the right produces 0, 1, or 2, which is exactly what we want. This value is assigned to `compch` which is declared (set up) as a variable.

The code takes the computer move, one of the numbers 0, 1, or 2 chosen by the calculation involving the random function, and uses it as an index for the `choices` array:

```
var choices = ["rock.jpg", "paper.gif", "scissors.jpg"];
```

These three elements refer to the same three pictures used in the buttons.

At this point, just in case you were concerned, the ordering rock, paper, scissors is arbitrary. We need to be consistent, but the ordering does not matter. If, at every instance, we made the ordering paper, scissors, rock, everything would still work. The player never sees the encoding of 0 for rock, 1 for paper, and 2 for scissors.

The next lines in the `choose` function extract one of the file names and assign it to the `src` attribute of an `Image` variable `compimg`.

```
var compchn = choices[compch];
compimg.src = compchn;
```

The name of the local variable, `compchn`, stands for computer choice name. The `compimg` variable is a global variable holding an `Image` object. The code sets its `src` property to the name of the appropriate image file, which will be used to display the computer move.

To implement the rules of the game, I set up two arrays:

```
var beats = [
  ["TIE: you both threw rock.", "You win: paper covers rock.", ↪
   "You lose: rock crushes scissors."],
  ["You lose: paper covers rock.", "TIE: you both threw paper.", ↪
   "You win: scissors cuts paper."],
  ["You win: rock crushes scissors.", "You lose: scissors cuts paper.", ↪
   "TIE: you both threw scissors"]];
```

And:

```
var points = [
  [0,1,-1],
  [-1,0,1],
  [1,-1,0]];
```

Each of these is an array of arrays. The first holds all the messages and the second holds the amount to add to the score of the player. Adding 1 increases the player's score. Adding -1 decreases the player's

score by 1, which is the effect we want when the player loses a round. Adding 0 leaves the score as is. Now, you may think that it would be easier to do nothing in the case of ties rather than add zero, but handling this in a uniform way is the easier approach in terms of coding, and adding zero may actually take less time than doing an if test to see if it was a tie.

The first index into each array will come from the computer move, compch, and the second index, i, indicating the element in the inner array, will come from the player move. The beats and points arrays are called parallel structures. The beats array is for the text message and the points array is for the scoring. Let's check that the information is correct by picking a computer move, say scissors, which corresponds to 2, and picking a player move, say rock, which corresponds to 0. In the beats array, the value for the computer move tells us to go to the array with index value 2. (I am avoiding saying the second array, since arrays start with index 0, not with 1. The value indicated by 2 is the third element of the array). The element is:

```
["You win: rock crushes scissors.", "You lose: scissors cuts paper.", ➔  
 "TIE: you both threw scissors"];
```

Now use the player value, namely 0, to index this array. The result is "You win: rock crushes scissors." and this is exactly what we want. Doing the same thing with the points array, the element with index 2 is

```
[1, -1, 0]
```

and the value with index 0 into this array is 1, also exactly what we want: the player's score will be adjusted by 1.

```
result = beats[compch][i];  
...  
newscore += points[compch][i];
```

Recall that the operator += in a statement

```
a += b;
```

is interpreted as follows:

*Get the value of the variable a*

*Apply the + operator to this value and the value of the expression b*

*Assign the result back to the variable a*

The second step is written in a general way since this could apply to + interpreted as addition of numbers as well as concatenation of strings. In this particular situation, the second step is:

*Add a and b*

This result gets assigned back to the variable a.

The two variables, result and newscore, are global variables. This means they are available to other functions and this is how we use them: set in one function and referenced for use in another.

The score is presented using a form element in the body element of the HTML document.

```
<form name="f">  
Score: <input name="score" value="0" size="3"/>  
</form>
```

Just to show you how these things are done, we'll use styles for the score field. We set up two styles, one for the form, and one for the input field.

```
form {
  color: blue;
  font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman", Times, serif;
  font-size: 16px;
}
input {
  text-align: right;
  font: inherit;
  color: inherit;
}
```

We set the color for the text in the form to blue, and specified the font using the `font-family` property. This is a way to specify a particular font and backups if that font doesn't exist on the client computer. This is a powerful feature because it means you can be as specific as you want in terms of fonts and, with work, still make sure that everyone can read the material.

*Tip: You can research online for Web-safe fonts to see which fonts are widely available. Then you can pick your favorite font for the first choice, one of the Web-safe fonts for the second, and make the last choice either serif or sans-serif. You can even specify more than three choices if you want. Check out [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web\\_typography](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_typography) for ideas.*

In this style, we specify the font named `Georgia`, then `"Times New Roman"`, then `Times`, and then whatever the standard font with serifs is on the computer. Serifs are the little extra flags on letters. The quotation marks around `Times New Roman` are necessary because the name involves multiple terms. Quotation marks wouldn't be wrong around the other font names, but they aren't necessary. We also specify the size as 16 pixels. The input field inherits the font, including size, and the color from the `form` element, its parent. However, because the score is a number, we use the `text-align` property to indicate right alignment in the field. The label `Score` is in the `form` element. The actual score is in the `input` element. Using the `inherit` setting for the `input` style properties makes the two display in the same font, size, and color.

The value in the input field will be extracted and set using its name, `score`. For example,

```
newscore = Number(document.f.score.value);
```

`Number` is required here to produce the number represented by the text in the field; that is 0 as opposed to "0" (the character). If we left the value as a string and the code used a plus sign to add 1 to a string, this would not be addition; it would instead be the concatenation of strings. (This is termed *operator overloading*, by the way: the plus sign indicates different operations depending on the data type of the operands.) Concatenating a "1" onto a "0" would yield "01". You might think this is okay, but the next time around, we would get "011" or "010" or "01-1". Ugh. We don't want that, so we write the code to make sure the value is converted to a number.

To place an adjusted new score back into the field, the code is

```
document.f.score.value = String(newsore);
```

Now, as I frequently tell my students, I am compelled to tell you the truth. In fact, `String` may not be necessary here. JavaScript sometimes does these conversions, also termed *casts*, automatically. However, sometimes it doesn't, so it is good practice to make it explicit.

The size of the field is the maximum required for three characters. The Georgia font is not a monospace font—all characters are not the same size—so this is the largest space that might be necessary. You might notice different amounts of space left over depending on the text in the field.

*Note: JavaScript makes use of parentheses, curly brackets, and square brackets. They are not interchangeable. The parentheses are used in function headers and in function and method calls; in if, for, switch, and while statement headers; and for specifying the order of operations in complex expressions. The curly brackets are used to delimit the definition of functions and the clauses of if, for, switch and while statements. The square brackets are used to define arrays and to return specific members of arrays. The language of Cascading Style Sheets puts curly brackets around each style. HTML markup includes < and >, often called pointy brackets or angle brackets.*

## Displaying results using animation

You've seen examples of animation in the bouncing ball application in Chapter 3 and the cannonball and slingshot in Chapter 4. To recap, animation is produced by displaying a sequence of still pictures in quick succession. The individual pictures are called frames. In what is called *computed animation*, new positions for objects on the screen are calculated for each successive frame. One way to produce animation is to use the `setInterval` command to set up an interval event, like so:

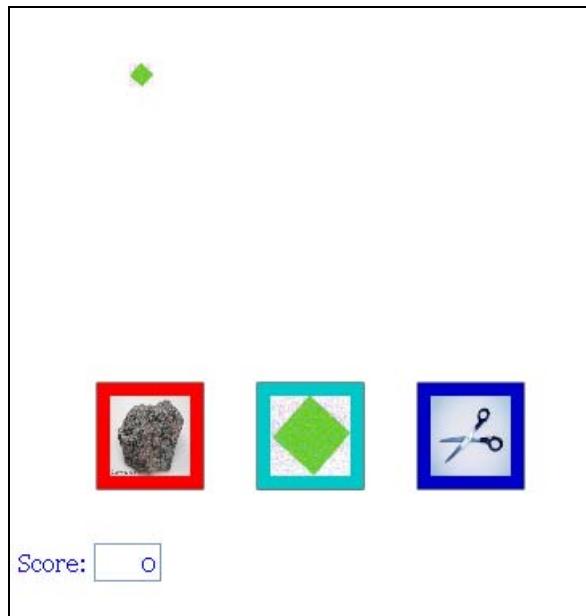
```
tid = setInterval(flyin,100);
```

This causes the `flyin` function to be invoked every 100 milliseconds (10 times per second). The variable `tid`, for timer identifier, is set so the code can turn the interval event off. The `flyin` function will create `Throw` objects of increasing size holding the appropriate image. When an object reaches a designated size, the code displays the result and adjusts the score. This is why the variables `result` and `newscore` must be global variables—they are set in `choose` and used in `flyin`.

The `flyin` function also makes use of a global variable named `size` that starts off at 15 and is incremented by 5 each time `flyin` is invoked. When `size` is over 50, the timing event is stopped, the `result` message displayed, and the score changed.

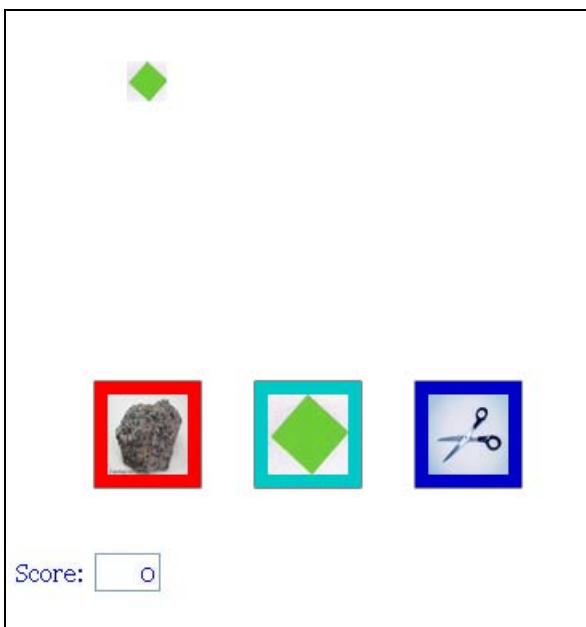
```
function flyin() {
  ctx.drawImage(compimg, 70,100,size,size);
  size +=5;
  if (size>50) {
    clearInterval(tid);
    ctx.fillText(result,200,100,250);
    document.f.score.value = String(newscore);
  }
}
```

By the way, I had to modify the code in order to grab these screenshots. Figure 8-5 is the screen after the very first invocation of `flyin`.



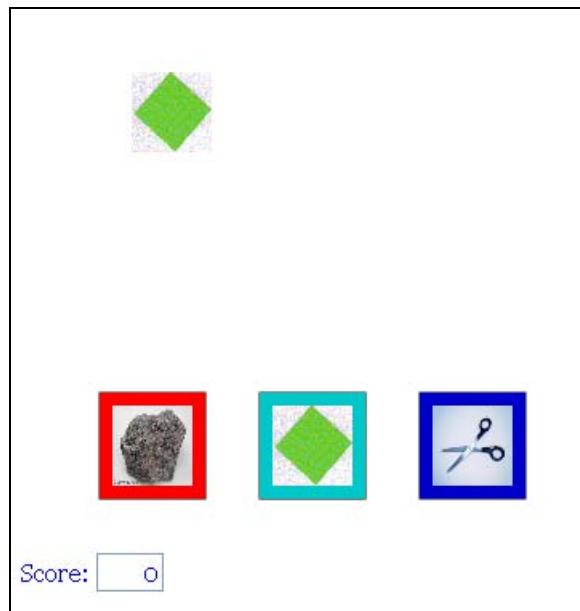
**Figure 8-5.** First call of `fly in`, with a tiny image representing the computer move

After a different modification of the code, Figure 8-6 shows the animation halted at a later step.



**Figure 8-6.** A step further in the animation

Figure 8-7 shows the animation completed, but just before the text messages with the results.



**Figure 8-7.** Just before text displayed on results

Now, here's a confession that should be informative. You may need to skip ahead or wait until you read through all the code to appreciate it. When I created this application the first time, I had the code for displaying the message and adjusting the score in the choose function. After all, that's where the code determined the values. However, this had a very bad effect. The player saw the results before seeing the computer move emerge out of the screen in the animation. It looked like the game was fixed! When I realized what the problem was, I changed the code in choose to store the message and the new score values in global variables and only display the message and set the updated score in the form input field *after* the animation was complete. Don't assume you can know everything about your application before you start. Do assume you will find problems and be able to resolve them. Companies have whole groups devoted solely to quality assurance.

## Audio and DOM processing

The situation with audio is quite similar to the one with video (see Chapter 6). Again, the bad news is that browsers don't all recognize the same formats. And again, the good news is that HTML5 provides the `<audio>` element, and JavaScript supplies features for playing audio along with ways of referencing different formats for the audio accepted by the different browsers. Moreover, tools are available for converting from one format to another. The two formats I use for these examples are MP3 and OGG, which appear to be sufficient for Chrome, Firefox, and Safari. I used free sources for audio clips and found acceptable samples in WAV and MP3. I then used the Miro converter I had downloaded for working with the video to produce MP3 and OGG for the WAV file and OGG for the others. The Miro name for the OGG was theor.ogv and I changed it just to keep things simple. The main point here is that this approach requires two versions of each sound file.

*Caution: The order of the audio file references should not be important, but I found warnings that Firefox will not work if MP3 is listed first. That is, it won't go on to try and work with another file.*

The `<audio>` element has attributes I didn't use in the rock-paper-scissors game. The `autoplay` attribute starts play immediately on loading, though you do need to remember that with large files loading is not instantaneous. The `src` attribute specifies the source. However, good practice is to not use the `src` attribute in the `<audio>` tag, but to specify multiple sources using the `<source>` element as a child of the `<audio>` element. The `loop` attribute specifies looping, that is, repeating the clip. The `controls` attribute puts controls on the screen. This may be a good thing to do because the clips can be very loud. In order to make the audio a surprise, though, and to not add clutter to the visual presentation, I chose not to do this.

Here's a simple example for you to try. You will need to download `sword.mp3` from the book's download page at [www.friendsofed.com](http://www.friendsofed.com) or find your own audio file and reference it by name here. If you open the following HTML in Chrome

```
Audio example <br/>
<audio src="sword.mp3" autoplay controls>
Your browser doesn't recognize audio
</audio>
```

you'll see what's shown in Figure 8-8.



**Figure 8-8.** Audio tag with controls

Remember: for our game, we will play audio for the rock crushing the scissors, the paper covering the rock, the scissors cutting the paper, and a sigh for any tie. Here is the coding for the four audio clips in rock-paper-scissors:

```
<audio autobuffer>
<source src="hithard.ogg" />
<source src="hithard.mp3" />
</audio>
<audio autobuffer>
<source src="inhale.ogg" />
<source src="inhale.mp3" />
</audio>
<audio autobuffer>
<source src="sword.ogg" />
<source src="sword.mp3" />
</audio>
<audio autobuffer>
<source src="crowdohh.ogg" />
<source src="crowdohh.mp3" />
</audio>
```

This should appear reasonable for describing four sets of audio files, but you may be wondering how the code knows which one to play. We could insert id attributes in each `<audio>` tag. However, let's do something else instead in order to demonstrate more JavaScript that's useful in many situations. You have seen the method `document.getElementById`. There is a similar method: `document.getElementsByTagName`. The line:

```
musicelements = document.getElementsByTagName("audio");
```

extracts all elements of the tag name indicated by the parameter and creates an array, which, in this line of code, assigns the array to a variable named `musicelements`. We use this line in the `init` function so it's performed at the very start of the application. We construct another array of arrays, this one called `music`, and add two other global variables:

```
var music = [
  [3,1,0],
  [1,3,2],
  [0,2,3]];
var musicelements;
var musicch;
```

You can check that `music` and `beats` are *parallel structures* with 0 standing for rock crushing scissors, 1 for paper covering rock, 2 for scissors cutting paper, and 3 for a tie. The `choose` function will have the extra line:

```
musicch = music[compch][i];
```

The `musicch` variable—the name stands for choice for music—will hold 0, 1, 2, or 3. This sets up something to happen in the `flyin` function when the animation is complete. We don't play the clip immediately, as explained in my confession above.

```
musicelements[musicch].play();
```

The zeroth, first, second, or third element in `musicelements` is referenced by the indexing using `musicch`, then its `play` method is invoked and the clip is played.

## Starting off

The application starts by setting up a call to a function in the `onLoad` attribute of the `<body>` tag. This has been the practice in the other games. The `init` function performs several tasks. It sets the initial score value to zero. This is necessary just in case the player reloads the document; it is a quirk of HTML that form data may not be reset by the browser. The function extracts values from the `canvas` element to be used for drawing (`ctx`) and for the event handling (`canvas1`). This needs to happen *after* the whole document is loaded because until then the `canvas` element does not exist. The function draws the three buttons and sets up the font for the text drawn on the `canvas` and the fill style. After that, nothing happens unless and until the player clicks the mouse button over one of the three symbols.

Now that we've examined the specific features of HTML5 and JavaScript used for this game, along with some programming techniques, such as the use of arrays of arrays, let's take a closer look at the code.

## Building the application and making it your own

The basic rock-paper-scissors applications use styles, global variables, six functions, and HTML markup. The six functions are described in Table 8-1. I follow the convention that functions start with lower-case letters unless the function is a constructor for a programmer-defined object. I present the basic application first, and then show the modifications necessary to add audio.

**Table 8-1.** Functions in the Basic Rock-Paper-Scissors Application

Function	Invoked / Called By	Calls
init	Invoked by action of the <code>onLoad</code> in the <code>&lt;body&gt;</code> tag	drawall
drawall	init, choose	Invokes the draw method of each object, which in this application always in the function <code>drawThrow</code>
Throw	var statements for global variables	
drawThrow	drawall using the draw method of the Throw objects	
choose	Invoked by action of <code>addEventListener</code> call in init	drawall
flyin	Action of <code>setInterval</code> in choose	

As you can see from the table, most of the invocation of functions is done implicitly—by event handling, for example—as opposed to one function invoking another. After the `init` function does the set up, the main work is performed by the `choose` function. The critical information for the rules of the games is held in the two arrays of arrays.

Table 8-2 shows the code for the basic application, with comments for each line.

**Table 8-2.** Complete Code for the Basic Rock-Paper-Scissors Application

Code	Explanation
<code>&lt;html&gt;</code>	Starting <code>html</code> tag
<code>&lt;head&gt;</code>	Starting <code>head</code> tag
<code>&lt;title&gt;Rock Paper Scissors&lt;/title&gt;</code>	Complete <code>title</code> element
<code>&lt;style&gt;</code>	Starting <code>style</code> section

Code	Explanation
form {	Style specified for all form elements. There is just one in this document.
color: blue;	Color of text set to blue, one of the 16 colors known by name
font-family: Georgia, "Times New Roman", Times, serif;	Set up the fonts to try to use
font-size:16px;	Set size of characters
}	Close style
input {	Style specified for all input elements. There is just one.
text-align:right;	Make the text align to the right, appropriate for numbers
font:inherit;	Inherit any font information from parent, namely form
color:inherit;	Inherit color of text from parent, namely form
}	Close style
</style>	Close style element
<script >	Start script element
var cwidth = 600;	Canvas width, used for clearing
var cheight = 400;	Canvas height, used for clearing
var ctx;	Canvas ctx, used for all drawing
var everything = [];	Holds the 3 graphics
var rockbx = 50;	Horizontal position of rock symbol
var rockby = 300;	Vertical position of rock symbol
var paperbx = 150;	Horizontal position of paper symbol

Code	Explanation
var paperby = 300;	Vertical position of paper symbol
var scissorsbx = 250;	Horizontal position of scissors symbol
var scissorsby = 300;	Vertical position of scissors symbol
var canvas1;	Reference for setting up click event listening for canvas
var newscore;	Value to be set for new score
var size = 15;	Initial size for changing image for computer move
var result;	Value to be displayed as result message
var choices = ["rock.jpg", "paper.gif", "scissors.jpg"];	Names for symbol images
var compimg = new Image();	Image element used for each computer move
var beats = [	Start of declaration of array holding all the messages
["TIE: you both threw rock", "You win: computer played rock", "You lose: computer threw rock"],	The set of messages when the computer throws rock
["You lose: computer threw paper", "TIE: you both threw paper", "You win: computer threw paper"],	The set of messages when the computer throws paper
["You win: computer threw scissors", "You lose: computer threw scissors", "TIE: you both threw scissors"]];	The set of messages when the computer throws scissors
var points = [	Start of declaration of array holding the increments for the score: 0 for a tie, 1 for the player winning, -1 for the player losing
[0,1,-1],	The set of increments when the computer throws rock

Code	Explanation
[-1,0,1],	The set of increments when the computer throws paper
[1,-1,0]];	The set of increments when the computer throws scissors
function Throw(sx,sy, smargin,swidth, ↵ sheight,rectcolor,picture) {	Header for constructor function to be used for the 3 game symbols. Parameters include x and y coordinates, margin, inner width and height, color for the rectangle, and the picture file
this.sx = sx;	Assign the sx attribute
this.sy = sy;	... sy attribute
this.swidth = swidth;	... swidth attribute
this.bwidth = swidth + 2*smargin;	Calculate and assign the outer width. This is the inner width plus 2 times the margin.
this.bheight = sheight + 2*smargin;	Calculate and assign the outer height. This is the inner height plus 2 times the margin.
this.sheight = sheight;	Assign sheight attribute
this.fillstyle = rectcolor;	Assign fillstyle attribute
this.draw = drawThrow;	Assign the draw method to be drawThrow
this.img = new Image();	Create a new Image object
this.img.src = picture;	Set its src to be the picture file
this.smargin = smargin;	Assign the smargin attribute. It is still needed for drawing.
}	Close function
function drawThrow() {	Header for function to draw the symbols
ctx.strokeStyle = "rgb(0,0,0)";	Set the style for the rectangle outline to black.

Code	Explanation
ctx.strokeRect(this.sx, this.sy, this.bwidth, this.bheight);	Draw rectangle outline
ctx.fillStyle = this.fillStyle;	Set the style for the filled rectangle
ctx.fillRect(this.sx, this.sy, this.bwidth, this.bheight);	Draw rectangle
ctx.drawImage(this.img, this.sx+this.smargin, this.sy+this.smargin, this.swidth, this.sheight);	Draw the image offset inside the rectangle.
}	Close function
function choose(ev) {	Header for function called upon a click event
var compch = Math.floor(Math.random()*3);	Generate computer move based on random processing
var compchn = choices[compch];	Pick out the image file
compimg.src = compchn;	Set the src of the already created Image object
var mx;	Used for mouse x
var my;	Used for mouse y
if (ev.layerX    ev.layerX == 0) {	Check which coding applies in this browser
mx= ev.layerX;	Set mx
my = ev.layerY;	Set my
} else if (ev.offsetX    ev.offsetX == 0) {	Else check if this coding works
mx = ev.offsetX;	Set mx
my = ev.offsetY;	Set my

Code	Explanation
}	Close clause
var i;	Used for indexing over the different symbols
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++){	For header for indexing over the elements in the everything array, namely the three symbols
var ch = everything[i];	Get the ith element
if ((mx>ch.sx)&&(mx<ch.sx+ch.bwidth)&&(my>ch.sy)&&(my<ch.sy+ch.bheight)) {	Check if the mx, my position is within the bounds (the outer rectangle bounds) for this symbol
drawall();	If so, invoke the drawall function, which will erase everything and then draw everything in the everything array
size = 15;	Initial size of computer-move image
tid = setInterval→ (flyin,100);	Set up timed event
result = beats→ [compch][i];	Set the result message. See the section below the table for the addition for audio.
newscore =→ Number(document.f.score.value);	Get the current score, converted to a number
newscore +=→ points[compch][i];	Add the adjustment and save to be displayed later
break;	Leave the for loop
}	End the if clause
}	End the for loop
}	End the function
function flyin() {	Header for the function handling the timed interval event

Code	Explanation
ctx.drawImage(compimg, 100,size,size);  70, ↵	Draw the computer-move image on the screen at the indicated place and with dimensions indicated
size +=5;  size +5;	Change the value of the dimensions by incrementing size
if (size>50) {  if (size>50) {	Use the size variable to see if the process has gone on long enough
clearInterval(tid);  clearInterval(tid);	Stop the timing event
ctx.fillText(result, ↵ 200,100,250);  ctx.fillText(result, ↵ 200,100,250);	Display the message
document.f.score.value= String(newscore);  = String(newscore);	Display the new score. See the section below the table for the addition for audio
}  }	Close of if true clause
}  var rockb = new Throw(rockbx,rockby,8,50, ↵ 50,"rgb(250,0,0)","rock.jpg");  var rockb = new Throw(rockbx,rockby,8,50, ↵ 50,"rgb(250,0,0)","rock.jpg");	Close of function
var paperb = new Throw(paperbx,paperby,8,50, ↵ 50,"rgb(0,200,200)","paper.gif");  var paperb = new Throw(paperbx,paperby,8,50, ↵ 50,"rgb(0,200,200)","paper.gif");	Create the rock object
var scib = new Throw(scissorsbx,scissorsby, ↵ 8,50,50,"rgb(0,0,200)","scissors.jpg");  var scib = new Throw(scissorsbx,scissorsby, ↵ 8,50,50,"rgb(0,0,200)","scissors.jpg");	Create the paper object
everything.push(rockb);  everything.push(rockb);	Create the scissors object
everything.push(paperb);  everything.push(paperb);	Add the rock object to the everything array
everything.push(scib);  everything.push(scib);	Add the paper object to the everything array
function init(){  function init(){	Add the scissors object to the everything array
document.f.score.value = "0";  document.f.score.value = "0";	Header for function called on load of the document
	Set score to zero. I also could use

Code	Explanation
	... = String(0); (and it actually isn't necessary since JavaScript will convert a number to a string in this situation)
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Set the variable to be used for all drawing
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');	Set the variable to be used for the mouse click event handling
canvas1.addEventListener('click',choose,false);	Set up click event handling
drawall();	Draw everything
ctx.font="bold 16pt Georgia";	Set the font to be used for the result messages
ctx.fillStyle = "blue";	Set the color
}	Close the function
function drawall() {	Header for the function
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	Clear the canvas
var i;	Variable for indexing
for (i=0;i<everything.length;i++) {	Iterate through the everything array
everything[i].draw();	Draw the individual elements
}	Close the for loop
}	Close the function
</script>	Close the script element
</head>	Close the head element
<body onLoad="init();">	Starting body tag. Set up call to the init function

Code	Explanation
<canvas id="canvas" width="600" height="400">	Starting canvas tag
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Message for noncompliant browsers
</canvas>	Closing tag
 	Line break
<form name="f">	Starting tag for form, giving form a name
Score: <input name="score" value="0" size="3"/>	Label and then input field, with initial value and size
</form>	Closing tag for form
</body>	Closing tag for body
</html>	Closing tag for html document

The audio enhanced version required three more global variables along with additions in the init, choose and flyin functions. The new global variables are

```
var music = [
  [3,1,0],
  [1,3,2],
  [0,2,3]];
var musicelements;
var musicch;
```

Here is the clause in the choose function with the new line highlighted.

```
if ((mx>ch.sx)&&(mx<ch.sx+ch.bwidth)&&(my>ch.sy)&&(my<ch.sy+ch.bheight)) {
  drawall();
  size = 15;
  tid = setInterval(flyin,100);
  result = beats[compch][i];
musicch = music[compch][i];
  newscore = Number(document.f.score.value);
  newscore +=points[compch][i];
  break;
}
```

Similarly, here's the complete flyin function with the new line in bold:

```
function flyin() {
  ctx.drawImage(compimg, 70,100,size,size);
  size +=5;
  if (size>50) {
    clearInterval(tid);
    ctx.fillText(result,200,100,250);
    document.f.score.value = String(newscore);
    musicelements[musicch].play();
  }
}
```

Adding the audio enhancement, like adding video, provides an exercise in examining just what needs to be changed and what remains the same. It certainly makes sense to develop a basic application first.

My idea was to make sounds for the four results. You could also have applause for any player win, booing for any player loss, and something in between for the ties.

Some people like to include additional possible moves, with funny remarks describing what beats what, or even replacing rock, paper, and scissors with three or more other possibilities. A few students of mine have produced this game using a different language, such as Spanish. The more challenging task is to make the application multilingual in a systematic way, by isolating the spoken language components. One approach would involve changing the beats array to an array of arrays of arrays, with the first index corresponding to the language. The label in the markup that holds the word Score also would need to change, which you could accomplish by making it an input field and using CSS to remove its border. Preparing applications for what is termed *localization* has emerged as an important area of development for the Web.

## Testing and uploading the application

You need to create or acquire (a polite term for finding something and copying the file to your computer) the three images to represent rock, paper, and scissors. If you decide to enhance the application by adding sounds, you need to produce or find the audio clips, convert these to the two common formats, and upload all the sounds: this is 4 files times 2 formats for a total of 8 files.

Because this application involves a random element, make a concerted effort to do all the testing. You want to test a player throwing each of the three possibilities versus each of the three computer moves. You also want to test that the score goes up and down and stays the same as the situation dictates. Typically, my testing routine is to make the rock throw repeatedly until I see all three computer moves at least two times. Then I move on to paper, and then scissors, and then I keep changing my throw, say, paper, rock, paper, scissors.

Test the basic program and then decide on what enhancements you'd like to make to the presentation and to the scoring. The images and the HTML document need to be uploaded when you've tested the program on your local computer and decide to upload it to a server. If you decide to use different images for computer moves than for player moves, you'll have to find and upload even more. Some people like to put images and audio files in subfolders. If you do this, don't forget to use the correct names in the code.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to implement a familiar game using features of HTML5, JavaScript, and CSS, along with general programming techniques. These included

- styles, in particular the `font-family` property
- form and input fields for displaying the score
- event handling using `addEventListener` for the mouse click event
- animation using `setInterval` and `clearInterval`
- audio elements for sound and `source` elements for working with different browsers
- `getElementsByTagname` and `play` for specific control of audio clips
- programmer-defined objects for drawing programmer-created buttons on the screen, with logic for determining if the mouse cursor was clicked on a specific button
- arrays of arrays for game rules

The next chapter describes another familiar, childhood game: Hangman. It combines techniques of drawing on canvas and creating HTML elements using code that you have learned in previous chapters along with some new CSS and JavaScript features.



## Chapter 9



# Hangman

---

In this chapter, we will be covering

- CSS styles
- generating markup for alphabet buttons
- using an array for a sequence of drawings
- using a character string for the secret word
- an external script file for the word list
- setting up and removing event handling

## Introduction

The goal for this chapter is to continue demonstrating programming techniques and the features of HTML5, Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), and JavaScript, combining dynamic creation of HTML markup along with drawing graphics and text on the canvas. The example for this chapter is another familiar game—the paper-and-pencil game of Hangman.

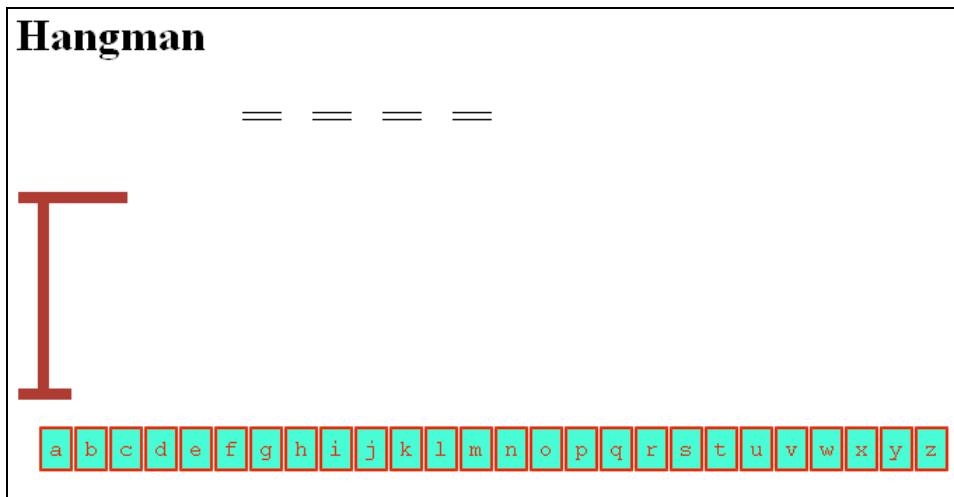
Just in case you need to brush up on the rules, the game is played as follows: One player thinks of a secret word and writes out dashes to let the other player know how many letters are in that word. The other person guesses individual letters. If the letter appears in the word, player one replaces the dash representing each occurrence of the guessed letter with the actual letter. If the letter does *not* appear in the secret word, the first player draws the next step in a progression of stick figure drawings of a hanging. In my example shown in Figure 9-1, the gallows are already on the screen. Next comes the head, then the body, left arm, right arm, left leg, right leg, and finally, the rope. Players can come to an agreement on how many steps are allowed. Player two loses the game if the hanging is complete before the word is guessed. Yes, this is a ghoulish game, but it is popular and even considered educational.

In our game, the computer takes the role of player one and picks the secret word from a word list (in this case an admittedly very short list). You may use my list. When you make your own game, use your own. It

makes sense to start small and, once you are happy with your game, make a longer list. My technique of using an external file for the word list supports this approach.

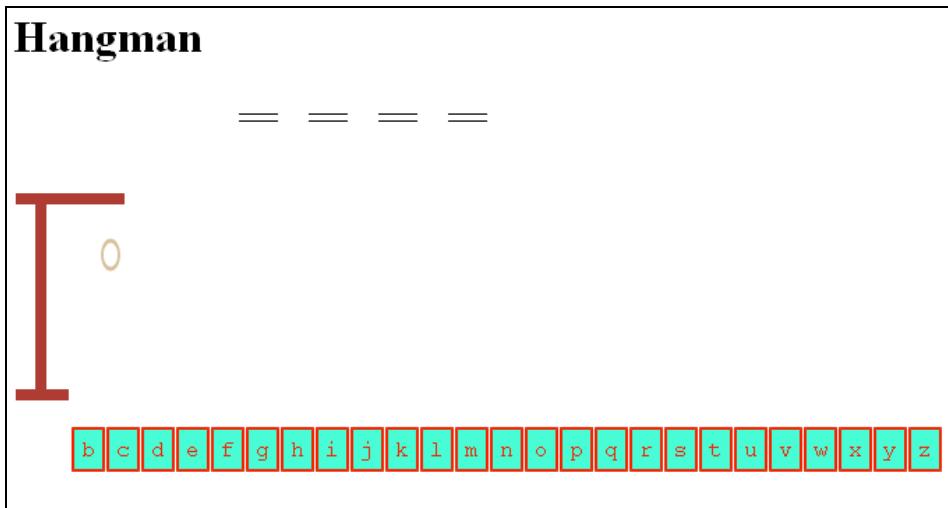
For the user interface, I chose to place blocks with each letter of the alphabet on the screen. The player chooses a letter by clicking a block. After a letter is selected, its block disappears. This decision was influenced by the fact that most people playing the pencil-and-paper version write out the alphabet and cross out the letters as they are chosen.

Figure 9-1 shows the opening screen. The computer has selected a word with four letters. Notice that in our program, the gallows appears on the screen already. Alternatively, you can choose to make that the first one or two steps of the progression of drawings.



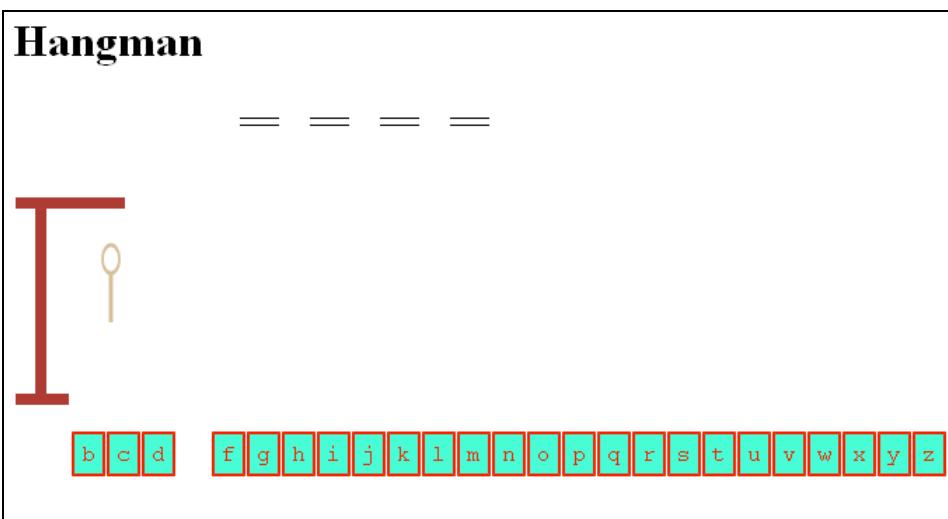
**Figure 9-1.** Opening screen

One advantage to using a small word bank is that I know what the word is now, even though my coding uses a random process to select the word. This means I can develop the game without any stress in playing it. I decided to select an *a* first. As Figure 9-2 shows, this letter does not appear in the secret word, so an oval for a head is drawn on the screen, and the block for the letter *a* disappears.



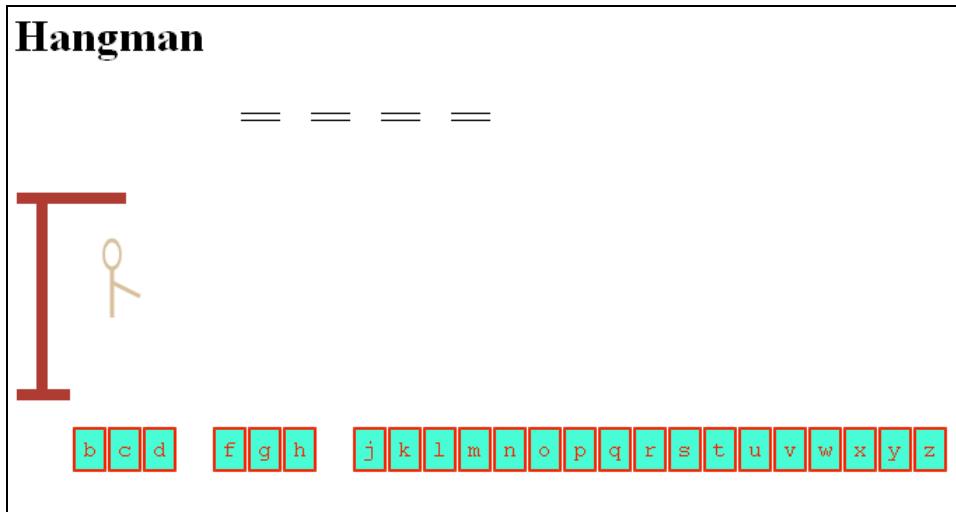
**Figure 9-2.** Screenshot after guessing an a

Working through the vowels, I guess an *e*, with results shown in Figure 9-3.



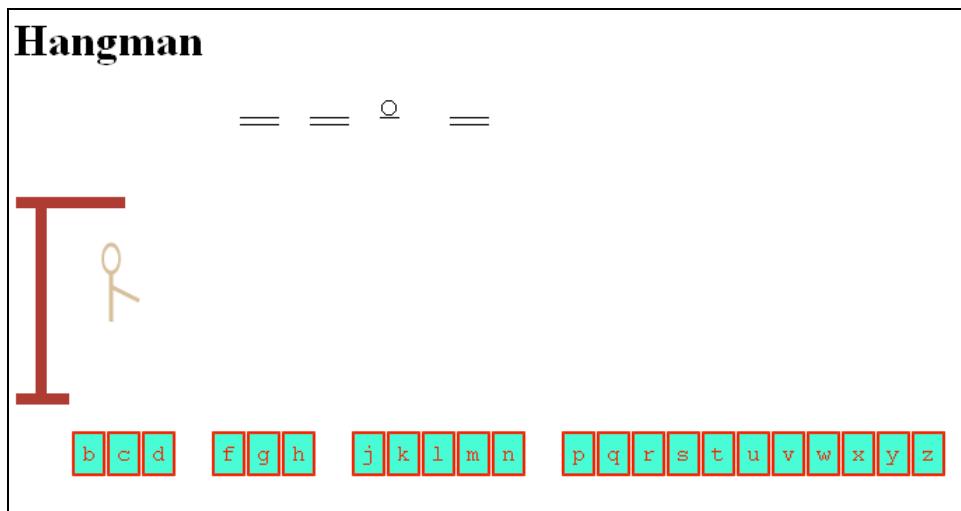
**Figure 9-3.** The game after guessing an e

Next, I guess an *i*, resulting in my third wrong move, as shown in Figure 9-4.



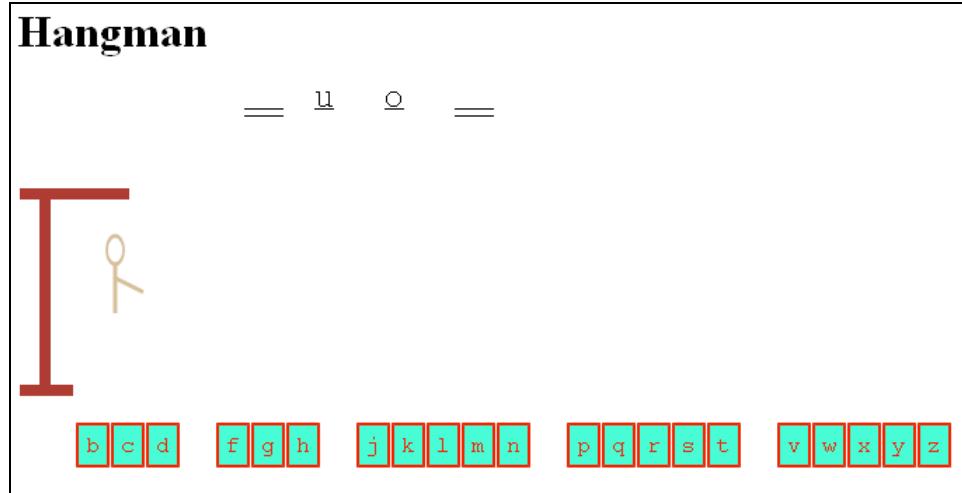
**Figure 9-4.** The game screen after three incorrect selections

Now, I guess an *o*, and this turns out to be correct (as I knew since I have insider information), and an *o* appears as the third letter in the word, as shown in Figure 9-5.



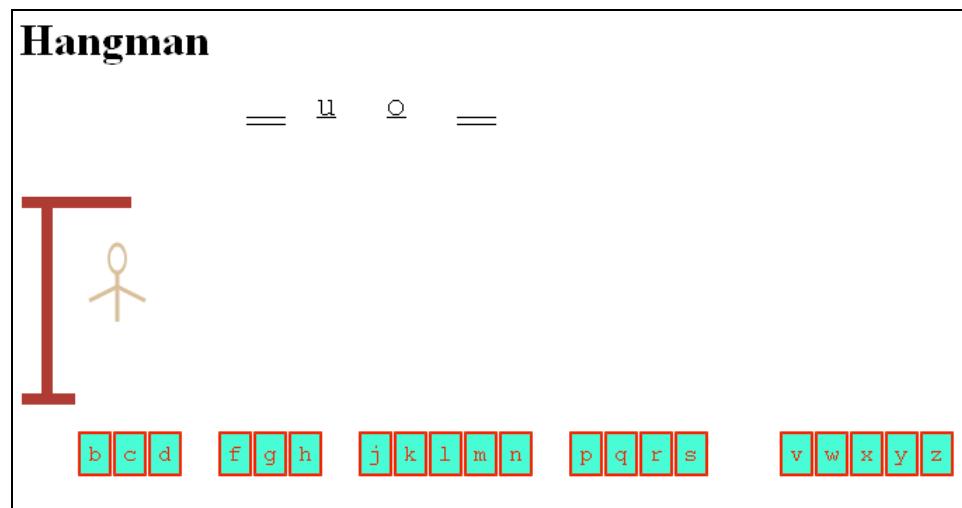
**Figure 9-5.** A correct guess of *o*

I try the next vowel, *u*, and that is correct also, as Figure 9-6 indicates.



**Figure 9-6.** Two letters have been identified.

I now make some more guesses, first a *t*, as shown in Figure 9-7.



**Figure 9-7.** Another wrong guess of *t*

Then, I make another wrong guess, this time, an *s*, as shown in Figure 9-8.

## Hangman

— u o —



b c d    f g h    j k l m n    p q r    v w x y z

**Figure 9-8.** After a wrong guess of *s*

Figure 9-9 shows yet another wrong guess.

## Hangman

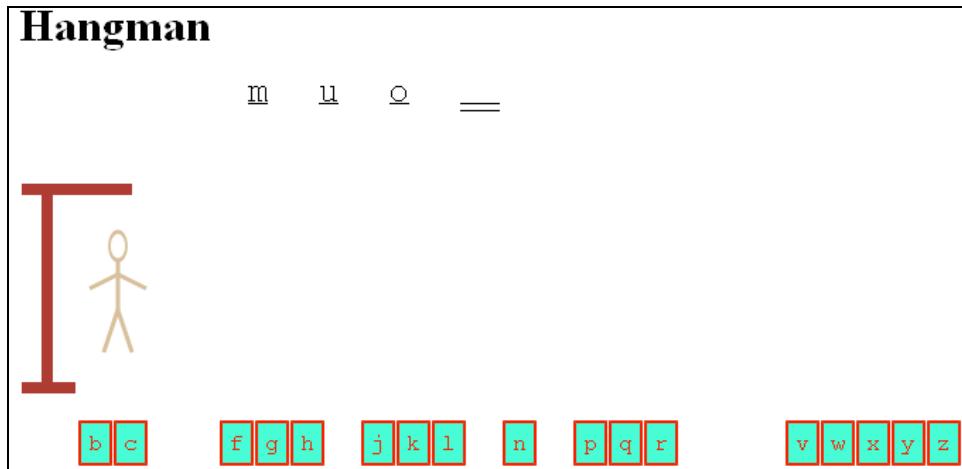
— u o —



b c    f g h    j k l m n    p q r    v w x y z

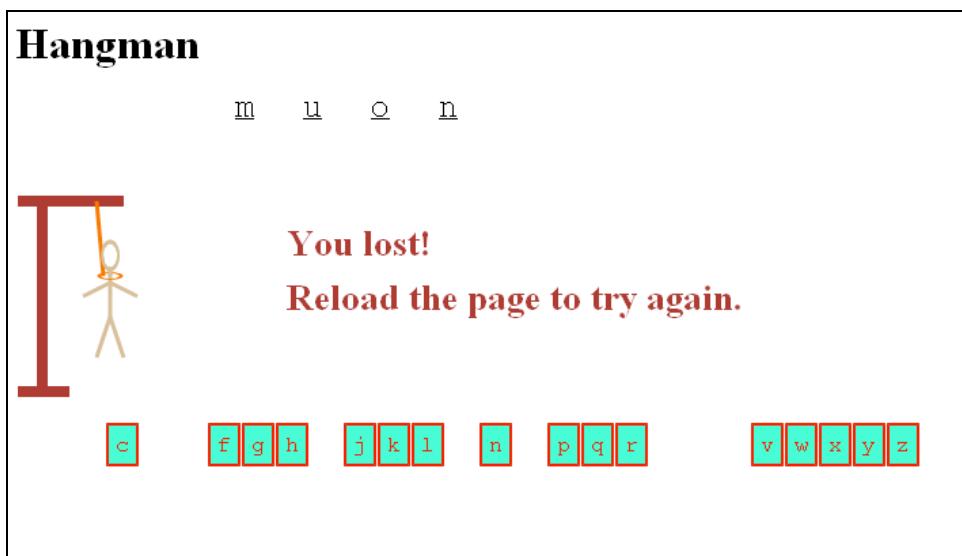
**Figure 9-9.** After a wrong guess of *d*

I decide to make a correct guess, namely *m*. Figure 9-10 shows three identified letters and most of the person drawn on the screen.



**Figure 9-10.** After a correct guess of *m*

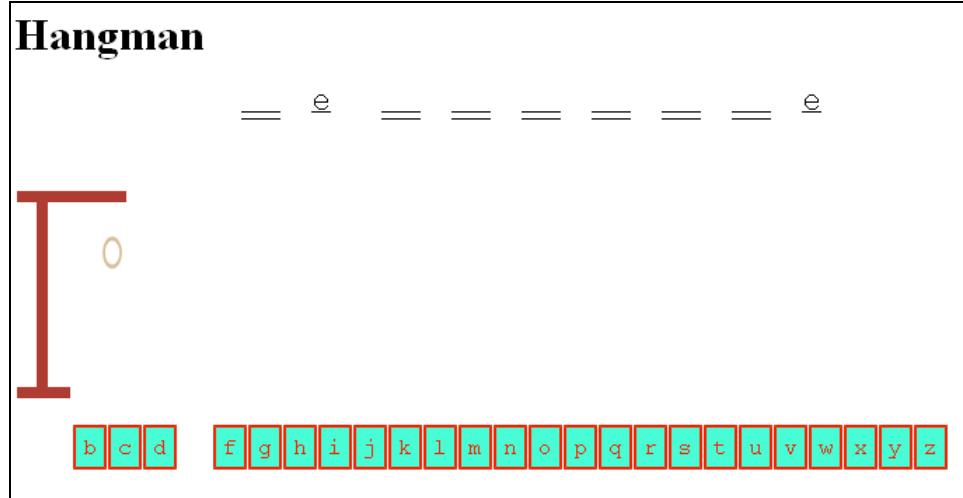
At this point, I am trying to lose, so I guess *b*. This results in what is depicted in Figure 9-11.



**Figure 9-11.** Game lost

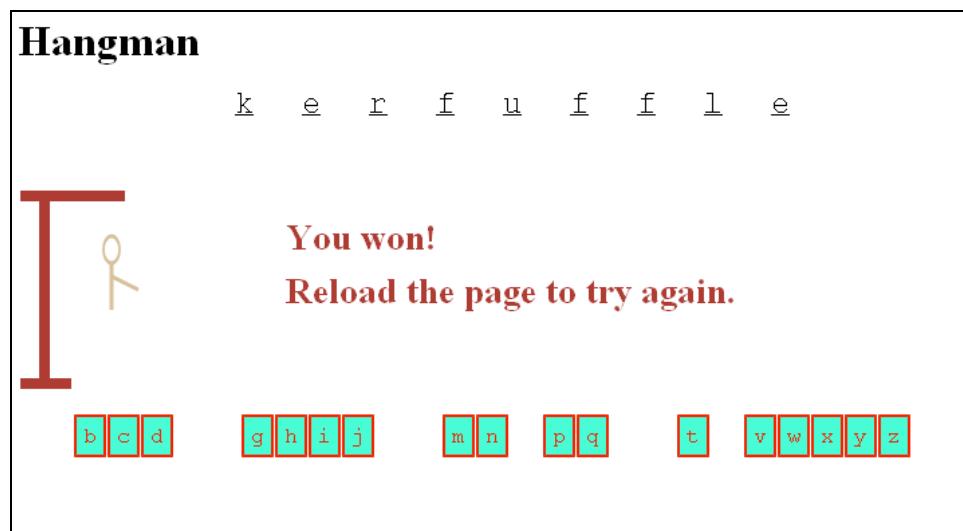
Notice that the drawing shows a noose; the complete secret word is revealed; and a message appears telling the player that the game is lost and to reload to try again.

Figure 9-12 shows a screenshot from another game, and the computer has responded to a guess of the letter *e* by showing it in two positions. Handling letters appearing more than once is not difficult, but that certainly was not obvious to me before I started the programming.



**Figure 9-12.** In this game, e appears in two spots.

I make some other guesses and finally get this word correct. Again, the list from which the choices are made is not very long, so I can guess the words from the number of letters. Figure 9-13 shows a screenshot from a winning game. Notice that there are two e's and three f's in the secret word.



**Figure 9-13.** Winning the game

The programming techniques and language features include manipulating character strings; using an array holding the letters of the English alphabet; creating markup elements to hold the alphabet and the spaces that represent the secret word, which may or may not be replaced by letters; handling events for the created alphabet blocks; setting up a set of functions for drawing the steps of the hanging; and

placing the names of the functions in an array. This implementation also demonstrates the use of external script files for holding the word list. This game has turns within a game, unlike, say, rock, paper, scissors, so the program must manage the game state internally as well as display it on the screen.

## Critical requirements

As was true in the previous chapter, the implementation of this game makes use of many HTML5 and JavaScript constructs demonstrated in earlier chapters, but they are put together here in different ways. Programming is similar to writing. In programming, you put together various constructs, just like you write sentences composed of words that you know, and then put these into paragraphs, and so on. While reading this chapter, think back to what you have learned about drawing lines, arcs, and text on the canvas; creating new HTML markup; setting up a mouse click event for markup on the screen; and using *if* and *for* statements.

To implement Hangman, we need access to a list of words. Creating and testing the program does not require a long list, which could be substituted later. I decided to make it a requirement that the word list be separate from the program.

The user interface for player moves could have manifested in one of several ways, for example, an input field in a form. However, I decided a better approach was to make the interface include graphics representing the letters of the alphabet. It was necessary to make each of the graphics act as a clickable button *and* provide a way to make each letter disappear after it has been selected.

The pencil-and-paper version of the game involves a progression of drawings ultimately resulting in a stick figure with a noose around its neck. The computer game must show the same progression of drawings. The drawings can be simple lines and ovals.

The secret word must be represented on the screen, initially as all blanks and then filled in with any correctly identified letters. I chose to use double lines as blanks, because I wanted identified letters to be underlined. An alternative could be question marks.

Last, the program must monitor the progress of the game and correctly determine when the player has lost and when the player has won. The game state is visible to the player, but the program must set up and check internal variables to make the determination that the game is won or lost.

## HTML5, CSS, JavaScript features

Let's now look at the specific features of HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement Hangman. Except for basic HTML tags and the workings of functions and variables, the explanations here are complete. However, much of this chapter repeats explanations given in earlier chapters. As before, you may choose to look at all the code in the "Building the Application" section first and return to this section if you need explanations of specific features.

### Storing a word list as an array defined in an external script file

The Hangman game requires access to a list of legal words, which can be called the word bank. It would be a pretty sure bet to say that one approach is to use an array. The short array we'll use for this initial example follows:

```
var words = [
  "muon", "blight", "kerfuffle", "qat"
];
```

Notice that the words are all different lengths. This means that we can use the random processing code that we will want for the final version and still know what word has been selected when we're testing. We'll make sure the code uses `words.length` so that when you substitute a bigger array, the coding still works.

Now, the question is how to use different arrays for this purpose if we want to bring in a different list of words. It certainly is possible to change the HTML document. However, in HTML5 (or previous versions of HTML), it is possible to include a reference to an external script file in place of or in addition to a script element in the HTML document. We can take the three lines that declare and define the variable `words` and place them in a file named `words1.js`. We can include this file with the rest of the document using the following line of code:

```
<script src="words1.js" defer></script>
```

The `defer` method will cause this file to be loaded while the browser is continuing with the rest of the base HTML document. We could not load these two files simultaneously if the external file contained part of the body, but it works in this situation.

A more elaborate program could include multiple files with code for the player to select from among different levels or languages.

## Generating and positioning HTML markup, then making the markup be buttons, and then disabling the buttons

The creation of the alphabet buttons and the secret word dashes is done with a combination of JavaScript and CSS.

We'll write code to create HTML markup for two parts of the program: the alphabet icons and the blanks for the secret word. (You can go to the quiz game in Chapter 6 for more on creating HTML markup.) In each case, HTML markup is created using the following built-in methods:

- `document.createElement(x)`: Creates HTML markup for the new element type `x`
- `document.body.appendChild (d)`: Adds the `d` element as another child element of the `body` element
- `document.getElementById(id)`: Extracts the element with `id` the value of `id`

The HTML is created to include a unique `id` for each element. The code involves setting certain properties:

- `d.innerHTML` is set to hold the HTML
- `thingelem.style.top` is set to hold the vertical position
- `thingelem.style.left` is set to hold the horizontal position

With this background, here is the coding for setting up the alphabet buttons. We first declare a global variable `alphabet`:

```
var alphabet = "abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz";
```

The `setupgame` function has this code for making the alphabet buttons:

```

var i;
var x;
var y;
var uniqueid;
var an = alphabet.length;
for(i=0;i<an;i++) {

    uniqueid = "a"+String(i);
    d = document.createElement('alphabet');
    d.innerHTML =
        "<div class='letters' id='"+uniqueid+"'>"+alphabet[i]+ "</div>";
    document.body.appendChild(d);
    thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);
    x = alphabetx + alphabetwidth*i;
    y = alphabety;
    thingelem.style.top = String(y)+"px";
    thingelem.style.left = String(x)+"px";
    thingelem.addEventListener('click',pickelement, false);
}

```

The variable `i` is used for iterating over the alphabet string. The unique id is a concatenated with the index value, which will go from 0 to 25. The HTML inserted into the created element is a `div` with text containing the letter. The string is surrounded by double quotation marks, and the attributes inside this string are surrounded by single quotation marks. The elements are spaced across the screen, starting at the position `alphabetx`, `alphabety` (each global variable is declared earlier in the document), and incremented horizontally by `alphabetwidth`. The `top` and `left` attributes need to be set to strings and end with `"px"`, for pixels. The last step is to set up event handling so these elements act as buttons.

The creation of the elements for the secret word is similar. A difference is that each of these elements has two underscores as its text content. On the screen, these two underscores look like one long underscore. The assignment to `ch` (for choice) is how our program selects the secret word.

```

var ch = Math.floor(Math.random()* words.length);
secret = words[ch];
for (i=0;i<secret.length;i++) {
    uniqueid = "s"+String(i);
    d = document.createElement('secret');
    d.innerHTML =
        "<div class='blanks' id='"+uniqueid+"'> __ </div>";
    document.body.appendChild(d);
    thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);
    x = secretx + secretwidth*i;
    y = secrety;
    thingelem.style.top = String(y)+"px";
    thingelem.style.left = String(x)+"px";
}

```

At this point, you may be asking, how did the alphabet icons get to be letters inside blocks with borders? The answer is that I used CSS. The usefulness of CSS goes far beyond fonts and colors. The styles provide the look and feel of critical parts of the game. Notice that the alphabet `div` elements have a class

setting of 'letters', and the secret word letter div elements have a setting of 'blanks'. The style section contains the following two styles:

```
<style>
.letters {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: 2px; border-style: double; ↵
  margin: 5px; padding: 5px; color: #F00; background-color: #0FC; font-family: "Courier" ↵
  New", Courier, monospace; }
.blanks {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: none; margin: 5px; padding: ↵
  5px; color: #006; background-color: white; font-family: "Courier New", Courier, ↵
  monospace; text-decoration: underline; color: black; font-size: 24px; }
</style>
```

The designation of a dot followed by a name means this style applies to all elements of that class. This is in contrast to just a name, such as `form` in the last chapter, in which a style was applied to all `form` elements, or to a `#` followed by a name that refers to the one element in the document with an `id` of that name. Notice that the style for letters includes a border, a color, and a background color. Specifying a font family is a way to pick your favorite font for the task and then specify backups if that font is not available. This feature of CSS provides a wide latitude to designers. My choices here are "Courier New", with a second choice of Courier, and a third choice of any monospace font available (in a *monospace font*, all the letters are the same width). I decided to use a monospace font to facilitate making icons that are the same in size and space nicely across the screen. The `margin` attribute sets to the spacing outside the border, and `padding` refers to the spacing between the text and the border.

We want the buttons representing letters of the alphabet to disappear after they are clicked. The code in the `pickelement` function can use the term `this` to refer to the clicked object. These two statements (which could be squeezed into one) make this happen by setting the `display` attribute:

```
var id = this.id;
document.getElementById(id).style.display = "none";
```

When the game is over, either through a win or a loss, we remove the click event handling for all the letters by iterating over all the elements:

```
for (j=0; j<alphabet.length; j++) {
  uniqueid = "a"+String(j);
  thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);
  thingelem.removeEventListener('click', pickelement, false);
}
```

The `removeEventListener` event does what it sounds like: it removes the event handling.

## Creating progressive drawings on a canvas

In the chapters so far, you have read about drawing rectangles, text, images, and also paths. The paths consist of lines and arcs. For Hangman, the drawings are all paths. For this application, code has set the variable `ctx` to point to the 2D context of the canvas. Drawing a path involves setting a line width by setting `ctx.lineWidth` to a numerical value and setting `ctx.strokeStyle` to a color. We will use different line widths and colors for various parts of the drawing.

The next line in the code is `ctx.beginPath()`, and it's followed by a sequence of operations to draw lines or arcs or move a virtual pen. The method `ctx.moveTo` moves the pen without drawing and `ctx.lineTo` specifies the drawing of a line from the current pen position to the point indicated. Please keep in mind that nothing is drawn until the call of the `stroke` method. The `moveTo`, `lineTo`, and `arc` commands set up the path that is drawn whenever either the `stroke` or `fill` methods are invoked. In our draw functions, the next step is calling `ctx.stroke()`, and the last step is calling `ctx.closePath()` to end the path. For example, the gallows is drawn by the following function:

```
function drawgallows() {  
    ctx.lineWidth = 8;  
    ctx.strokeStyle = gallowscolor;  
    ctx.beginPath();  
    ctx.moveTo(2,180);  
    ctx.lineTo(40,180);  
    ctx.moveTo(20,180);  
    ctx.lineTo(20,40);  
    ctx.moveTo(2,40);  
    ctx.lineTo(80,40);  
    ctx.stroke();  
    ctx.closePath();  
}
```

The head and the noose require ovals. The ovals will be based on circles, so first I will review how to draw a circle. You also can go back to Chapter 2. Drawing a circular arc is done with the `ctx.arc` command with the following parameters: coordinates for the center of the circle, a length for the radius, the starting angle in radians, the ending angle, and `false` for counter-clockwise or `true` for clockwise. *Radians* are intrinsic measurements in which a full circle is `Math.PI*2`. The conversion from degrees to radians is to divide by `Math.PI` and multiply by 180, but that is not needed for this example because we are drawing complete arcs.

However, we want to draw an oval in place of a circle for the head (and later for part of the noose). The solution is to use `ctx.scale` to change the coordinate system. In Chapter 4, we changed the coordinate system to rotate the rectangle representing a cannon. Here, we manipulate the coordinate system to squeeze one dimension to make a circle an oval. What our code does is first use `ctx.save()` to save the current coordinate system. Then for the head, it uses `ctx.scale(.6,1)` to shorten the x axis to 60 percent of its current value and keep the y axis the same. Use the code for drawing an arc and then use `ctx.restore()` to restore the original coordinate system. The function for drawing the head follows:

```
function drawhead() {  
    ctx.lineWidth = 3;  
    ctx.strokeStyle = facecolor;  
    ctx.save(); //before scaling of circle to be oval  
    ctx.scale(.6,1);  
    ctx.beginPath();  
    ctx.arc (bodycenterx/.6,80,10,0,Math.PI*2,false);  
    ctx.stroke();  
    ctx.closePath();  
    ctx.restore();  
}
```

The drawnoose function makes use of the same technique, except that, for the noose, the oval is wide as opposed to narrow; that is, the vertical is squeezed and not the horizontal.

Each step in the progression of drawings is represented by a function, such as drawhead and drawbody. We list all of these in an array called steps:

```
var steps = [
  drawgallows,
  drawhead,
  drawbody,
  drawrightarm,
  drawleftarm,
  drawrightleg,
  drawleftleg,
  drawnoose
];
```

A variable, cur, keeps track of the current step, and when the code confirms the condition that cur is equal to the length of steps, the game is over.

After experimenting with these, I decided that I needed to draw the head and draw a neck on top of the noose. This is done by putting in calls to drawhead and drawneck in the drawnoose function. The order is important.

Use the draw functions as models for you to make your own drawings. Do change each of these individual functions. You also can add or take away functions. This means you would be changing the number of steps in the progression, that is, the number of wrong guesses the player can make before losing the game.

*Tip: If you haven't done so already (or even if you have), experiment with drawing. Create a separate file just for drawing the steps of the hanging. Experiment with lines and arcs. You also can include images.*

## Maintaining the game state and determining a win or loss

The requirement to encode and maintain the state of an application is a common one in programming. In Chapter 2, our program kept track of whether the next move was a first throw or a follow-up throw of the dice. The state of the Hangman game includes the identity of the hidden word, what letters in the word have been correctly guessed, what letters of the alphabet have been tried, and the state of the progression of the hanging.

The pickelement function, invoked when the player clicks on an alphabet block, is where the critical action takes place, and it performs the following tasks:

- Check if the player's guess, kept in the variable picked, matches any of the letters in the secret word held in the variable secret. For each match, the corresponding letter in the blank elements is revealed by setting textContent to that letter.
- Keep track of how many letters have been guessed using the variable lettersguessed.

- Check if the game has been won by comparing `lettersguessed` to `secret.length`. If the game is won, remove event handling for the alphabet buttons and display the appropriate messages.
- If the selected letter did not match any letters in the secret word (if the variable `not` is still true), advance the hanging using the variable `cur` for an index into the array variable `steps`
- Check if the game has been lost by comparing `cur` to `steps.length`. If the two values are equal, reveal all the letters, remove event handling, and display the appropriate messages.
- Whether or not there is a match, make the clicked alphabet button disappear by setting the `display` attribute to `none`.

These tasks are performed using `if` and `for` statements. The check if the game has been won is done after determining that a letter has been guessed correctly. Similarly, the check if the game has been lost is done only when it is determined that a letter has *not* been correctly identified and the hanging has advanced. The state of the game is represented in the code by the `secret`, `lettersguessed`, and `cur` variables. The player sees the underscores and filled-in letters of the secret word and the remaining alphabet blocks.

The code for the whole HTML document with line-by-line comments is in the “Building the Application” section. The next section describes the critical first task of handling a player’s guess. One general tactic to keep in mind is that several tasks are accomplished by doing something for every member of an array even if it may not be necessary for certain elements of the array. For example, when the task is to reveal all the letters in the secret word, all have the `textContent` changed even if some of them have already been revealed. Similarly, the variable `not` may be set to `false` multiple times.

## Checking a guess and revealing letters in the secret word by setting `textContent`

The player makes a move by clicking a letter. The `pickElement` function is set up as the event handler for each letter icon. Therefore, within the function, we can use the term `this` to refer to the object that received (listened for and heard) the `click` event. Consequently, the expression `this.textContent` will hold the selected letter. Therefore, the statement

```
var picked = this.textContent;
```

assigns to the local variable `picked` the specific letter of the alphabet the player is guessing. The code then iterates over all the letters in the secret word held in the variable `secret` and compares each letter to the guess of the player. The created markup that starts out being the double underscores corresponds to the letters in the secret word, so when there is a correct guess, the corresponding element will be changed; that is, its `textContent` will be set to the letter guessed by the player, which is held in `picked`:

```
for (i=0;i<secret.length;i++) {  
    if (picked==secret[i]) {  
        id = "s"+String(i);  
        document.getElementById(id).textContent = picked;  
        not = false;  
        lettersguessed++;  
        ...  
    }  
}
```

The iteration does not stop when a guess is correct; it keeps going. This means that all instances of any one letter will be discovered and revealed. The variable `not` is set to `false` each time there is a match. If there were two or more instances of the same letter, this variable is set more than once, which is not a problem. I included the word *kerfuffle* to make sure that repeated letters were handled correctly (besides the fact that I like the word). You can examine all the code in the next section.

## Building the application and making it your own

The Hangman application makes use of CSS styles, HTML markup created by JavaScript, and JavaScript coding. There are two initializing and set up functions (`init` and `setupgame`) and the function that does most of the work (`pickelement`), plus eight functions that draw steps in the hanging. The functions are described in Table 9-1.

**Table 9-1.** Functions Invoked or Called by Calls

Function	Invoked / Called By	Calls
<code>init</code>	Invoked by the action of <code>onLoad</code> in the <code>&lt;body&gt;</code> tag	<code>setupgame</code>
<code>setupgame</code>	<code>init</code>	The first of the drawing functions, namely <code>drawgallows</code>
<code>pickelement</code>	Invoked by the action of the <code>addEventListener</code> calls in <code>setupgame</code>	One of the drawing functions through call of <code>steps[cur]()</code>
<code>drawgallows</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	
<code>drawhead</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code> , <code>drawnoose</code>	
<code>drawbody</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	
<code>drawrightarm</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	
<code>drawleftarm</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	
<code>drawrightleg</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	
<code>drawleftleg</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	
<code>drawnoose</code>	Call of <code>steps[cur]()</code> in <code>pickelement</code>	<code>drawhead</code> , <code>drawnoose</code>
<code>drawneck</code>	<code>drawnoose</code>	

Note the indirect pattern of most of the function calls. This pattern provides considerable flexibility if you decide to change the hanging progression. Note also that you can remove the very first call in the

setupgame function if you want the player to start with a blank page and not with the representation of the wooden beams of the gallows.

The complete implementation of Hangman is shown in Table 9-2.

**Table 9-2.** The Complete Implementation of Hangman

Code	Explanation
<html>	Opening tag
<head>	Opening tag
<title>Hangman</title>	Completes the title element
<style>	Opens the style element
<pre>.letters {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: 2px; border-style: double; margin: 5px; padding: 5px; color: #F00; background-color: #0FC; font-family: "Courier New", Courier, monospace;}</pre>	Specifies styling for any element with designated class letters, including the border, colors, and font
}	Closing style directive
<pre>.blanks {position: absolute; left: 0px; top: 0px; border: none; margin: 5px; padding: 5px; color: #006; background-color: white; font-family: "Courier New", Courier, monospace; text-decoration: underline; color: black;}</pre>	Specifies styling for any element with designated class blanks, including the border, spacing, color, and font, and puts in underlines
}	Closing style directive
</style>	Closes the style element
<script src="words1.js" defer></script>	Element calling for inclusion of external file, with directive to load the file at same time as the rest of this document
<script >	Opening tag for the script element
var ctx;	Variable used for all drawing
var thingelem;	Variable used for created elements

Code	Explanation
var alphabet = "abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz";	Defines letters of the alphabet, used for alphabet buttons
var alphabety = 300;	Vertical position for all alphabet buttons
var alphabetx = 20;	Starting alphabet horizontal position
var alphabetwidth = 25;	Width allocated for the alphabet elements
var secret;	Will hold the secret word
var lettersguessed = 0;	Keeps count of letters guessed
var secretx = 160;	Horizontal starting position for secret word
var secrety = 50;	Vertical position for secret word
var secretwidth = 50;	Width allocated for each letter in display of secret word
var gallowscolor = "brown";	Color for the gallows
var facecolor = "tan";	Color for the face
var bodycolor = "tan";	Color for the body
var noosecolor = "#F60";	Color for the noose
var bodycenterx = 70;	Horizontal position for the body
var steps = [	Holds the functions constituting the sequence of drawings for the progression toward the hanging
drawgallows,	Draws the gallows
drawhead,	Draws the head
drawbody,	Draws the body
drawrightarm,	Draws the right arm
drawleftarm,	Draws the left arm

Code	Explanation
drawrightleg,	Draws the right leg
drawleftleg,	Draws the left leg
drawnoose	Draws the noose
];	Ends the array steps
var cur = 0;	Points to the next drawing in steps
function drawgallows() {	Header for the function drawing the gallows
ctx.lineWidth = 8;	Sets the line width
ctx.strokeStyle = gallowscolor;	Sets the color
ctx.beginPath();	Begins the drawing path
ctx.moveTo(2,180);	Moves to the first position
ctx.lineTo(40,180);	Draws a line
ctx.moveTo(20,180);	Moves to the next position
ctx.lineTo(20,40);	Draws a line
ctx.moveTo(2,40);	Moves to the next position
ctx.lineTo(80,40);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the whole path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function drawhead() {	Header for the function drawing the head of the victim
ctx.lineWidth = 3;	Sets the line width
ctx.strokeStyle = facecolor;	Sets the color

Code	Explanation
ctx.save();	Saves the current stage of the coordinate system
ctx.scale(.6,1);	Applies scaling, namely squeezes the x axis
ctx.beginPath();	Start a path
ctx.arc (bodycenterx/.6,80,10,0,Math.PI*2,false);	Draws an arc. Note that the x coordinate is modified to work for the scaled coordinate system. The complete arc will be an oval.
ctx.stroke();	Actually does the drawing
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
ctx.restore();	Restores (goes back to) the coordinates before the scaling
}	Closes function
function drawbody() {	Header for the function that draws the body, a single line
ctx.strokeStyle = bodycolor;	Sets the color
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx,90);	Moves to the position (right below head)
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx,125);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function drawrightarm() {	Header for the function that draws the right arm
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx,100);	Moves to the position

Code	Explanation
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx+20,110);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function drawleftarm() {	Header for the function that draws the left arm
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx,100);	Moves to the position
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx-20,110);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function drawrightleg() {	Header for the function that draws the right leg
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx,125);	Moves to the position
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx+10,155);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function drawleftleg() {	Header for the function that draws the left leg
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx,125);	Moves to the position

Code	Explanation
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx-10,155);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function drawnoose() {	Header for the function that draws noose
ctx.strokeStyle = noosecolor;	Sets the color
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx-10,40);	Moves to the position
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx-5,95);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
ctx.save();	Saves the coordinate system
ctx.scale(1,.3);	Does the scaling, which, squeezes the image vertically (on the y axis)
ctx.beginPath();	Starts a path
ctx.arc(bodycenterx,95/.3,8,0,Math.PI*2,false);	Draws a circle (which will become an oval)
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
ctx.restore();	Restores the saved coordinate system
drawneck();	Draws the neck on top of the noose
drawhead();	Draws the head on top of the noose

Code	Explanation
}	Closes the function
function drawneck() {	Header for the function for drawing the neck
ctx.strokeStyle=bodycolor;	Sets the color
ctx.beginPath();	Starts the path
ctx.moveTo(bodycenterx,90);	Moves to the position
ctx.lineTo(bodycenterx,95);	Draws the line
ctx.stroke();	Actually draws the path
ctx.closePath();	Closes the path
}	Closes the function
function init(){	Header for the function called on document load
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Sets up the variable for all drawing on canvas
setupgame();	Invokes the function that sets up the game
ctx.font="bold 20pt Arial";	Sets the font
}	Closes the function
function setupgame() {	Header for the function that sets up the alphabet buttons and the secret word
var i;	Creates the variable for iterations
var x;	Creates the variable for position
var y;	Creates the variable for position
var uniqueid;	Creates the variable for each of each set of created HTML elements
var an = alphabet.length;	Will be 26

Code	Explanation
for(i=0;i<an;i++) {	Iterates to create alphabet buttons
uniqueid = "a"+String(i);	Creates a unique identifier.
d = document.createElement('alphabet');	Creates an element of type alphabet
d.innerHTML = (	Defines the contents as specified in the next line
"<div class='letters'↵ id='"+uniqueid+"'>"+alphabet[i]+"/div">");	Specifies a div of class letters with a unique identifier and text content, which is the <i>i</i> th letter of the alphabet
document.body.appendChild(d);	Adds to body
thingelem = document.getElementById(↵ (uniqueid);	Gets the element with the id
x = alphabetx + alphabetwidth*i;	Computes its horizontal position
y = alphabety;	Sets the vertical position
thingelem.style.top = String(y)+"px";	Using the style top, sets the vertical position
thingelem.style.left = String(x)+"px";	Using the style left, sets the horizontal position
thingelem.addEventListener('click', ↵ pickelement, false);	Sets up event handling for the mouse click event
}	Closes the for loop
var ch = Math.floor(Math.random()*↵ words.length);	Chooses, at random, an index for one of the words
secret = words[ch];	Set the global variable secret to be this word
for (i=0;i<secret.length;i++) {	Iterates for the length of the secret word
uniqueid = "s"+String(i);	Creates a unique identifier for the word
d = document.createElement('secret');	Creates an element for the word

Code	Explanation
d.innerHTML = "<div class='blanks' id='"+uniqueid+"> __ </div>");	Sets the contents to be a div of class blanks, with the id of the word the uniqueid just created. The text content will be an underscore.
document.body.appendChild(d);	Appends the created element as a child of the body
thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);	Gets the created element
x = secretx + secretwidth*i;	Calculates the element's horizontal position
y = secrety;	Sets its vertical position
thingelem.style.top = String(y)+"px";	Using the style top, sets the vertical position
thingelem.style.left = String(x)+"px";	Using the style left, sets the horizontal position
}	Closes the for loop
steps[cur]();	Draws the first function in the steps list, the gallows
cur++;	Increments cur
return false;	Returns false to prevent any refreshing of the HTML page
}	Closes the function
function pickelement(ev) {	Header for the function invoked as a result of a click
var not = true;	Sets not to true, which may or may not be changed
var picked = this.textContent;	Extracts the text content, namely the letter, from the object this references
var i;	Iterates

Code	Explanation
var j;	Iterates
var uniqueid;	Used to create unique identifiers for elements
var thingelem;	Holds the element
var out;	Displays a message
for (i=0;i<secret.length;i++) {	Iterates over the letters in the secret word
if (picked==secret[i]) {	Says, "If the player guessed letter is equal to this letter in secret..."
id = "s"+String(i);	Constructs the identifier for this letter
document.getElementById(id).textContent = picked;	Changes the text content to be the letter
not = false;	Sets not to false
lettersguessed++;	Increment the number of letters identified correctly
if (lettersguessed==secret.length) {	Says, "If the whole secret word has been guessed..."
ctx.fillStyle=gallowscolor;	Sets the color, which uses the brown of the gallows but could be anything
out = "You won!";	Sets the message
ctx.fillText(out,200,80);	Displays the message
ctx.fillText("Re-load the page to try again.",200,120);	Displays another message
for (j=0;j<alphabet.length;j++) {	Iterates over the whole alphabet
uniqueid = "a"+String(j);	Constructs the identifier
thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);	Gets the element

Code	Explanation
thingelem.removeEventListener('click', ↵ pickelement, false);	Removes the event handling
}	Closes the <code>j</code> for loop iteration
{	Closes <code>if (lettersguessed...)</code> , that is, the all-done test
}	Closes the <code>if (picked==secret[i])</code> true clause
{	Closes the for loop over letters in the secret word iteration
if (not) {	Checks if no letters were identified
steps[cur]();	Proceeds with the next step of the hanging iteration
cur++;	Increments the counter
if (cur>=steps.length) {	Checks to see if all steps are finished
for (i=0;i<secret.length;i++) {	Starts a new iteration over the letters in the secret word to reveal all the letters
id = "s"+String(i);	Constructs the identifier
document.getElementById(id).textContent=secret[i];	Obtains a reference to the element and sets it to that letter in the secret word
}	Close the iteration
ctx.fillStyle=gallowscolor;	Set the color
out = "You lost!";	Sets the message
ctx.fillText(out,200,80);	Displays the message
ctx.fillText("Re-load the page to try again.",200,120);	Displays the reload message

Code	Explanation
for (j=0;j<alphabet.length;j++) {	Iterates over all of the letters in the alphabet
uniqueid = "a"+String(j);	Constructs the unique identifier
thingelem = document.getElementById(uniqueid);	Gets the element
thingelem.removeEventListener('click', pickelement, false);	Removes the event handling for this element
}	Closes the j iteration
}	Closes the cur test to determine if the hanging is complete
}	Closes the if (not) test (bad guess by player)
var id = this.id;	Extracts the identifier for this element
document.getElementById(id).style.display = "none";	Makes this particular alphabet button disappear
}	Closes the function
</script>	Closes the script
</head>	Closes the head
<body onLoad="init();">	Opening tag that sets up call to init
<h1>Hangman</h1>	Puts the name of game in big letters
<p>	Opening tag for paragraph
<canvas id="canvas" width="600" height="400">	Opening tag for canvas element. Includes dimensions.
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Message for people using browsers that don't recognize canvas
</canvas>	Closing tag for canvas

Code	Explanation
</body>	Closes the body
</html>	Closes the document

A variation of Hangman uses common sayings in place of words. Building on this game to create that one is a challenge for you. The critical steps are handling of blanks between the words and the punctuation. You probably want to reveal each instance of blanks between words and periods, commas, and question marks immediately, making these things hints to the player. This means that you need to make sure that `lettersguessed` starts off with the correct count. Do not be concerned that the selected letters are compared to blanks or punctuation.

Another variation would be to change the alphabet. I carefully replaced all the instances of `26` with `alphabet.length`. You would also need to change the language for the messages for winning and losing.

A suitable enhancement of the game is to make a New Word button. To do so, you need to split up the workings of the `setupgame` button into two functions: One function creates new alphabet icons and the positions for the longest possible secret word. The other makes sure all the alphabet icons are visible and set up for event handling and then selects and sets up the blanks for secret word, making sure the appropriate number are visible. If you do this, you may want to include display of a score and a number of games.

Continuing with the educational idea and assuming you use unusual words, you may want to include definitions. The definition can be revealed at the end, by writing text on the canvas. Or you can make a button to click to reveal the definition as a hint to the player. Alternatively, you could create a link to a site such as [Dictionary.com](http://Dictionary.com).

## Testing and uploading the application

To test this application, you can download my word list or create your own. If you create your own, start off with a short word list prepared as plain text, giving it the name `words1.js`. When testing, do not always guess in the same pattern, such as choosing the vowels in order. Misbehave and try to keep guessing after the game is over. When you are satisfied with the coding, create a longer word list, and save it under the name `words1.js`. Both the HTML and `words1.js` files need to be uploaded to your server.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to implement a familiar game using features of HTML5, JavaScript, and CSS along with general programming techniques, which included the following:

- using the `scale` method to change the coordinate system to draw an oval, as opposed to a circle, by saving and restoring before and after
- creating HTML markup dynamically
- setting up and removing event handling using `addEventListener` and `removeEventListener` for individual elements

- using styles to remove elements from display
- using arrays of function names to set up a progression of drawings
- manipulating variables to maintain the state of the game, with calculations to determine if there is a win or a loss
- creating an external script file to hold the word list for increased flexibility
- using CSS, including font-family for the selection of fonts, color, and display

The next and final chapter of this book will describe the implementation of the card game, blackjack, also called 21. It will build on what you have learned already and describe some new techniques in programming, elements added to HTML5, and more CSS.



## Chapter 10

# Blackjack

---

In this chapter, we will be covering

- the footer and header tags, which are new to HTML5
- capturing key presses
- programmer-defined objects
- generating Image elements using a set of external image files
- shuffling a deck of cards

## Introduction

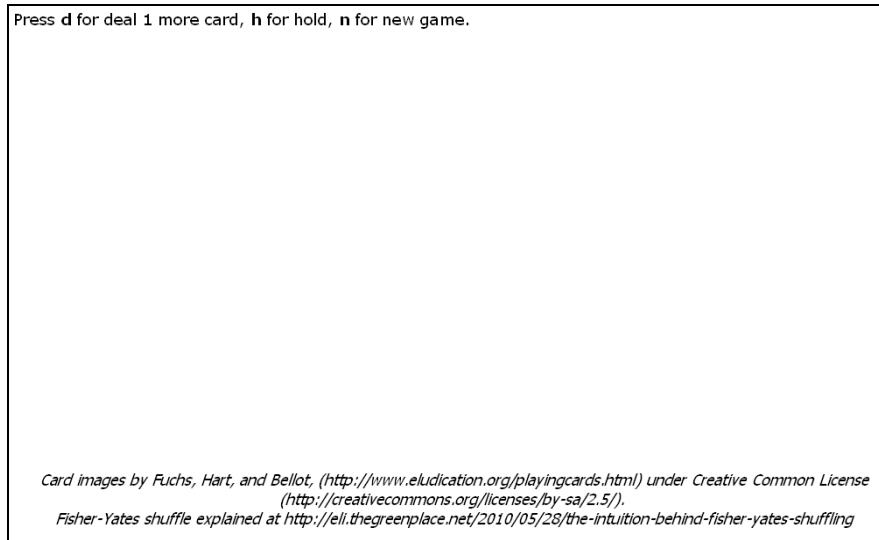
The objective of this chapter is to combine programming techniques and HTML5 and JavaScript features to implement the card game blackjack, also called 21. The implementation will make use of new tags introduced in HTML5, namely footer and header. We will make use of the footer to give credit to the source for the card images and the web site we are using for the shuffling algorithm. The cards are created using programmer-defined objects and Image objects, with coding to generate the names of the image files. The player makes moves using key presses.

The rules of blackjack are as follows: The player plays against the dealer (also known as the house). The player and dealer are each dealt two cards. The first card of the dealer is hidden from the player, but the other is visible. The value of a card is its face value for the numbered cards, 10 for a jack, queen, or king, and either 1 or 11 for an ace. The value of a hand is the sum of the cards. The object of the game is to have a hand with a value as close to 21 as possible without going over *and* to have a value greater than the other person. Thus an ace and a face card count as 21, a winning hand. The actions are to request another card or to hold.

Since this is a two-person game, our player will play against the computer, and as was the case with rock, paper, scissors, we have the task of generating the computer moves. However, we are guided by the practice of casinos—the dealer (house) will use a fixed strategy. Our dealer will request another card if the value of the hand is under 17 (the game strategy in casinos may be slightly more complicated and may be

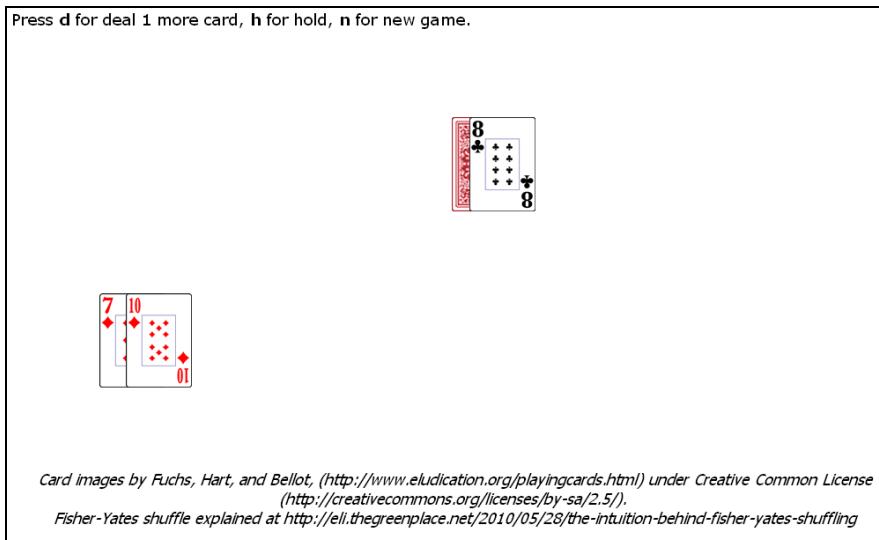
dependent on the presence of aces). Similarly, our game does declare a tie if the player and house have the same total if the total is under 21; some casinos may have a different practice.

An opening screenshot is shown in Figure 10-1.



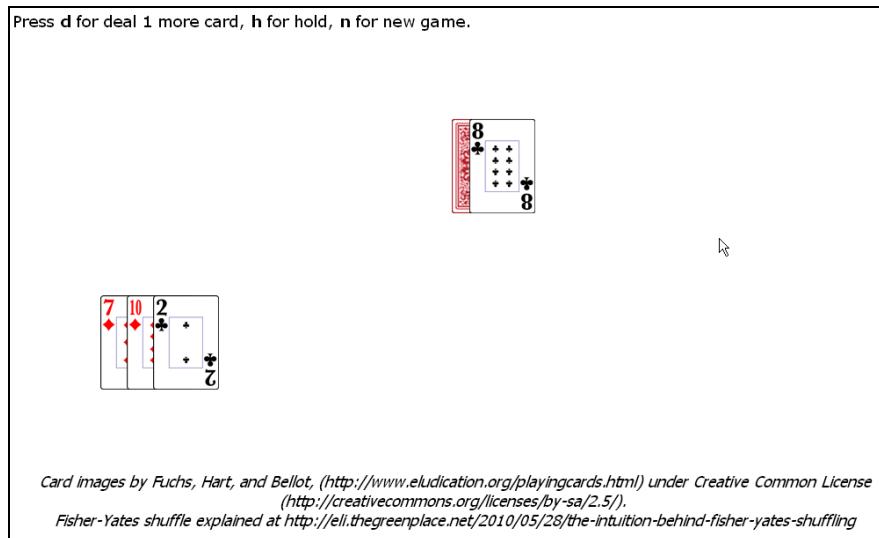
**Figure 10-1.** Opening screen for blackjack

After the user presses the n key, the next screen would look something like Figure 10-2. Remember that there are random processes involved, so this same set of cards is not guaranteed to appear each time.



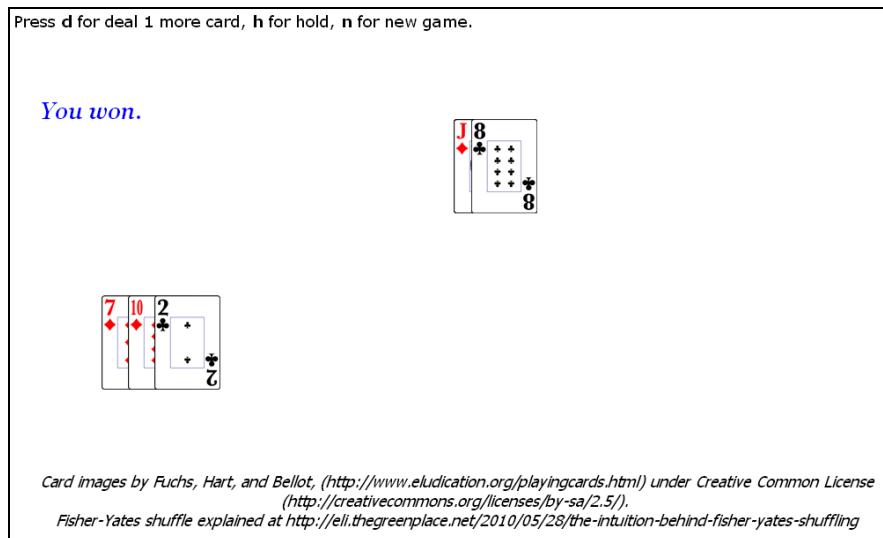
**Figure 10-2.** Cards dealt

Figure 10-2 shows what the player sees: all of his or her own hand and all but one card of the dealer's hand. The virtual dealer does not have knowledge of the player's hand. In this situation, the player's hand has a value of 7 plus 10 for a total of 17. The dealer is showing an 8. The player probably should hold, but let's be daring and press d for one more card. Figure 10-3 shows the result.



**Figure 10-3.** Player with 19

Now, the player clicks h to see what the dealer has. The result is shown in Figure 10-4.

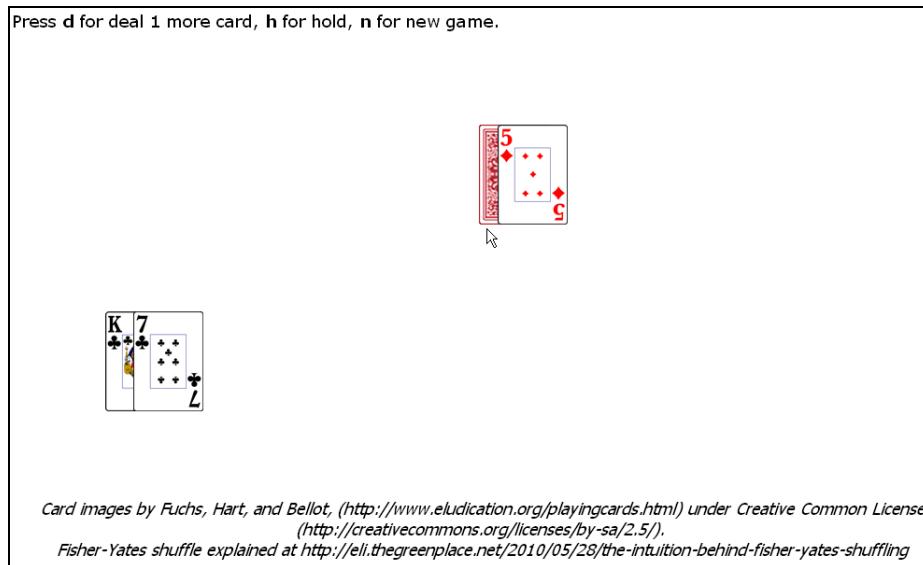


**Figure 10-4.** Player wins with 19 versus the dealer's 18

The player wins, since 19 is closer to 21 than 18.

The player can start a new game by pressing the **n** key or reloading the document. Reloading the document would mean starting with a complete, freshly shuffled deck. Pressing the **n** key continues with the current deck. Anyone who wants to practice **card counting**, a way of keeping track of what still is in the deck and varying your play accordingly, should opt to press the **n** key.

Figure 10-5 shows a new game.



**Figure 10-5.** A new game

This time, the player presses **h** to hold, and Figure 10-6 shows the result.

Press **d** for deal 1 more card, **h** for hold, **n** for new game.

You won. House went over.



Card images by Fuchs, Hart, and Bellot, (<http://www.eludication.org/playingcards.html>) under Creative Common License (<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/>).

Fisher-Yates shuffle explained at <http://eli.thegreenplace.net/2010/05/28/the-intuition-behind-fisher-yates-shuffling>

**Figure 10-6.** Player wins

The dealer was holding 9 plus 5 for a total of 14 and drew another card. The card drawn, an 8, took the hand over, so the player won.

Figure 10-7 shows the player being conservative by holding on 16. The dealer drew a card to add to the 10 (for the king) and 6 and then stopped with 19, beating the player.

Press **d** for deal 1 more card, **h** for hold, **n** for new game.

You lost.



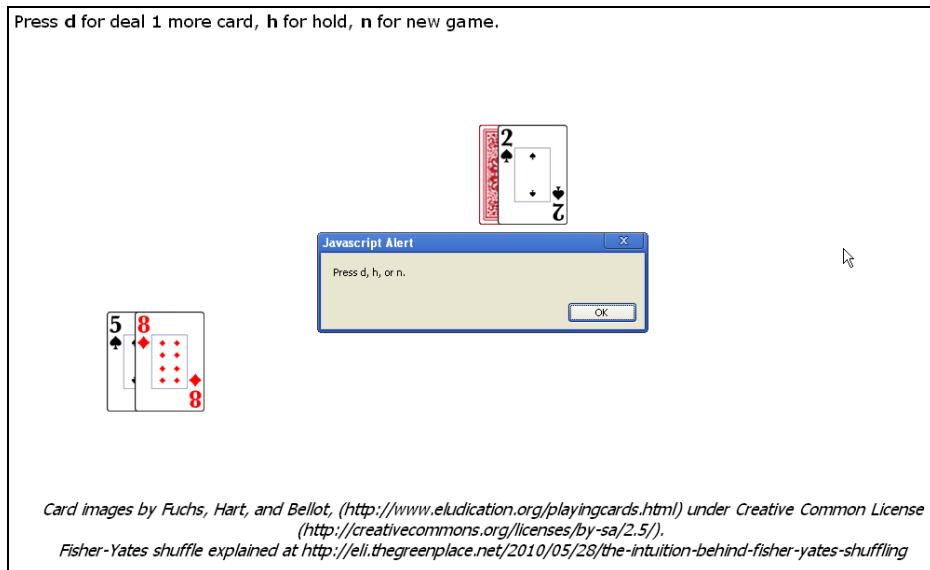
Card images by Fuchs, Hart, and Bellot, (<http://www.eludication.org/playingcards.html>) under Creative Common License (<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/>).

Fisher-Yates shuffle explained at <http://eli.thegreenplace.net/2010/05/28/the-intuition-behind-fisher-yates-shuffling>

**Figure 10-7.** The house wins.

The actual practices of dealers at casinos may be different from this. This is an opportunity for research! The player also can bluff the house by going over and not revealing it. This may lead the house to request another card and go over also. The game is decided if and only if the player clicks the h key to hold, and thus stop drawing cards.

You may want to provide feedback to the player when a key that is not d, h, or n is pressed, as shown in Figure 10-8.



**Figure 10-8.** Feedback when a wrong key is pressed

## Critical requirements

The blackjack game will make use of many of the HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features described for the previous games.

The first issue I had when starting the implementation was to find a source of images for the card faces. I knew I could make my own drawings, but I preferred something more polished than I could produce.

The next challenge was how to design what a card was in programming terms so that I could implement dealing cards, showing the back or the face. I also wanted to investigate how to shuffle the deck.

Another challenge was implementing the way a player would play the game. I chose to use key presses: d to deal, h to hold, and n to begin a new game. There are, of course, alternatives, for example, displaying buttons with words or graphics or using other keys, such as the arrow keys. The absence of a clear, intuitive interface made it necessary to display the directions on the screen.

The last challenges are the general ones of maintaining the state of the game, the visible display, and internal information; generating the computer moves, and following the rules.

# HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript features

Let's now look at the specific features of HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript that provide what we need to implement the blackjack card game. Except for basic HTML tags and functions and variables, the explanations here are complete. If you have read the other chapters, you will notice that much of this chapter repeats explanations given previously. Remember that you can skip ahead to the "Building the application" section to see the complete code for the game with comments and then return to this section for more explanation.

## Source for images for card faces and setting up the Image objects

I did find an excellent source for the card faces: [www.eludication.org/playingcards.html](http://www.eludication.org/playingcards.html). This site uses something called the Creative Common License, and the rules of the Creative Common License are described at <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/>. It requires any user to give credit, and I will demonstrate how I chose to do this.

After copying the files to your computer, we need a way to access 53 (52 cards plus one image for the back) image files without writing 53 different file names. This can be accomplished because the file names follow a pattern. The builddeck function is the following:

```
function builddeck() {  
    var n;  
    var si;  
    var suitnames= ["clubs","hearts","spades","diamonds"];  
    var i;  
    i=0;  
    var picname;  
    var nums=["a","2","3","4","5","6","7","8","9","10","j","q","k"];  
    for (si=0;si<4;si++) {  
        for (n=0;n<13;n++) {  
            picname=suitnames[si]+"-"+nums[n]-75.png";  
            deck[i]=new MCard(n+1,suitnames[si],picname);  
            i++;  
        }  
    }  
}
```

Notice the nested for loops. A for statement is a way to program code to repeat, generally referred to as **looping**, for a specified amount of time. The three parts inside the parentheses specify an initial statement, a condition for continuing, and an increment action. These can be any expressions, but, typically, they refer to a single variable, called the **looping or index variable**. The first statement initializes the variable; the second indicates a comparison operation; and the third is an increment or decrement expression. for statements are common when dealing with arrays.

In this function, the outer loop manages the suits and the inner loop the cards within each suit. The picname variable will be set to the names of the files that we downloaded from the source. The MCard function is the constructor function to create a MCard object, that is, objects of the class we defined as a programmer-defined class of objects. n+1 will be used as the value of the card, and there will be some adjustment for the face cards.

*Note: The three statements in the nested for loops could be combined into `deck[i++]=new MCard(n+1,suitnames[si], suitnames[si]+"-"+nums[n]+"-75.png");`.*

*This is because the `++` iteration operator takes place after the value has been generated for indexing the deck array. However, I recommend that in this learning example you don't do it! Using three statements is much easier to write and to understand.*

## Creating the programmer-defined object for the cards

JavaScript provides a way for programmers to create programmer-defined objects to group together data; the different pieces of data called **attributes** or **properties**, and we use dot notation to get at the different attributes. It is also possible to bundle together code into **methods**, but we don't need to do that in this example (recall that we did do this in other applications, such as cannonball and slingshot in Chapter 4). The function setting up the new object is called the **constructor** function. For cards, I defined MCard, which was shown in use in the previous section in the builddeck function. The definition of this function follows:

```
function MCard(n, s, picname){  
    this.num = n;  
    if (n>10) n = 10;  
    this.value = n;  
    this.suit = s;  
    this.picture = new Image();  
    this.picture.src = picname;  
    this.dealt = 0;  
}
```

The line of the function

```
if (n>10) n = 10;
```

will be triggered by the face cards (jack, queen, king); remember, the value of each is 10. This line corrects the value to be 10 in these cases.

Notice that this if statement is structurally different from previous if statements. There are *not* any opening and closing curly brackets setting off the if-true clause. The single-statement clause is a legitimate form of the if statement. I generally avoid this form because if I later decide to add another statement, I will need to insert the curly brackets. However, it is OK in this situation. You will see both variations when examining code. Notice that nothing special is done when n equals 1. The rule for two possible values for an ace is handled elsewhere in the program.

The properties of MCard objects include a newly created Image object with its src attribute set to the picname passed in. The last attribute, dealt, initialized to 0, will be set to 1 or 2 depending on whether the card goes to the player or the dealer.

## Dealing the cards

The builddeck function constructs the deck array of MCard objects. The player's hand is kept in an array called playerhand with pi holding the index of the next position. Similarly, the dealer's hand is kept in an array called househand with hi holding the index of the next position. An example showing the syntax

(punctuation) for referencing an attribute of an `MCard` object when the object is an element of an array is `playerhand[pi].picture`.

The `dealstart` function has the task of dealing the first four cards: two to the player and two to the dealer. One of the dealer's cards is not shown; that is, the card's back is shown. The `deal` function is invoked when the player requests a new card (see later in this section). The `deal` function will deal a card to the player and see if the dealer is to get a new card. Both `dealstart` and `deal` accomplish the actual dealing by invoking the `dealfromdeck` function, adding the cards to the `playerhand` and `househand` arrays and drawing the cards on the canvas. Formally, the `dealfromdeck` is a function that returns a value of type `MCard`. Its call appears on the right side of assignment statements. If the face of the card is to show, the `Image` object drawn is the one referenced by the card. If the back of the card is to show, the `Image` object is the one held in the variable `back`.

Here is the `dealstart` function. Notice the four similar sets of statements: get the card, draw the image, increment the `x` position for the next time, and increase indexing variable, `pi` or `hi`.

```
function dealstart() {
    playerhand[pi] = dealfromdeck(1);
    ctx.drawImage(playerhand[pi].picture,playerxp,playeryp,cardw,cardh);
    playerxp = playerxp+30;
    pi++;
    househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);
    ctx.drawImage(back,housexp,houseyp,cardw,cardh);
    housexp = housexp+20;
    hi++;
    playerhand[pi] = dealfromdeck(1);
    ctx.drawImage(playerhand[pi].picture,playerxp,playeryp,cardw,cardh);
    playerxp = playerxp+30;
    pi++;
    househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);
    ctx.drawImage(househand[hi].picture,housexp,houseyp,cardw,cardh);
    housexp = housexp+20;
    hi++;
}
```

The `deal` function is similar. A card is added to the player's hand and to the house if `more_to_house` returns `true`.

```
function deal() {
    playerhand[pi] = dealfromdeck(1);
    ctx.drawImage(playerhand[pi].picture,playerxp,playeryp,cardw,cardh);
    playerxp = playerxp+30;
    pi++;
    if (more_to_house()) {
        househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);
        ctx.drawImage(househand[hi].picture,housexp,houseyp,cardw,cardh);
        housexp = housexp+20;
        hi++;
    }
}
```

Note that `more_to_house` is a function that generates a `true` or `false` value. This value will be based on a calculation of the dealer's total. If the total is 17 or greater, the value returned will be `false`; otherwise, it will be `true`. The function call is used as the condition of an `if` statement, so if `more_to_house` returns `true`, the statements within the `if` clause will be executed. The `more_to_house` code could be put inside the `deal` function, but dividing up large tasks into smaller ones is good practice. It means I can keep working on the `deal` function and postpone temporarily writing the `more_to_house` function. If you want to refine the `more_to_house` calculation, you know exactly where to do it.

Determining the specific card from the deck is the task of the `dealfromdeck` function. Again, I make this well-defined task its own function. The parameter is the recipient of the card. We don't need to keep track of which recipient in this application, but we'll keep that information in the code in to prepare for building other card games. What is critical is that the card has been dealt to someone. The `dealt` attribute changes from 0. Notice the line `return card;`, which does the work of making an `MCard` object be the result of invoking the function.

```
function dealfromdeck(who) {  
    var card;  
    var ch = 0;  
    while ((deck[ch].dealt>0)&&(ch<51)) {  
        ch++;  
    }  
    if (ch>=51) {  
        ctx.fillText("NO MORE CARDS IN DECK. Reload. ",200,200);  
        ch = 51;  
    }  
    deck[ch].dealt = who;  
    card = deck[ch];  
    return card;  
}
```

Keep in mind that the `deck` array is indexed from 0 to 51. A `while` statement is another type of looping construction. In most computer programming languages, a `while` loop is a control flow statement that allows code to be executed repeatedly based on a given Boolean condition; the `while` loop can be thought of as a repeating `if` statement. The statements inside the curly brackets will execute as long as the condition inside the parentheses remains true. It is up to the programmer to make sure that this will happen—that the loop won't go on forever. The `while` loop in our application stops when a card is identified that has not been dealt, that is, its `dealt` attribute is 0. This function will say there are no more cards when the last card, the fifty-first card, is available and dealt. If the player ignores the message and asks for another card again, the last card will be dealt again.

As an aside, the issue of when the dealer chooses to gather the used cards together or go to a new deck is significant for card counters attempting to figure out what cards remain. At many casinos, dealers use multiple decks of cards to impede card counting. My program does not give the house that capability. You can build on this program to simulate these effects if you want a program to practice card counting. You can put the number of decks under player control, use random processing, or wait until the count of remaining cards is under a fixed amount, or perhaps something else.

The dealer may request another card when the player requests another card or when the player decides to hold. As mentioned earlier, the function to evaluate if the dealer asks for another card is `more_to_house`. The calculation is to add up the values of the hand. If there are any aces, the function adds an extra 10 points if that will make the total 21 or less—that is, it makes 1 ace count as 11. Then, it evaluates if the

sum is less than 17. If it is, it returns true, which tells the calling function to request a new card. If the value exceeds 17, it returns false.

```
function more_to_house(){
  var ac = 0;
  var i;
  var sumup = 0;
  for (i=0;i<hi;i++) {
    sumup += househand[i].value;
    if (househand[i].value==1) {ac++;}
  }
  if (ac>0) {
    if ((sumup+10)<=21) {
      sumup += 10;
    }
  }
  housetotal = sumup;
  if (sumup<17) {
    return true;
  }
  else {
    return false;
  }
}
```

If you want to experiment with a different strategy for the house, `more_to_house` is the function you change.

Starting a new game can be a challenge for programmers. First of all, it is necessary to understand what starting again means. For this implementation of blackjack, I provide an option to the player for starting a new hand, which means continuing with the same deck. To start with a fresh deck that has no cards dealt out, the player must reload the document. My name for the function that is invoked when the player presses the `n` key is `newgame`. The required actions are to clear the canvas and reset the pointers for player's and dealer's hands, as well as the variables holding the horizontal position for the next card. This function closes with a call to `dealstart`.

```
function newgame() {
  ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);
  pi=0;
  hi=0;
  playerxp = 100;
  housexp= 500;
  dealstart();
}
```

## Shuffling the deck

The technique for shuffling featured in the concentration game (see Chapter 5) represented an implementation of what my children and I did when playing the game: we spread out the cards and seized pairs and switched their places. For blackjack, a friend pointed me to a website by Eli Bendersky (<http://eli.thegreenplace.net/2010/05/28/the-intuition-behind-fisher-yates->

shuffling() explaining the **Fisher-Yates algorithm**. The strategy of this algorithm is to make a random determination for each position in the deck, starting from the end and working toward the start. The calculation determines a random position in the deck from 0 up to and including the current position and does a swap. The main shuffle function follows:

```
function shuffle() {  
    var i = deck.length - 1;  
    var s;  
    while (i>0) {  
        s = Math.floor(Math.random()*(i+1));  
        swapindeck(s,i);  
        i--;  
    }  
}
```

Recall that `Math.random() * N` returns a number from zero up to but not including N. Taking `Math.floor` of the result returns an integer from zero up to N. So if we want a number from 0 to i, we need to write `Math.floor(Math.random()*(i+1))`. To make the shuffle function easier to read, I made a separate function called `swapindeck` that swaps the two cards that are located at the positions indicated by the parameters to the function. To perform a swap, an extra place is needed and this is the variable `hold`. This extra place is needed because the two assignment statements cannot be accomplished at the same time.

```
function swapindeck(j,k) {  
    var hold = new MCard(deck[j].num,deck[j].suit,deck[j].picture.src);  
    deck[j] = deck[k];  
    deck[k] = hold;  
}
```

## Capturing key presses

The use of the arrow keys was described in the maze game in Chapter 7. This essentially is a repeat of that explanation.

Detecting that a key on the keyboard has been pressed and determining which key is termed **capturing the key strokes**. The code must set up the response to a key event and is analogous to setting up a response to a mouse event. The coding starts with invoking the `addEventListener` method, this time for the window for this application.

```
window.addEventListener('keydown',getkey,false);
```

This means the `getkey` function will be invoked if and when a key is pressed.

*Note: There also are `keyup` and `keypress` events. The `keydown` and `keyup` fire only once. The `keypress` event will occur again after some amount of time if the player holds down the key.*

Now, as you may expect at this point, the coding to get the information for which key involves code for different browsers. The following code, with two ways to get the number corresponding to the key, works for Chrome, Firefox, and Safari:

```
if(event == null)
```

```

{
  keyCode = window.event.keyCode;
  window.event.preventDefault();
}
else
{
  keyCode = event.keyCode;
  event.preventDefault();
}

```

The `preventDefault` function does what it sounds like: it prevents any default action, such as special shortcut actions associated with particular keys. The only keys of interest in this application are the three keys d, h, and n. The following `switch` statement determines which key is pressed and invokes the correct function: `deal`, `playerdone`, or `newgame`. A `switch` statement compares the value in the parentheses with the values after the term `case` and starts executing the statements with the first one that matches. The `break;` statement causes execution to jump out of the `switch` statement. The `default` clause is what it sounds like. It is not necessary, but if it is present, the statement or statements following `default:` are executed if nothing matches the `case` values provided.

```

switch(keyCode)d
{
  case 68: //d
    deal();
    break;
  case 72: //h
    playerdone();
    break;
  case 78: //n
    newgame();
    break;
  default:
    alert("Press d, h, or n.");
}

```

Recall that you can determine the key code of any key by modifying the whole `switch` statement to have just the following line in the `default` case:

```
alert(" You just pressed keycode "+keyCode);
```

and doing the experiment of pressing on the key and writing down what number shows up.

*Caution: If, like I sometimes do, you move among different windows on your computer, you may find that when you return to the blackjack game and press a key, the program does not respond. You will need to click the mouse on the window holding the blackjack document. This lets the operating system restore the focus on the blackjack document so the listening for the key press can take place.*

## Using header and footer element types

HTML5 added some new built-in element types including header and footer. The rationale behind these and other new elements (for example, article and nav) was to provide elements that serve standard purposes so that search engines and other programs would know how to treat the material, though it still is necessary to specify the formatting. These are the styles we will use in this example:

```
footer {  
    display:block;  
    font-family:Tahoma, Geneva, sans-serif;  
    text-align: center;  
    font-style:oblique;  
}  
header {  
    width:100%;  
    display:block;  
}
```

The display setting can be block or inline. Setting these to block forces a line break. Note that forcing the line break may not be necessary for certain browsers, but using it does not hurt. The font-family attribute is a way to specify choices of fonts. If Tahoma is available on the user's computer, it will be used. The next font to try will be Geneva. If neither one is present, the browser will use the sans-serif font set up as the default. The text-align and font-style settings are what they appear to be. The width setting sets this element to be the whole width of the containing element, in this case the body. Feel free to experiment!

Note that you cannot assume the footer is at the bottom of the screen or surrounding element, nor the header at the top. I made that happen by using positioning in the HTML document.

I used the footer to display the sources for the card images and the shuffle algorithm. Providing credit, showing copyright, and displaying contact information are all typical uses of footer elements, but there are no restrictions on how you use any of these new elements or on where you put them in the HTML document and how you format them.

## Building the application and making it your own

The functions used in this game are described in Table 10-1.

**Table 10-1.** The Blackjack Functions

Function	Invoked / Called by	Calls
init	Invoked by the onLoad function in the <body> tag	builddeck, shuffle, and dealstart
getkey	Invoked by the window.addEventListener call in init	deal, playerdone, and newgame
dealstart	init	

Function	Invoked / Called by	Calls
deal	getkey	Two calls to dealfromdeck and one call to more_to_house
more_to_house	deal	
dealfromdeck	deal and dealstart	
builddeck	init	MCard
MCard	builddeck	
add_up_player	playerdone	
playerdone	getkey	more_to_house, showhouse, and add_up_player
newgame	getkey	dealstart
showhouse	playerdone	
shuffle	init	swapindeck
swapindeck	shuffle	

The functions in this example feature a pattern of procedural calls with only `init` and `getkey` invoked as a result of events. Please appreciate the fact that there are many ways to program an application, including the definition of functions. Generally, it is a good practice to split code up into small functions, but it is not necessary. There are many places where similar lines of codes are repeated, so there is opportunity to define more functions. The annotated document follows in Table 10-2.

**Table 10-2.** The Annotated Code for the Blackjack Game

Code	Explanation
<code>&lt;html&gt;</code>	Opening tag
<code>&lt;head&gt;</code>	Opening tag
<code>&lt;title&gt;Black Jack&lt;/title&gt;</code>	Complete title element
<code>&lt;style&gt;</code>	Opening tag

<b>Code</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
body {	Specifies the style for the body element
background-color:white;	Sets the background color
color: black;	Sets the color of the text
font-size:18px;	Sets the font size
font-family:Verdana, Geneva, sans-serif;	Sets the font family
}	Closes the style
footer {	Specifies the style for the footer
display:block;	Treats this element as a block
font-family:Tahoma, Geneva, sans-serif;	Sets the font family
text-align: center;	Aligns the text in the center
font-style:oblique;	Makes the text slanted
}	Close style
header {	Specifies the style for the header
width:100%;	Make it take up the whole window
display:block;	Treats it as a block
}	Close style
</style>	Close the style element
<script>	Starts the script element
var cwidth = 800;	Sets the width of the canvas; used when clearing the canvas
var cheight = 600;	Sets the height of the canvas; used when clearing the canvas

Code	Explanation
var cardw = 75;	Sets the width of each card
var cardh = 107;	Sets the height of each card
var playerxp = 100;	Sets the starting horizontal position for the cards in the player's hand
var playeryp = 300;	Sets the vertical position for the cards in the player's hand
var housexp = 500;	Sets the starting horizontal position for the cards in the dealer's hand
var houseyp = 100;	Sets the vertical position for the cards in the dealer's hand
var housetotal;	For the total value of the dealer's hand
var playertotal;	For the total value of the player's hand
var pi = 0;	Index for the next card in player's hand
var hi = 0;	Index for the next card in the dealer's hand
var deck = [];	Holds all the cards
var playerhand = [];	Holds the cards for the player
var househand = [];	Holds the cards for the dealer
var back = new Image();	Used for the card back
function init() {	Function called by onLoad in body to performs initialization tasks
ctx = document.getElementById('canvas').getContext('2d');	Sets the variable used for all drawing
ctx.font="italic 20pt Georgia";	Sets the font

Code	Explanation
ctx.fillStyle = "blue";	Sets the color
builddeck();	Invokes the function to build the deck of cards
back.src = "cardback.png";	Specifies the image for the back of card (note that only one back appears: the dealer's hidden card)
canvas1 = document.getElementById('canvas');	Sets the variable for event handling
window.addEventListener('keydown',getkey, false);	Sets up event handling for keydown presses
shuffle();	Invokes the function to shuffle
dealstart();	Invokes the function to deal out the first four cards
}	Closes the function
function getkey(event) {	Function to respond to keydown events
var keyCode;	Holds the code designating the key
if(event == null)	Browser-specific code to determine if the event is null
{	Open clause
keyCode = window.event.keyCode;	Gets the key code from window.event.keyCode
window.event.preventDefault();	Stops other key responses
}	Close clause
else {	clause
keyCode = event.keyCode;	Picks up the key code from even.keyCode

Code	Explanation
event.preventDefault();	Stops other key responses
}	Close clause
switch(keyCode) {	Header for the switch statement based on keyCode
case 68:	d key has been pressed down
deal();	Deals out another card to the player and maybe to the dealer
break;	Leaves the switch
case 72:	h key has been pressed down
playerdone();	Invokes the playerdone function
break;	Leaves the switch
case 78:	n key has been pressed down
newgame();	Invokes the newgame function
break;	Leaves the switch
default:	Default choice, which may be appropriate to remove if you don't feel the need to provide feedback to players if they use an unrecognized key
alert("Press d, h, or n.");	Feedback message
}	Closes the switch
{	Closes the function
function dealstart() {	Header for the function for initially dealing cards
playerhand[pi] = dealfromdeck(1);	Gets the first card for player

Code	Explanation
ctx.drawImage(playerhand[pi].picture, playerxp, playeryp, cardw, cardh);	Draw on the canvas
playerxp = playerxp+30;	Adjusts the horizontal pointer
pi++;	Increases the count of cards to the player
househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);	Gets the first card for the dealer
ctx.drawImage(back, housexp, houseyp, cardw, cardh);	Draws a card's back on the canvas
housexp = housexp+20;	Adjusts the horizontal pointer
hi++;	Increases the count of cards to the dealer
playerhand[pi] = dealfromdeck(1);	Deals a second card to the player
ctx.drawImage(playerhand[pi].picture, playerxp, playeryp, cardw, cardh);	Draws on canvas
playerxp = playerxp+30;	Adjusts the horizontal pointer
pi++;	Increases the count of cards to the player
househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);	Deals a second card to the dealer
ctx.drawImage(househand[hi].picture, housexp, houseyp, cardw, cardh);	Draws on the canvas
housexp = housexp+20;	Adjusts the horizontal pointer
hi++;	Increases the count of cards to the house
}	Close function
function deal() {	Header for the function for dealing through the game
playerhand[pi] = dealfromdeck(1);	Deals a card to the player

Code	Explanation
ctx.drawImage(playerhand[pi].picture, playerxp, playeryp, cardw, cardh);	Draws on the canvas
playerxp = playerxp+30;	Adjust the horizontal pointer
pi++;	Increases the count of cards to the player
if (more_to_house()) {	if function to say there should be more cards for the dealer
househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);	Deals a card to the house
ctx.drawImage(househand[hi].picture, housexp, houseyp, cardw, cardh);	Draws a card on canvas
housexp = housexp+20;	Adjusts the horizontal pointer
hi++;	Increases the count of cards to the dealer
}	Closes the if-true clause
}	Close function
function more_to_house(){	Header for the function determining the dealer's moves
var ac = 0;	Variable to hold the count of aces
var i;	Variable for iteration
var sumup = 0;	Initializes the variable for the sum
for (i=0;i<hi;i++) {	Iterates over all the cards
sumup += househand[i].value;	Adds up value of cards in the dealer's hand
if (househand[i].value==1) {ac++;}	Keeps track of the number of aces
}	Closes the for loop

Code	Explanation
if (ac>0) {	if statement to determine if there were any aces
if ((sumup+10)<=21) {	If so, asks if making one of the aces take on the value of 11 still yield a total less than 21
sumup +=10;	If yes, do it
}	Closes inner if
{	Closes outer if
housetotal = sumup;	Sets the global variable to be the sum
if (sumup<17) {	Asks if the sum is under 17
return true;	Returns true if so, meaning it's OK to get one more card
{	Closes clause
else {	Begins else clause
return false;	Return false, meaning the dealer won't get another card
{	Closes the else clause
}	Closes the function
function dealfromdeck(who) {	Header for the function to deal from the deck
var card;	Holds the card
var ch = 0;	Holds the index for the next undealt card
while ((deck[ch].dealt>0)&&(ch<51)) {	Asks if this card has been dealt
ch++;	Increases ch to go on to the next card

Code	Explanation
}	Close the while loop
if (ch>=51) {	Asks if there were no undealt cards
ctx.fillText("NO MORE CARDS IN ↵ DECK. Reload. ",200,250);	Displays a message
ch = 51;	Sets ch to 51 to make this function work
}	Closes the if-true clause
deck[ch].dealt = who;	Stores who, a nonzero value, so this card is marked as having been dealt
card = deck[ch];	Sets a card
return card;	Returns a card
}	Closes the function
function builddeck() {	Header for the function that builds the MCard objects
var n;	Variable used for inner iteration
var si;	Variable used for outer iteration, over the suits
var suitnames= ["clubs","hearts",↵ "spades","diamonds"];	Names of suits
var i;	Keeps track of elements put into the deck array
i=0;	Initializes the array to 0
var picname;	Simplifies the coding
var nums=[ "a","2","3","4","5","6","7",↵ "8","9","10","j","q","k"];	The names for all the cards
for (si=0;si<4;si++) {	Iterates over the suits

Code	Explanation
for (n=0;n<13;n++) {	Iterates over the cards in a suit
picname=suitnames[si]+"+nums[n]+ "-75.png";	Constructs the name of the file
deck[i]=new MCard(n+1,suitnames[si], picname);	Construct an MCard with the indicated values
i++;	Increments i
}	Closes the inner for loop
}	Closes the outer for loop
}	Closes the function
function MCard(n, s, picname){	Header for the constructor function for making objects
this.num = n;	Sets the num value
if (n>10) n = 10;	Makes an adjustment in the cases of the face cards
this.value = n;	Set the value
this.suit = s;	Set the suit
this.picture = new Image();	Creates a new Image object and assigns it as an attribute
this.picture.src = picname;	Set the src attribute of this Image object to the picture file name
this.dealt = 0;	Initializes the dealt attribute to 0
}	Closes the function
function add_up_player() {	Header for the function determining the value of player's hand
var ac = 0;	Holds the count of aces

Code	Explanation
var i;	For iteration
var sumup = 0;	Initializes the sum
for (i=0;i<pi;i++) {	Loops over the cards in the player's hand
sumup += playerhand[i].value;	Increments the value of the player's hand
if (playerhand[i].value==1)	Asks if the card is an ace
{ac++;	Increments the count of aces
}	Closes the if statement
}	Closes the for loop
if (ac>0) {	Asks if there were any aces
if ((sumup+10)<=21) {	If this doesn't make sum go over
sumup +=10;	Makes one ace an 11
}	Closes the inner if
}	Closes the outer if
return sumup;	Returns the total
}	Closes the function
function playerdone() {	Header for the function invoked when player says hold
while(more_to_house()) {	While the more_to_house function indicates the dealer should get another card
househand[hi] = dealfromdeck(2);	Deals a card to the dealer
ctx.drawImage(back,housexp,houseyp,← cardw,cardh);	Draws the card on the canvas

Code	Explanation
housexp = housexp+20;	Adjusts the horizontal pointer
hi++;	Increases the index for the dealer's hand
}	Closes the while loop
showhouse();	Reveals the dealer's hand
playertotal = add_up_player();	Determines the player's total
if (playertotal>21){	Asks if the player was over
if (housetotal>21) {	Asks if the house was over
ctx.fillText("You and house both went over.",30,100);	Displays a message
}	Closes the inner if statement
else {	Begins else clause
ctx.fillText("You went over and lost.",30,100);	Displays a message
}	Closes the else clause
}	Closes the outer clause (player is over)
else	else the player is not over
if (housetotal>21) {	Asks if the dealer was over
ctx.fillText("You won. House went over.",30,100);	Displays a message
}	Close the clause
else	else
if (playertotal>=housetotal) {	Compares the two amounts

Code	Explanation
if (playertotal>housetotal) {	Performs a more specific comparison
ctx.fillText("You won. ",30,100);	Displays the winner message
}	Closes the inner clause
else {	Begins else clause
ctx.fillText("TIE!",30,100);	Displays a message
}	Closes the else clause
}	Closes the outer clause
else	else
if (housetotal<=21) {	Checks if the dealer is under
ctx.fillText("You lost. ", 30,100);	Displays a message
}	Closes the clause
else {	Begins else clause
ctx.fillText("You won because house went over.");	Displays a message (player under, house over)
}	Closes the clause
}	Closes the function
function newgame() {	Header for the function for a new game
ctx.clearRect(0,0,cwidth,cheight);	Clears the canvas
pi=0;	Resets the index for the player
hi=0;	Resets the index for the dealer
playerxp = 100;	Resets the horizontal position for the first card of the player's hand

Code	Explanation
housexp= 500;	Resets the horizontal position for the dealer's hand
dealstart();	Calls the function to initially deal the cards
}	Closes the function
function showhouse() {	Header for the function to reveal the dealer's hand
var i;	For iteration
housexp= 500;	Resets the horizontal position
for (i=0;i<hi;i++) {	for loop over the hand
ctx.drawImage(househand[i].picture, ↵ housexp,houseyp,cardw,cardh);	Draws the card
housexp = housexp+20;	Adjusts the pointer
}	Closes the for loop
}	Closes the function
function shuffle() {	Header for the shuffle
var i = deck.length - 1;	Sets the initial value for the i variable to point to the last card
var s;	Variable used for the random choice
while (i>0) {	As long as i is greater than zero
s = Math.floor(Math.random()*(i+1));	Makes a random pick
swapindeck(s,i);	Swaps with the card in the i position
i--;	Decrement
}	Closes the while loop

Code	Explanation
}	Closes the function
function swapindeck(j,k) {	Helper function for the swapping
var hold = new MCard(deck[j].num,deck[j].suit,deck[j].picture.src);	Saves the card in position j
deck[j] = deck[k];	Assigns the card in the k position to the j position
deck[k] = hold;	Assigns the hold to card in the k position
}	Closes the function
</script>	Closes the script element
</head>	Closes the head element
<body onLoad="init();">	Opening tag to set the call to init
<header>Press d for deal 1 more card, h for hold, n for new game.</header>	Header element containing instructions
<canvas id="canvas" width="800" height="500">	Canvas opener
Your browser doesn't support the HTML5 element canvas.	Warning to noncompliant browsers
</canvas>	Closes the element
<footer>Card images from <a href="http://www.eludication.org/playingcards.html">http://www.eludication.org/playingcards.html</a> , Creative Common License ( <a href="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/">http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/</a> ).  	Opens the footer element, which contains credit for card images and a link to the Creative Common License
Fisher-Yates shuffle explained at <a href="http://eli.thegreenplace.net/2010/05/28/the-intuition-behind-fisher-yates-shuffling">http://eli.thegreenplace.net/2010/05/28/the-intuition-behind-fisher-yates-shuffling</a>	Adds the credit for article on the shuffle algorithm
</footer>	Closes the footer

Code	Explanation
</body>	Closes the body
</html>	Closes the HTML file

You can change the look and feel of this game in many ways, including offering different ways for the player to request to be dealt a new card, to hold with the current hand, or to request a new hand. You can create or acquire your own set of card images. Keeping score from hand to hand, perhaps including some kind of betting, would be a fine enhancement. Changing the rules for the dealer's play is possible.

## Testing and uploading the application

This program requires considerable testing. Remember that the testing is not finished when you, acting as tester, have won. It is finished when you have gone through many different scenarios. I did my first testing of the game with an unshuffled deck. I then put in the shuffling and kept track of the cases that the testing revealed. I pressed the d key for dealing one more card, the h for holding, and the n for a new game in different circumstances. This is definitely a situation when you want to bring in other people to test your application.

Uploading the application requires uploading all the images. You will need to change the builddeck function to construct the appropriate names for the files if you use something different than what I demonstrate here.

## Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to implement a card game using features of HTML5, JavaScript, and CSS along with general programming techniques. These included

- Generating a set of Image objects based on names of external files
- Designing a programmer-defined object for cards, incorporating the Images
- Drawing images and text on the screen
- Making use of for, while, and if to implement the logic of blackjack
- Using calculations and logic to generate the computer's moves
- Establishing event handling for the keydown event so that the player could indicate a request to deal a new card, hold, or start a new game and using switch to distinguish between the keys
- Using the header and footer elements, new to HTML5, for directions and giving credit to sources

This is the last chapter of this book. I hope you take what you have learned and produce enhanced versions of these games and games of your own invention. Enjoy!



# Index

---

## Symbols

<> angle brackets (pointy brackets), 270  
< less than operator, 28  
> greater than operator, 28  
&& operator, 266  
( ) parentheses, 11, 26, 270  
\* multiplication operator, 25  
. period, indicating method invocation, 11, 26  
/ slash. *See* slash  
; semicolon, 11, 26  
" " quotation marks. *See* quotation marks  
[ ] square brackets, 75, 184, 270  
\_ underscore, 297  
{} curly brackets, 154, 270, 324  
+ addition operator, 25, 151  
+ plus sign, 151  
++ operator, 74, 324  
+= operator, 268  
= equal sign assignment operator, 26, 28  
== equal signs comparison operator, 28

## Numbers

2\*`Math.PI`  
    angles and, 219  
    polygons and, 151  
21 card game (sample). *See* blackjack card game

## A

a element, for hyperlinks, 5  
absolute URL, 18  
acceleration, 101  
add\_up\_player function, for blackjack card game sample, 331  
addEventListener method  
    keystroke capture and, 220, 328  
    mazes sample and, 232  
    quiz sample and, 188  
    rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 265  
    slingshot sample and, 108, 128  
addition operator (+), 25, 151  
alert function, 28, 221  
alignment, 8  
allow array, 230  
anchor, 5  
angles, 32, 219  
animated .gif files, 68  
animation, 270  
    ballistics simulation and, 97  
    bouncing ball sample and. *See* bouncing ball  
    rock-paper-scissors game sample and,  
        270–272  
    types of, 68  
appendChild method  
    Hangman game sample and, 296  
    quiz sample and, 187

- application state  
  craps game sample and, 24  
  Hangman game sample and, 295, 300
- applications  
  ballistics simulation. *See* ballistics simulation  
  building in stages, 38, 66  
  examples of. *See* samples  
  multilingual, 284  
  samples in this book, downloading, 100  
  terminology and, 214
- arcs, drawing, 70, 32–38
- arguments, 11, 26, 76
- array of arrays  
  audio and, 274  
  memory game sample and, 147  
  quiz sample and, 184–186, 193  
  rock-paper-scissors game rules and, 267
- array splice, 110
- arrays, 73–75, 101  
  everything array and, 101, 103  
  gradients and, 74  
  Hangman game word list and, 295  
  one-dimensional vs. multi-dimensional, 185
- arrow keys, responding to, 218, 219, 220
- article element, 7, 187
- aspect ratio, 72
- assignment statements, 26
- attributes, 324
- audio  
  for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 259, 272–274, 283  
  support for, 128
- audio element, 272
- B**
- bad/invalid input, 69, 79, 96
- ball (sample), illustrating ballistics simulation, 97
- Ball function, 102  
  for cannonball sample, 103, 111, 118  
  for slingshot sample, 129
- ballboundx/ballboundy variables, bouncing ball sample and, 78
- ballistics simulation, 97–140  
  ball sample illustrating, 97  
  cannonball sample and, 97, 111–128  
  slingshot sample and, 98, 107–111, 128–140
- ballrad (sample) variable, 78
- ballvx/ballvy variables, bouncing ball sample and, 78
- ballx/bally variables, bouncing ball sample and, 78
- beats array, rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 268, 284
- best practices  
  for comments, 81, 221  
  for functions, 80
- blackjack card game (sample), 317–346  
  building, 330–346  
  cards for, 323  
  customizing, 346  
  d key in to deal new card, 319, 329, 346  
  h key in to hold, 319, 329, 346  
  n key in to start new game, 318, 320, 327, 329  
  rules of the game, 317  
  testing/uploading, 346
- body element, 4, 8
- canvas and, 30
- for quiz sample, 189, 193
- rock-paper-scissors game sample score and, 268
- Boolean values, 27
- borders, 8
- bouncing ball (sample), 67–96  
  in 2-D box, 67, 80–85  
  ball replaced with image, 67, 71, 85–91  
  ballboundx/ballboundy variables and, 78  
  ballvx/ballvy variables and, 78  
  ballx/bally variables and, 78  
  customizing, 95  
  function calls for, 80  
  inboxboundx/inboxboundy variables and, 78  
  input validation for, 67, 91–95  
  moveball function and, 76, 77  
  testing/uploading, 96
- br singleton tag, 6
- break statement, 29
- browsers, 1  
  audio/video support and, 128, 184, 272  
  event handling and, 265  
  form input validation and, 79  
  keystroke capture and, 220, 328  
  local storage and, 224, 226  
  mouse event implementation and, 108, 153

- 
- testing web pages and, 19
  - video display and, 191
  - viewing web pages via, 11
  - builddeck** function, for blackjack card game sample, 323, 331, 346
  - button** element, 38
  - buttons**
    - graphical, 260, 263–266, 295
    - for Hangman game sample, 296–298
- C**
- cache**, clearing, 80
  - camel case** naming convention, 25
  - cannon** variable, 103
  - cannonball** (sample), 97
    - building, 111–128
    - cannon for, 118–128
    - customizing, 127
    - testing/uploading, 140
  - the canvas** (canvas element), 2, 21, 29–38
    - erasing and, 37, 76
    - everything array and, 101, 103
    - object information and, 106
    - text, drawing on, 149–151
  - card back**, for memory game sample, 142
  - card counting**, 320
  - card face**, for memory game sample, 141
  - Card** function, for memory game sample, 147, 155, 167
  - cards**
    - for blackjack card game sample, 323
    - for memory game sample, 141–147, 152
  - Cascading Style Sheets**. *See* **CSS styles**
  - case** statement, 29
  - casts**, 270
  - cball** variable, 103
  - cel** (frame-by-frame) animation, 68
  - change** function
    - for bouncing ball sample, 80
    - for cannonball sample, 111, 118
    - for slingshot sample, 129
  - cheating**, preventing in games/applications, 153
  - checked** attribute, 232
  - chicken and feathers**, for slingshot sample, 100, 110, 128
  - choices** array, rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 267
  - choose** function
    - for memory game sample, 148, 153, 154, 167
    - for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 265, 267, 270, 272, 275
  - Chrome**, form input validation and, 79, 80
  - circles**, drawing, 32–38, 70, 299
  - clearInterval** function, for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 270
  - clearRect** function, 37, 76
  - click** event, for memory game sample, 152
  - clickable** buttons, 265, 295
  - closePath** command, 35, 37
  - closing** tag, 4, 19
  - code**
    - comments in, 47, 81, 155
    - indenting, 4
    - pseudo-code and, 28
  - code fragments**, 25
  - collision detection**
    - for bounding ball sample, 78
    - for mazes, 222–224
  - color coding**, 13
  - color** variable, 75
  - colors**, 7
    - invalid input and, 69
    - memory game sample and, 166
    - quiz sample and, 190, 201
    - rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 269
  - comments**, 47
    - best practices for, 81, 221
    - writing, 155, 221
  - compch** variable, 267, 268
  - compchn** variable, 267
  - compiled languages**, 10
  - compimg** variable, 267
  - computed animation**, 68, 270
  - computer as game player**
    - blackjack card game sample and, 317
    - Hangman game sample and, 287
    - rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 259, 267–274
  - concentration game**. *See* **memory game**
  - conditional statements**, 24, 27–29
  - constructor** function, 102, 263, 324
  - context**, 30
  - cookies**, 216, 224
  - coordinate systems**, 24, 30, 105
  - countries/capital cities quiz**. *See* **quiz**

craps game (sample), 21–66  
building, 38–65  
the complete game, 55–65  
customizing, 63  
opening screen for, 39  
rules of the game, 21–23, 27, 55  
single-die throws for, 40–47  
testing/uploading, 65  
text output form for, 38  
two-die throws for, 47–55  
uploading, 65  
createElement method  
  Hangman game sample and, 296  
  quiz sample and, 187  
Creative Common License, 323  
CSS styles, 1, 4, 8–10  
  blackjack card game sample and, 323–330  
  bouncing ball sample and, 70–80  
  cannonball sample and, 101–111  
  craps game sample and, 24–38  
  curly brackets (`{ }` ) and, 270  
  formatting and, 7  
  Hangman game sample and, 295–302  
  memory game sample and, 146–154  
  quiz sample and, 189–193  
  rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 263–274  
  slingshot sample and, 101–111  
ctx (sample) variable, 30  
  bouncing ball sample and, 70  
  Hangman game sample and, 298  
  rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 264  
cur variable, 300, 301  
curly brackets (`{ }` ), 154, 270, 324  
curwall variable, 220, 231  
customizing  
  blackjack card game sample, 346  
  bouncing ball sample, 95  
  cannonball sample, 127  
  craps game sample, 63  
  favorite web sites sample, 18  
  Hangman game sample, 315  
  mazes, 256  
  memory game sample, 176  
  quiz sample, 183, 201, 209  
  rock-paper-scissors game sample, 262, 284  
cx property, intersection and, 222  
cy property, intersection and, 222

## D

date and time  
  measuring elapsed time and, 147, 230  
  quiz sample and, 201  
storage/retrieval sample application for, 224–230  
within head element, 10  
Date function, 11  
  date and time storage/retrieval and, 224  
  measuring elapsed time and, 147, 230  
days in the month calculation (sample), 29  
deal function, for blackjack card game sample, 325, 331  
dealfromdeck function, for blackjack card game sample, 325, 326, 331  
dealing cards, in blackjack card game sample, 324–327  
dealstart function, for blackjack card game sample, 325, 330  
dealt attribute, 324, 326  
deck variable, memory game sample and, 152  
declaration statements, 26  
defer method, 296  
degrees  
  converting to radians, 106  
  programming languages and, 106  
devices, 257  
dice game (sample). *See* craps game  
distance between points, 110  
distsq function, for slingshot sample, 109, 128  
div element, 187, 297  
do-while loop, quiz sample and, 186  
!DOCTYPE tag, 5  
dot notation, 102, 147, 324  
downloading  
  audio files, 273  
  favorite web sites sample, 8  
  sample applications, 100  
drag and drop operations, mouse and, 108  
draw functions, for Hangman game sample, 299, 302  
draw method, 102, 103, 219  
draw1 function  
  for single-die throws, in craps game sample, 40  
  for two-die throws, in craps game sample, 47

draw2 function  
 for single-die throws, in craps game sample, 41  
 for two-die throws, in craps game sample, 48

draw2mid function  
 for single-die throws, in craps game sample, 41  
 for two-die throws, in craps game sample, 48

draw4 function  
 for single-die throws, in craps game sample, 41  
 for two-die throws, in craps game sample, 48

drawAline function, for mazes sample, 219, 233, 246

drawall function  
 for cannonball sample, 111, 118  
 for mazes sample, 232, 246  
 for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 265, 275  
 for slingshot sample, 109, 110, 128

drawAnImage function  
 for cannonball sample, 119  
 for slingshot sample, 129

drawback function, for memory game sample, 154, 167

drawball function, 102  
 for cannonball sample, 111, 118  
 for slingshot sample, 129

drawface function  
 for single-die throws, in craps game sample, 40  
 for two-die throws, in craps game sample, 47

drawImage function, 147

drawing, 2, 21, 29–38  
 bouncing ball sample and, 70–80  
 craps game sample and, 32–38  
 practicing/experimenting with, 300  
 translations for, 103–107

drawrects function  
 for cannonball sample, 111, 118  
 for slingshot sample, 129

drawsling function, for slingshot sample, 107, 129

drawThrow function, for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 264, 275

drawtoken function, for mazes sample, 219, 233, 246

drawpoly function, for memory game sample, 155  
 dx variable, 47  
 dy variable, 47

## E

elements  
 generated dynamically, 184, 186–189  
 nested, 4, 5  
 placing on top of other elements, 192  
 types of, 4, 7, 10

eludication.org, 323

e-mail addresses, input validation and, 79

encoding, 146, 230

ending tag, 4, 19

equal sign (=) assignment operator, 26, 28

equal signs (==) comparison operator, 28

errors  
 common errors and, 19, 65  
 HTML syntax and, 11

event-driven programming, 111

event handling, 220  
 clickable buttons and, 265  
 timing interval event and, 76

everything array, 101, 103

curwall variable and, 231

mazes sample and, 219

rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 265

rotation/translation and, 106

expressions, 25

## F

facts array, 184, 193

fair use, linking web sites and, 18

favorite web sites (sample), 2–19  
 building, 11–19  
 customizing, 18  
 downloading, 8  
 testing/uploading, 19

feedback, 183

craps game sample and, 24  
 input validation and, 80  
 quiz sample and, 179, 182–184, 190, 201  
 when clicking outside of buttons, 266  
 for wrong key press, in blackjack card game, 322

- files  
  errors and, 19  
  saving, 12
- fill method  
  paths and, 299  
  polygons and, 152
- fillRect function, 75, 150
- fillStyle property, 72, 75, 150
- fillText function, 149
- findball function, for slingshot sample, 108, 128
- finish function  
  for mazes sample, 233  
  for slingshot sample, 109, 128
- fire function, for cannonball sample, 111, 118
- firstpick variable, 148, 153
- Fisher-Yates algorithm, 328
- flags, 153
- flipback function, for memory game sample, 147, 154, 167
- flyin function, for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 270, 274, 275
- font-family property, 269, 298, 330
- font function, 149
- font-style property, 8, 330
- fonts  
  Hangman game sample and, 298  
  memory game sample and, 149, 166  
  safe web fonts and, 190, 269
- footer element, 7, 187, 317, 330
- for header statement, 74
- for loop, 323  
  arrays and, 74, 185  
  blackjack card game sample and, 323  
  Hangman game sample and, 301  
  preventing cheating and, 154  
  radio buttons and, 232
- foreign languages, 284
- form element, 27  
  quiz sample and, 190  
  rock-paper-scissors game sample score and, 268  
  for text, 38
- form validation. *See* input validation
- formatting, CSS styles for. *See* CSS styles
- frame-by-frame (cel) animation, 68
- frames, 270
- function keyword, 26
- functions, 11
- best practices for, 80
- defining your own, 26
- naming conventions for, 25
- timing events and, 76–77
- fx property, intersection and, 222, 230
- fy property, intersection and, 222, 230
- G**
- G20 countries/capitals (sample) quiz. *See* quiz
- game design, quality assurance and, 272
- game state  
  craps game sample and, 24  
  Hangman game sample and, 295, 300
- games  
  examples of. *See* samples  
  history of moves and, 262  
  new round feature for, 210
- getElementById function  
  for Hangman game sample, 296  
  quiz sample and, 187
- getElementsByTagname function, for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 274
- getkey function, for blackjack card game sample, 328, 330
- getkeyAndMove function, for mazes sample, 220, 233, 246
- getTime function  
  for mazes sample, 230  
  for memory game sample, 148
- getwalls function, for mazes sample, 233, 246
- gif files, animated, 68
- global variables, 26, 55
- grad variable, 75
- gradients, 72, 85–91
- graphical buttons, 260, 263–266, 295
- graphical feedback, 24
- graphical user interface (GUI), 24
- gravity, calculation for simulating, 100
- ground variable, 103
- GUI (graphical user interface), 24
- H**
- h1-h6 heading elements, 7
- Hangman game (sample), 287–316  
  building, 302–315  
  checking guesses/revealing letters in, 301

- customizing, 315  
 rules of the game, 287  
 shapes for, 298  
 testing/uploading, 315  
 word list for stored in external script, 295
- head element, 4, 7, 187, 317, 330  
 script element within, 10  
 style element within, 8
- heading elements (h1-h6), 7
- height attribute  
 canvas and, 30  
 for img elements, 5
- hold variable, 328
- holder variable, 152
- holderimg variable, 152
- holderinfo variable, 152
- horizontal displacement, ballistics simulation and, 100, 106
- horizontal value, 31, 79
- househand array, for blackjack card game sample, 324
- href attribute, 19
- htaccess file, 210
- htarget variable, 103, 110
- HTML  
 angle brackets (<>) and, 270  
 dynamic generation and, 184, 186–189  
 structure of, 4–10, 29  
 tags for. *See* elements
- html element, 4
- .html files, 12
- HTML5  
 audio/video support and, 128  
 basic HTML structure and, 1–10  
 blackjack card game sample and, 323–330  
 bouncing ball sample and, 70–80  
 button element new with, 38  
 cannonball sample and, 101–111  
 canvas element new with, 21, 29  
 craps game sample and, 24–38  
 element types new with, 8  
 features of, 2  
 footer element new with, 317, 330  
 Hangman game sample and, 295–302  
 header element new with, 317, 330  
 local storage and, 214, 224–231  
 mazes sample and, 219–232  
 memory game sample and, 146–154
- naming conventions and, 103  
 official web site of, 10  
 quiz sample and, 184–193  
 regular expressions and, 80  
 rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 263–274  
 slingshot sample and, 101–111  
 video and, 179, 184, 191–193, 210
- hue variable, 73, 75
- hyperlink element, 5
- hyperlinks  
 a element for, 5  
 favorite web sites sample illustrating, 2–19
- Hypertext Markup Language. *See entries at* HTML
- I
- I/O (input-output), 24
- id attribute, 10
- if statement, 24, 27  
 blackjack card game sample and, 324  
 craps game sample and, 55  
 Hangman game sample and, 301  
 preventing cheating and, 153  
 while loop and, 326
- image files, 5, 18
- Image function, 71
- Image objects, 71, 110, 323
- images  
 blackjack card game sample and, 323  
 drawing on the canvas, 71  
 memory game and, 141, 145, 147, 166  
 target, replacing one with another, 99, 101, 110
- img element, 5, 18, 71
- inboxboundx/inboxboundy variables, bouncing ball sample and, 78
- increase function, 77
- indenting code, 4
- index variable, 323
- info property, memory game sample and, 152
- init function, 27  
 for blackjack card game sample, 330  
 for bouncing ball sample, 71, 76, 80  
 for cannonball sample, 111, 118  
 for Hangman game sample, 302  
 for mazes sample, 232, 246

for memory game sample, 153, 154, 167  
for quiz sample, 193  
for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 275  
rotations and, 104  
for single-die throws, in craps game sample, 40  
for slingshot sample, 128  
initialization statements, 26  
inmotion variable, 108, 109, 220  
innerHTML attribute, 188  
input-output (I/O), 24  
input validation, 38, 79  
for bouncing ball sample, 67, 91–95  
feedback and, 80  
invalid/bad input and, 69, 70, 79  
internationalization, 284  
Internet Explorer, HTML5 and, 19  
intersect function, 222–224  
invalid/bad input, 69, 79, 96  
isNumber function, 79  
italics, pseudo-code and, 28

## J

JavaScript, 1, 4, 10  
blackjack card game sample and, 323–330  
bouncing ball sample and, 70–80  
cannonball sample and, 101–111  
canvas and, 30  
craps game sample and, 24–38  
curly brackets ({} ) and, 270  
declaration statements and, 26  
Hangman game sample and, 295–302  
mazes sample and, 219–232  
memory game sample and, 146–154  
parentheses ( ) and, 270  
pseudo-random processing and, 24  
quiz sample and, 184–193  
rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 263–274  
slingshot sample and, 101–111  
square brackets ([ ]) and, 270  
join method, 230

## K

key/value pairs, local storage and, 224  
keycodes, 221, 329

keystroke capture, 219, 220, 328  
knowledge base, for quiz sample, 183, 193

## L

left value, 31  
legal considerations, linking web sites and, 18  
length attribute, facts array and, 185  
lettersguessed variable, 300  
level array, radio buttons and, 232  
line breaks, 6  
line segments  
dice game sample and, 32  
slingshot sample and, 107  
linear gradients, 72  
lineTo method, 107  
paths and, 299  
polygons and, 152  
local storage, 214, 224–231, 257  
encoding data for, 230  
mazes sample and, 218  
measuring elapsed time and, 230  
localization, 284  
localStorage object, 224, 225  
localStorage.setItem method, 230  
logical values, 27  
logos, 18  
looping variable, 323  
lsname variable, 231

## M

makedeck function, for memory game sample, 147, 155, 167  
margins, 8  
markup, 1, 4  
Math class, 24, 32  
Math.atan2, 109  
Math.floor method  
blackjack card game sample and, 328  
craps game sample and, 24  
rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 267  
Math.max method, 185  
Math.PI constant, 32, 104  
Math.PI\*2, 71  
Math.PI/6, 104  
Math.random method  
blackjack card game sample and, 328

- 
- craps game sample and, 24  
 quiz sample and, 186, 193  
 rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 267
- mathematical expressions, 25
- mazes sample, 213–258  
 building, 232–257  
 customizing, 256  
 difficulty levels and, 230, 231  
 testing/uploading, 257  
 versions of, 214, 218, 230, 232, 246
- MCard function, for blackjack card game  
 sample, 323, 326, 331
- memory game (sample), 141–177  
 building, 154–176  
 clicking on cards and, 152  
 customizing, 176  
 improving, 176  
 shuffling cards and, 152  
 testing/uploading, 176  
 versions of, 141
- methods, 11, 102, 324
- milliseconds, 76, 148
- Miro converter, 191, 272
- more\_to\_house function, for blackjack card game sample, 325–327, 331
- mouse events  
 browser implementations and, 153  
 mazes sample and, 218, 219  
 quiz sample and, 184  
 slingshot sample and, 108
- moveandcheck function, 78, 80
- moveball function, 102  
 for bouncing ball sample, 76, 77, 80  
 for cannonball sample, 111, 119  
 for slingshot sample, 129
- moveit method, 102, 103  
 for mazes sample, 219  
 for slingshot sample, 109, 128
- moves by computer  
 blackjack card game sample and, 317  
 history of moves and, 262  
 rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 267–274
- moveTo method, 107  
 paths and, 299  
 polygons and, 151
- movetoken function, for mazes sample, 219, 233, 246
- MP3 audio format, 272  
 multilingual applications, 284  
 multiplication operator (\*), 25  
 musicch variable, 274  
 mx variable, 153, 266  
 my variable, 153, 266  
 mypent variable, 219  
 Myrectangle function, 102, 103  
 for cannonball sample, 111, 118  
 for slingshot sample, 129
- N**
- naming conventions, 103  
 for functions, 25, 103  
 for variables, 25
- natural languages, vs. programming languages, 11
- nested elements, 4, 5
- nested expressions, 25
- nested for loops, 323
- new operator, 71, 102, 263
- new round feature, for games, 210
- newgame function, for blackjack card game sample, 331
- newscore variable, for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 268, 270
- notation, 11
- Notepad, 12
- nq variable, 186
- number of days in the month calculation (sample), 29
- "Number of matches so far: " expression, 151
- numbers, 27  
 form input and, 79  
 vs. strings, 77
- O**
- object-oriented programming, 111
- objects, 102  
 defining, 102  
 programmer-defined, 101, 324
- OGG audio format, 272
- onLoad method  
 mazes sample and, 232  
 rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 274
- onSubmit method, mazes sample and, 232

opening tag, 4, 19  
operator overloading, 151, 269  
operators, 25  
origin (registration) point, 31  
ovals, drawing, 299

## P

p element, for paragraphs, 8  
padding, 8  
page reloading, disabling, 27, 80  
pairs array, 147  
parentheses ( ), 11, 26, 270  
paths, drawing  
    bouncing ball sample and, 70  
    dice game sample and, 30, 32–38  
    Hangman game sample and, 298  
pausing, 146, 148  
period (.), indicating method invocation, 11, 26  
pi radians, 32, 104  
picked variable, 300, 301  
pickelement function  
    for Hangman game sample, 298, 300, 302  
    for quiz sample, 188, 194  
picname variable, 323, 324  
Picture function, 102, 103  
    for cannonball sample, 119  
    for slingshot sample, 129  
pixels, 30  
    border thickness and, 8  
    image width and, 5  
play method, 193, 274  
playerdone function, for blackjack card game  
    sample, 331  
playerhand array, for blackjack card game  
    sample and, 324  
plus sign (+), 151  
points array, for rock-paper-scissors game  
    sample, 268  
Polycard function, for memory game sample,  
    155  
Polygon function, for memory game sample, 147  
polygons  
    drawing, 151  
    for memory game cards, 141, 147, 151  
pop method, 110  
positions, calculating for new, 78  
preventDefault method, 221, 329

prices array, 185  
programmer-defined objects, 101, 324  
programming languages, 10  
    HTML. *See entries at HTML*  
    JavaScript. *See JavaScript*  
    vs. natural languages, 11  
    radians/degrees and, 106  
projectile motion. *See ballistics simulation*  
properties, 102, 324  
pseudo-code, 28  
pseudo-random processing, 24  
push method, 103

## Q

quality assurance, 272  
quiz (sample), 179–211  
    building, 193–209  
    customizing, 183, 201, 209  
    second version of, 182, 190, 201–209  
    testing/uploading, 210  
    video feedback in, 179, 182, 191–193, 201,  
        210  
quotation marks (" ")  
    code errors and, 19  
    omitted from HTML syntax, 5  
    string definitions and, 28, 75

## R

radial gradients, 72  
radians, 104  
    circles and, 32, 299  
    programming languages and, 106  
radio buttons, mazes sample and, 218, 230, 246  
random processing, 24  
rectangles, 27  
    drawing, 30, 71, 75  
    rectangle for cannonball sample's cannon,  
        118  
    rotating, 103–107  
ref attribute, 5  
registration (origin) point, 31  
regular expressions, input validation and, 79  
relative URL, 18  
reload/refresh button, disabling, 27, 80  
resources for further reading  
    CSS styles, 189

- 
- HTML5 video, 191  
 JavaScript, 10  
 restore operation, coordinate systems and, 105  
 result variable, rock-paper-scissors game  
     sample and, 268, 270  
 return keyword, 27  
 RGB values, 8, 74  
 rock-paper-scissors game (sample), 259–285  
     building, 275–284  
     customizing, 262, 284  
     displaying results for using animation,  
         270–272  
     graphical buttons for, 260, 263–266  
     rules of the game, 259, 267  
     testing/uploading, 284  
     versions of, 259  
 rotations, for drawings, 103–107
- S**
- safe web fonts, 190, 269  
 samples  
     ball, illustrating ballistics simulation, 97  
     blackjack card game, 317–346  
     bouncing ball, 67–96  
     cannonball, 97, 111–128, 140  
     craps game, 21–66  
     date and time storage/retrieval application,  
         224–230  
     favorite web sites, 2–19  
     Hangman game, 287–316  
     mazes, 213–258  
     memory game, 141–177  
     number of days in the month calculation, 29  
     quiz, 179–211  
     rock-paper-scissors game, 259–285  
     slingshot, 98, 107–111, 128–140  
         in this book, downloading, 100  
     sans-serif fonts, 150  
     save operation, coordinate systems and, 105  
     savewalls function, for mazes sample, 233  
     saving your work, 12, 40  
     Score label, for rock-paper-scissors game  
         sample, 260  
 scores  
     local storage and, 257  
     rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 262,  
         268
- script element, 10, 30, 187  
 scripting languages, 10  
 scripts  
     for Hangman game word list, 295  
     terminology and, 214  
 seconds, 76, 77  
 secret variable, 300, 301  
 secs element, 77  
 section element, 7, 8, 187  
 semicolon (;), terminating statements, 11, 26  
 setInterval function  
     bouncing ball sample and, 76, 77  
     rock-paper-scissors game sample and, 270  
     slingshot sample and, 110  
 setTimeout function  
     bouncing ball sample and, 76, 77  
     memory game sample and, 148  
     quiz sample and, 201  
 setupgame function  
     for Hangman game sample, 302  
     for quiz sample, 193  
 showhouse function, for blackjack card game  
     sample, 331  
 shuffle function  
     for blackjack card game sample, 328, 331  
     for memory game sample, 152, 155, 167  
 singleton tags, 5, 6  
 site logo, 18  
 size variable, 270  
 slash (/)  
     in ending HTML tag, 4  
     indicating comments, 47, 155, 221  
     omitted, 5  
     for singleton tag, 5  
 Sling function, for slingshot sample, 102, 103,  
     107, 129  
 slingshot (sample), 98, 107–111  
     building, 111, 128–139  
     chicken and feathers for, 100, 110, 128  
     drawing the slingshot, 107  
     pulling the slingshot, 108  
     testing/uploading, 140  
 slots array, 186  
 source element, 191, 273  
 splice method, 110  
 split method, 231  
 square brackets ([ ]), 75, 184, 270  
 square of the distance, 110

src attribute, 5, 18  
starting tag, 4, 19  
starttime variable, 148, 176  
startwall function, for mazes sample, 220, 233  
statements, 11  
steps array, for Hangman game sample, 300  
storage/retrieval (sample) application, 224–230  
stretchwall function, for mazes sample, 233  
string values, 27  
strings  
    character, vs. numbers, 77  
    quotation marks (" ") and, 5, 28, 75  
stroke method, paths and, 299  
strokeRect function, 71  
style element, 8, 189  
submit element, 38  
substr method, 188  
substring method, 187  
sw string variable, 230  
swalls variable, 231  
swapindeck function, for blackjack card game sample, 328, 331  
switch statement, 24, 28  
    blackjack card game sample and, 329  
    craps game sample and, 55  
sx property  
    intersection and, 222, 230  
    position and, 102, 147, 154  
sy property  
    intersection and, 222, 230  
    position and, 102, 147  
syntax, 5, 11

## T

tablecolor variable, 150  
tags, 1, 4–10, 19. *See also* elements  
target variable, 103, 110  
tev variable, 77  
text  
    drawing, 149–151, 167  
    form input and, 79  
    output, form element for, 38  
text-align property, 8, 330  
text editors, 11, 95  
text feedback, quiz sample and, 190  
textContent, 300, 301  
TextPad text editor (for the PC), 11

TextWrangler text editor (for the Mac), 11  
this keyword, 102, 188  
    Hangman game letters and, 301  
    rock-paper-scissors game throws and, 263  
throw function for rock-paper-scissors game sample, 263, 264, 275  
throwdice function  
    for complete craps game sample, 55  
    for two-die throws, in craps game sample, 47  
tid variable, 270  
time. *See* date and time  
timing events, 76–77  
title element, 4  
toggles, 153  
token, for mazes  
    collision detection and, 222–224  
    defining, 219  
    token function for, 219, 232, 246  
top value, 31  
translations, for drawings, 103–107  
triangles, polygons and, 151  
try... catch statement, errors and, 226, 230

## U

underscore (\_), 297  
URLs (Universal Resource Locators), 5  
    absolute/relative, 18  
    input validation and, 79

## V

validation, for form input. *See* input validation  
value, local storage and, 224  
values, types of, 27  
var statements, 25, 71  
variables, 25  
    global, 26  
    naming conventions for, 25  
vertical displacement, ballistics simulation and, 100  
vertical value, 31, 79  
video  
    HTML5 and, 179, 184, 191–193, 210  
    in quiz sample, 179, 182, 191–193, 201, 210  
    support for, 128  
    upload considerations for, 210  
video element, for quiz sample, 189, 191–193

**W**

wall function, for mazes sample, 219, 232, 246  
walls for mazes, 219, 231  
WAV audio format, 272  
Web addresses. *See URLs*  
web pages  
  fundamental requirements for, 3  
  viewing via a browser, 11  
Web-safe fonts, 190 269  
web sites, favorite web sites sample and. *See favorite web sites*  
while loop, blackjack card game sample and,  
  326  
whitespace, 4, 6, 81, 155  
width attribute  
  canvas and, 30  
  for img elements, 5  
word bank, for Hangman game sample, 295

word dashes, for Hangman game sample,  
  296–298

word wrap, 13  
word-processing programs, 11  
write method, 11

**X**

x value, 31, 79

**Y**

y value, 31, 79

**Z**

z-index (CSS), 192  
zIndex (JavaScript), 193